

ENGLISH

FOR PREPARATORY SCHOOLS

20
26

الصف الثاني الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

2nd
PREP
SECOND TERM



دار غزة

تصميم والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Contents

2^{nd.} Prep.

English

Part 1

- **Unit 7:** -----
My School Life
- **Unit 8:** -----
Learn Smart, Learn Easy
- **Unit 9:** -----
Jobs and Skills
- **Review 3:** -----

Part 2

- **Unit 4:** -----
Storytelling
- **Unit 5:** -----
Life in the Desert
- **Unit 6:** -----
Our Incredible Earth
- **Review 4:** -----

Booklet (free with the book)

- **Dictation:** -----
- **Homework exercises on each unit:** -----
- **Tests on units:** -----
- **General Tests on the Second Term** -----
- **Al Azhar Tests** -----
- **Listening material** -----

Specifications for Second Year Preparatory

مواصفات امتحان الصف الثاني الاعدادي ٢٠٢٥ - ٢٠٢٦

Marks: 30

Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (5 Marks)

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions: (5 Marks)

A listening text / dialog from **SIXTY (60)** to **SEVENTY (70)** words is provided. The topics should be related to the Set Books. Students are asked to listen to the text and answer the following questions.

1. a Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (2 Marks)

Students are asked to listen and answer **TWO (2)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options. (One mark each)

1. b Listen again and answer the following questions: (3 Marks)

Students are asked to listen to the same text again and answer **THREE (3)** open-ended questions. (One mark each)

B- Reading (15 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (2 Marks)

FOUR (4) multiple-choice questions related to vocabulary (synonyms, antonyms, suffix, prefix, definition collocations, guessing meaning from the context) are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. (Half a mark each)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2 Marks)

An unseen text from **SIXTY (60)** to **SEVENTY (70)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Students are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FIVE (5)** words given in the box. The first sentence should be written in full. (Half a mark each)

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions: (7 Marks)

An unseen text from **ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110)** to **ONE HUNDRED and THIRTY (130)** words is provided. This can be a short story, a blog, an email or social medial posts.... etc. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be related to what students have studied before. Students are asked to answer **TWO (2)** multiple-choice questions (Half a mark each) with **FOUR (4)** options each and **THREE (3)** open-ended questions. (2 marks each). These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- Giving the main idea (1 question)
- Extracting information (1 question)
- Understanding reference (1 question)
- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context (1 question)
- Developing critical thinking skills (1 question)

5- Story (4 Marks)

5 a) Write True (T) or False (F): (2 Marks)

FOUR (4) sentences based on the assigned story are provided. Students are asked to read each sentence and write True (T) or False (F). (Half a mark each)

5. b) Answer the following questions: (2 Marks)

Students are asked to answer **TWO (2)** opened-ended questions one of which tests students' critical thinking skills. (One mark each)

C- Writing (10 Marks)

6 Rewrite the following sentences: (4 Marks)

FOUR (4) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to rewrite the sentences from the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets should be related to what students have studied. (One mark each)

7 Complete the following dialog: (2 Marks)

A dialog with **FOUR (4)** deletions (**2 responses & 2 stimuli**) is provided. Students are asked to complete the **FOUR (4)** deletions with **ONE** word without providing them with any guidance. The situation in which the dialog takes place is described briefly but clearly. The first sentence is given in full. (Half a mark each)

8 Write a text of **ONE HUNDRED (100)** words on: (4 Marks)

Students are asked to write a text of not less than **ONE HUNDRED (100)** words on a specific topic related to what students have studied. The text can be a paragraph / biography / social media post / blog post / an email/or short notes.

(One mark for relevance of ideas - One mark for vocabulary and spelling
- One mark for grammar - One mark for punctuation)

How to answer the Writing Question كيفية الاجابة عن سؤال الكتابة

1 كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية Paragraph Writing

مطلوب من الطالب كتابة فقرة إنشائية (paragraph) مكونة من حوالي 100 كلمة عن موضوع من موضوعات الكتاب المدرسي.

- لابد أن يقرأ الطالب العنوان جيدا.

- يكتب الطالب جمل واضحة ليست بالطويلة

تعليمات مهمة للطالب بخصوص الشكل العام للفقرة الإنشائية (paragraph)



- 1 نترك مسافة صغيرة (تعاادل كلمة صغيرة) في أول سطر فقط.
- 2 ابدأ أول كل جملة بحرف كبير (Capital letter) واضح، وضع نقطة (full stop) واضحة في نهاية كل جملة، اكتب بخط واضح - الجملة بجوار الجملة - واترك مسافة بين الكلمة والآخرى.
- 3 استخدم زمن المضارع البسيط (v + s, es, ies) عند الحديث عن الحقائق والعادات، وزمن الماضي البسيط (v + d / ed / ied) عند الحديث عن موضوع في الماضي، وزمن المستقبل (will + inf.) عند الحديث عن موضوع في المستقبل.
- 4 يمكن أن يكون عنوان الموضوع جملة تستخدم كأحد الجمل في الكتابة.

Model question

نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Your day"

I always get up at half past six. I usually have a shower before I get dressed. I have breakfast with my family. My house is not far from my school, so I go to school on foot. I always arrive there before the bell rings. At break, I have lunch. I play with my friends in the playground. I come back home at about two o'clock. I usually feel tired then. My parents always come from work at about three o'clock. I like to help my mum make lunch. After lunch, I do my homework. I usually go to bed at nine o'clock.

2 كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال رسالة البريد الإلكتروني Email Writing

- مطلوب من الطالب كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني (Email) مكون من حوالي 100 كلمة، عن موضوع من موضوعات الكتاب المدرسي.

- على الطالب كتابة البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه والراسل وموضوع الرسالة المعطاة له في السؤال.



تعليمات مهمة للطالب بخصوص الشكل العام لرسالة البريد الإلكتروني (Email)

1 نكتب أعلى الصفحة جهة اليسار:

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه
From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل
Subject: الموضوع

2 نكتب أسفل منهم (اسم المرسل إليه + Dear) يليها فاصلة (,).

3 أسفل كلمة (Dear) نكتب مقدمة مناسبة.

4 نكتب محتوى رسالة البريد الإلكتروني (يمكنك أحياناً الاستعانة بجمل من السؤال نفسه مع مراعاة تحويل الضمائر).

5 نكتب خاتمة مناسبة.

6 نهي رسالة البريد الإلكتروني بـ (Yours,) وأسفل منها اسم الراسل.

Useful phrases to use in an email

عبارات مفيدة تستخدم في كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالي لتبدأ رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

Dear,	عزيزى
Hi,	أهلاً
Hello,	أهلاً.../مرحباً....

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالي لتسأل عن صحة شخص:

How are you?	كيف حالك؟
How are things? / How's life? / How's it going?	كيف تسير الأمور؟

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالي لتقديم أخبار:

I'd like to tell you about	أود أن أخبرك عن
I'm writing to invite you to	اكتب لك لكي ادعوك إلى

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالي للحديث عن المشاعر:

I / We miss you.	إنى أفتقدك / نحن نفتقدك.
I / We hope that you are	أتمنى / نتمنى أن تكون
I'm so excited / sad because	إنى متشوق / حزين لأن

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالي للحديث عن المستقبل:

I'm looking forward to	أتطلع إلى
I can't wait to	لا أستطيع الإنتظار أن

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالي لتنهى حديثك:

Write soon.

أكتب لي سريعاً.

See you soon.

أراك قريباً.

With my best wishes.

مع أطيب تمنياتي.

Keep in touch.

كن على اتصال.

Model question

نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED (100) words:

To your English penfriend, Tim, telling him about your favorite hobby and where you practise it.

- Your name is Ziad and your email address is ziadsamir@yahoo.com.

- Your penfriend's email address is tim505@yahoo.com.

New Message

To

: tim505@yahoo.com

Cc Bcc

From

: ziadsamir@yahoo.com

Subject

: My favorite hobby

Dear Tim,

I'm happy to write this email to you. How are you?

I want to tell you that I like playing football. It's my favorite hobby. I practise it every day in the club near my house. I joined that club when I was three. My father knew I was a good player, so he let me join it. I go there with my friends twice a week. I usually score goals for my team. I hope I will join a European club in the future. I hope I will be famous like Mohamed Salah. My coach always encourages me to train hard. Please, tell me about your favorite hobby. Waiting for your email.

Keep in touch.

Yours,

Ziad

المقدمة

الموضوع

الخاتمة

Send

A

|

📎

🖼️

🔗

😊

🗑️

|

▼

كيف تكتب سيرة ذاتية How to write a biography

- لكتابة السيرة الذاتية عن شخص رياضي (مثلًا) نستخدم بعض المصطلحات والعبارات للتعريف بالشخص الرياضي:

1- He / She was born on + تاريخ الميلاد .

2- He / She began بدأ .

3- He / She was the first كان أول شخص .

4- He / She is successful because يعتبر شخص ناجح لأنه .

5- He / She won فاز - فازت بـ .

6- He / She also / Moreover / as well as /

هو بالإضافة إلى / علاوة على ذلك / بالإضافة إلى ذلك

وفيما يلي نموذج لسيرة ذاتية (Biography) عن شخص رياضي (Mohamed Salah):

Mohamed Salah is a famous football player. He was born on June 15, 1992. He began playing football when he was young. He is a successful sportsperson because he trained a lot to win awards. He also helps poor people in his village.

Salah plays for Liverpool and is known for being very fast. He scores many goals and always smiles on the pitch. Fans all over the world love him because he is kind and humble. He built schools and hospitals to help his community grow. Because of his hard work, he is a great role model for children everywhere. Salah shows us that if we follow our dreams and help others, we can change the world for the better.

خطوات كتابة منشور (Social media post)

- يمكن أن تكتب عن شيء حدث اليوم أو تشارك شعورك أو تسأل سؤال.
- استخدم لغة بسيطة جدًا: جمل قصيرة، كلمات معروفة، بدون تعقيد أو قواعد صعبة.
- أضف معلومات شخصية: شعورك، رأيك، أو سؤال للآخرين في النهاية لفتح الحوار.

• **ابدا المنشور كما يلي**

١. جملة عن شعورك أو ما حدث.

٢. جمل توضح التفاصيل (ماذا فعلت / أين كنت / مع من).

٣. جملة تختتم بها بسؤال أو أمنية أو دعوة للتفاعل.

Examples

Today was a really nice day.

مثال ١: عن يوم جميل A nice day

I spent time with my family in the park and we had a lot of fun.....

I feel happy and relaxed now. How was your day?

مثال ٢: عن الدراسة My Study

I'm studying English now.

It's not easy, but I can see small progress and that makes me proud.....

If you are learning English too, let's support each other!.....

Write a blog of about **ONE HUNDRED (100)** words to your friend about your new school. Your name is Maha:

Maha's blog

Tuesday, 5th August

My new school

Dear Diary,

It was a nice day today. I went to a new school near my apartment. My father had a new job in the Sixth of October City so, we moved to a new apartment. At first I was sad because I left my friends. My new school was bigger than my old school. I made new friends. They welcomed me and showed me my classroom. The teachers were kind and nice. I think that it's a special school because everyone is helpful. We played football during the break, and I felt very happy. Now, I am excited to go back tomorrow. It is a great start! 😊

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE



١- تاريخ اليوم

٢- عنوان الموضوع

٣- مقدمة افتتاحية

٤- رموز تعبيرية

٥- الصور



- خطوات كتابة التدوينة:

- ١- قم بكتابة تاريخ اليوم عند بداية كتابة يومية جديدة.
- ٢- ثم قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب للموضوع الذي سنتحدث عنه.
- ٣- ابدأ اليومية بكتابة "Dear Diary".
- ٤- قم بوصف الأماكن والأحداث التي مرت عليك خلال اليوم بلغة غير رسمية.
- ٥- قم بوصف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
- ٦- يجب أن تتضمن اليومية على بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل "I" أو "my".
- ٧- قم باستخدام بعض الصور المرئية والرموز التعبيرية لتوصيل الفكرة بشكل سريع.
- ٨- أعط رأيك في الموضوع الذي نتحدث عنه باستخدام بعض العبارات مثل: "I think that " أو "In my opinion....."

١. اكتب كلمات وجمل قصيرة فقط
- لا تكتب جمل طويلة؛ استخدم نقاط (.) أو شرطات (-) وكلمات مفتاحية مع جملة صغيرة جدًا إن لزم.
٢. استخدم ترتيبًا واضحًا
- من الأفضل البدء بـ:
- عنوان قصير.
- ثم نقاط مرتبة: تعريف - فائدة - مثال - ملاحظة مهمة.
٣. اختصر قدر الإمكان
- احذف الكلمات غير الضرورية، وركز على "الفكرة".

ملاحظات قصيرة (Short Notes)

العنوان Title

Social media – short notes

- Social media = websites and apps to connect with people.
- Examples: Facebook, Instagram, TikTok, X (Twitter).
- Positive: Easy to share news and photos.
- Helps you stay in touch with friends.
- Negative: Can waste a lot of time.
- Sometimes gives fake or bad information.
- Tip: Use social media, but set a time limit every day.

ملاحظات قصيرة عن الدراسة

العنوان Title

Studying English – short notes

- Goal: speak and write better English.
- Daily habits: Read a short text every day.
- Learn 3–5 new words.
- Watch a short video with English subtitles.
- Important: Practice speaking, not only reading.
- Don't be afraid of mistakes.



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify the main ideas and supporting details in short informational and descriptive texts

Listening:

- Identify specific information such as time, place, or steps in a process
- Recognize speaker's attitudes or purposes (to inform, to explain, to describe)

Language:

- Form and use imperatives and should or shouldn't for advice

Writing:

- Write short paragraphs or reports describing processes or daily routines clearly and logically
- Produce short opinion or explanatory paragraphs with topic sentences and supporting ideas

Speaking:

- Participate in short discussions and role-plays about daily routines, inventions, or school organization

• يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات بكتابة التسميع والواجب المنزلي



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

rules (n)	قواعد	sneakers (n)	حذاء رياضي
behavior (n)	سلوك/ تصرف	hallway (n)	طريقة/ ممر
dress code (n)	قواعد الزي	forbidden (adj)	ممنوع

المفردات الإضافية

Vocabulary



preparatory (adj)	اعدادي	well-planned (adj)	مدروس بعناية
learning environment (n)	بيئة تعليمية	positive atmosphere	اجواء ايجابية
safe (adj)	امن	timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد
respectful (adj)	محترم للآخرين	library (n)	مكتبة
equally (adv)	بالتساوي	distractions (n)	ملهيات/ مشتتات
healthy (adj)	بصحة جيدة	productive (adj)	مثمر/ فعال/ مفيد
cell phones (n)	هواتف خلوية	prefer (v) (red)	يفضل
carefully (adv)	بحرص	create (v) (d)	يخلق/ يوفر
classmates (n)	زملاء الفصل	follow (v) (ed)	يتبع
quiet (adj)	هادئ	require (v) (d)	يتطلب
way (n)	طريق	respect (v) (ed)	يحترم
during (prep)	أثناء	avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب
corridor (n) = hallway	طريقة/ ممر	raise (v) (d)	يرفع
snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	return (v) (ed)	يُعيد/ يرجع
break (n)	استراحة/ فسحة	greet (v) (ed)	يحي
step (n)	خطوة	interrupt (v) (ed)	يقاطع الكلام
confident (adj)	واثق	participate (v) (d)	يشارك
manners (n)	اخلاق/ آداب سلوك	allow (ed)	يسمح



Definitions

rules (n)	قواعد	instructions that tell people what they must or must not do
hallway (n)	طريقة/ ممر	a long narrow passage in a building
sneakers (n)	حذاء رياضي	comfortable shoes you wear for sports or walking
behavior (n)	سلوك/ تصرف	the way someone acts
forbidden (adj)	ممنوع	something not allowed to happen by rules or law

Expressions & Prepositions

welcome to	مرحباً بك في	as part of	كجزء من
show pride in	يظهر الفخر بـ	take notes	يدون ملاحظات
each other	أحدهما الآخر	waste time	يضيع وقت
on time	في الوقت المحدد	wake up	يستيقظ
It isn't allowed to	ليس مسموحاً أن	take care of	يعتني بـ



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
forbidden	ممنوع	banned		allowed	مسموح
safe	امن	secure		dangerous	خطير
carefully	بحرص	cautiously		carelessly	باهمال
healthy	بصحة جيدة	well		ill/ unhealthy	مريض
quiet	هادئ	calm		noisy	صاخب/ضوضائي
respectful	محترم للآخرين	polite		disrespectful	غير محترم للآخرين

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	carefully
-y	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	healthy
-ive	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	productive
-able	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	enjoyable
-ful	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	respectful
re-	تعني يفعل مرة أخرى	review

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
wear	wore	worn
keep	kept	kept
show	showed	shown
write	wrote	written
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
run	ran	run
wake up	woke up	woken up



1) safe / safety / save

• **safe** (صفة) امان

Ex. Every school has rules that help create a **safe** environment.

• **save** (فعل) ينقذ/يوفر

Ex. The firefighter **saved** the little girl.

Ex. I **saved** money to buy a toy.

• **safety** (اسم) امان

Ex. Don't run in the corridors to follow **safety** rules.

2) avoid (v) + v. ing

Ex. Students should **avoid running** in the corridor.

3) on time / in time

• **on time**

• في الوقت المحدد (تُستخدم عندما يحدث الشيء في الموعد المخطط له مسبقاً (الجدول الزمني)، أي لا تأخير ولا تبكير.

Ex. The 9:00 train left **on time**.

• **in time**

• في الوقت المناسب / قبل فوات الأوان تُستخدم عندما يحدث الشيء قبل أن يقع (خطأ ما أو قبل انتهاء الفرصة. تعني أنك وصلت ومعك وقت كافٍ للقيام بشيء آخر)

Ex. The ambulance arrived **in time** to save the patient.

4) raise / rise

• **raise(v) (d)**

• يرفع (يجب أن تتبع بمفعول)

Ex. Many shops have **raised** their prices.

• **rise(v) (rose – risen)**

• يرتفع (لا تحتاج إلى مفعول)

Ex. Prices **rise** every year.

5) quiet / quite / quit

• **quiet(adj)**

- هادئ

Ex. It's so **quiet** here at night..

• **quite(adv)**

• تماماً / إلى حد ما

Ex. The film was **quite** good.

• **quit(v) (quit – quit)**

• يغادر / يترك

Ex. He **quit** his job and found a better one.

6 arrive at / arrive in / reach

• **arrive(v) (d) at +** مكان / بلدة صغيرة

• يصل

Ex. They **arrived at** the airport at 10.30.

• **arrive in +** بلد / مدينة كبيرة

• يصل

Ex. What time does the plane **arrive in** New York?.

• **arrive (home / here / there / back)**

• يصل (بدون حرف جر)

Ex. Call me when you **arrive there**.

• **reach(v) (ed)**

• يصل (مكان / هدف / اتفاق / حل) (بدون حرف جر)

Ex. The climbers **reached** the summit of the mountain.

Ex. You should **reach** there at 9.00 a.m.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Wear a helmet for your
a. save b. safe c. safety d. harm
2. your hand if you want to answer the question.
a. Rise b. Arise c. Raise d. Arouse
3. Are you sure that they will arrive tomorrow?
a. quiet b. quite c. quietly d. quit
4. We finally arrived our destination late that evening.
a. at b. in c. on d. to
5. The cost of health care is faster than ever.
a. raising b. rising c. arising d. arousing

Reading

SB Page (14)



استمع إلى النصوص

SB Page (14)

Welcome to my **preparatory**⁽¹⁾ School! Here are our important school **rules**⁽²⁾. Every school has rules that help **create**⁽³⁾ a safe and respectful learning **environment**⁽⁴⁾. At my school, students must follow the **dress code**⁽⁵⁾, classroom rules, **behavior**⁽⁶⁾ rules, and library rules. The dress code **requires**⁽⁷⁾ students to wear the school

١. إعدادي
٢. قواعد
٣. يوفر
٤. بيئة
٥. قواعد الزي
٦. سلوك
٧. يتطلب



uniform⁽⁸⁾ every day. Jeans and **sneakers**⁽⁹⁾ are not **allowed**⁽¹⁰⁾. It is also important to keep uniforms clean and **tidy**⁽¹¹⁾ to show **pride**⁽¹²⁾ in the school. Behavior rules are equally important. Students must **respect**⁽¹³⁾ teachers and each other, avoid running in the **hallways**⁽¹⁴⁾, and help keep the school clean. **Cell phones**⁽¹⁵⁾ are not allowed in class, and eating or drinking inside classrooms is **forbidden**⁽¹⁶⁾. In the classroom, students should arrive on time. They must listen carefully to their teachers and **classmates**⁽¹⁷⁾. Talking while the teacher is speaking is not allowed. Students should **raise**⁽¹⁸⁾ their hands before speaking.

In the library, students should be **quiet**⁽¹⁹⁾, **return books**⁽²⁰⁾ on time, and never write in them.

Good behavior makes the school better for everyone.

٨. الزي الموحد
٩. حذاء رياضي
١٠. ليس مسموح
١١. مهندم
١٢. الفخر
١٣. يحترم
١٤. ممرات/طرق
١٥. التليفون المحمول
١٦. ممنوع
١٧. الزملاء
١٨. يرفع
١٩. هادي
٢٠. يعيدوا الكتب

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. Why should schools have rules ?
2. What does "dress code " mean?
3. Where are students not allowed to eat or drink at school?
4. How does good behavior help students?

- 1- Schools have rules to help create a safe and respectful learning environment.
- 2- The dress code means students must wear the school uniform every day. Jeans and sneakers are not allowed, and uniforms should be kept clean and tidy.
- 3- Students are not allowed to eat or drink inside classrooms.
- 4- Good behavior helps make the school better for everyone by keeping it clean, safe, and respectful, and it helps students learn without problems..

Answers:



Audio Script

SB Page (16)

A school day can be **enjoyable**⁽¹⁾ and **productive**⁽²⁾ if you follow a few simple **steps**⁽³⁾. In the morning, wake up early, **prepare**⁽⁴⁾ your bag, and arrive at school on time.

You should **greet**⁽⁵⁾ your teachers and **classmates**⁽⁶⁾ respectfully, as good **manners**⁽⁷⁾ help create a **positive atmosphere**⁽⁸⁾. During lessons, listen carefully, take clear notes, and **participate**⁽⁹⁾ actively. You should ask questions when you don't understand something, but you shouldn't **interrupt**⁽¹⁰⁾ others while they are speaking. At **break**⁽¹¹⁾ time, choose healthy snacks and drink water because you should take care of your body. Don't run in the **corridors**⁽¹²⁾ to follow safety⁽¹³⁾ rules. After school, review your lessons, do your homework, and organize your **timetable**⁽¹⁴⁾. You shouldn't **waste**⁽¹⁵⁾ your time on **distractions**⁽¹⁶⁾ if you want to succeed. A well-planned school day helps you learn more and feel **confident**⁽¹⁷⁾.

١. ممتع
٢. مثمر
٣. خطوات
٤. يجهز
٥. يحيي
٦. الزملاء
٧. الأخلاق
٨. مناخ ايجابي
٩. يشارك
١٠. يقاطع
١١. الفسحة
١٢. الممرات
١٣. الامان
١٤. جدول المواعيد
١٥. يضع
١٦. أدوات التشتيت
١٧. واثق

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. A _____ is a long narrow passage in a building.
a. behavior b. hallway c. sneakers d. timetable
2. _____ are instructions that tell people what they must or must not do.
a. Sneakers b. Rulers c. Corridors d. Rules
3. _____ are comfortable shoes you wear for sports or walking.
a. Sneakers b. Pants c. Skirts d. Socks
4. _____ is the way someone acts towards others.
a. Safety b. Code c. Behavior d. Note
5. Something which is _____ is not allowed to happen by rules or law.
a. positive b. forbidden c. useful d. wanted

Synonyms and antonyms

6. You need to think carefully. "Carefully" is opposite in meaning to _____.
a. quickly b. carelessly c. actively d. strongly
7. It is forbidden to smoke at school. "Forbidden" is similar in meaning to _____.
a. safe b. banned c. respectful d. allowed
8. It isn't safe to go near the edge. "Safe" is opposite in meaning to _____.
a. difficult b. simple c. stressed d. dangerous
9. A good diet keeps you healthy. "Healthy" can be replaced by _____.
a. sick b. weak c. nervous d. well
10. We are respectful of one another. "Respectful" is opposite in meaning to _____.
a. disappointed b. disrespectful c. kind d. polite

Prefixes and Suffixes

11. The suffix " _____ " gives the adjective of the word "respect"
a. -ment b. -er c. -ful d. -ion
12. To get the adjective from the word "health", we add the suffix " _____ ".
a. -y b. -er c. -ful d. -ion
13. The suffix " _____ " changes the word "product" into an adjective.
a. -ment b. -ive c. -ful d. -ion
14. The prefix _____ means to do again.
a. un- b. re- c. dis- d. il-

Guess the meaning & collocations

15. Students should _____ notes during the lesson so they can study easily.
a. return b. arrive c. take d. avoid
16. Please take _____ of your younger brother while I am at the supermarket.
a. care b. careless c. safe d. careful
17. The players showed great _____ in their team after winning the national championship.
a. proud b. pride c. boring d. shame
18. Students must be _____ to their teachers.
a. quiet b. healthy c. respectful d. forbidden
19. You must _____ the school rules carefully.
a. interrupt b. follow c. pack d. stop
20. Do not run in the school _____ or hallways.
a. break b. preparatory c. corridors d. club
21. Please _____ your hand to ask a question.
a. raise b. avoid c. delay d. greet
22. We should _____ talking when the teacher is talking.
a. participate b. interrupt c. avoid d. listen
23. The _____ says you must wear a uniform.
a. library b. behavior c. dress code d. preparatory
24. Please _____ books to the library on time.
a. stop b. return c. raise d. greet
25. You should _____ your classmates when you see them.
a. interrupt b. greet c. avoid d. participate
26. Please be _____ in the library.
a. productive b. quiet c. safe d. healthy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

distractions - time - notebooks - interrupt - notes

A typical school day can be very enjoyable if you follow a good routine. First, you must arrive at school on ① _____ to start your lessons. In class, it is important to listen carefully and take clear ② _____ to remember what the teacher says. You should respect your teachers and you shouldn't ③ _____ others while they are speaking. After school, review your lessons, do your homework, and organize your timetable. Finally, you shouldn't waste your time on ④ _____ if you want to succeed.



Language

قواعد لغوية

Imperatives

الجملة الأمرية

- We use the imperative to give orders, instructions, or advice to tell someone what to do or not to do.

• نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء الأوامر أو التعليمات أو النصائح لإخبار شخص ما بما يجب فعله أو عدم فعله.

- 1 We use the base form of the verb (without a subject). لا إعطاء امر بفعل شيء:

• نستخدم الصيغة الأساسية للفعل (بدون فاعل) ويستخدم لإعطاء نصيحة أو تعليمات أو أوامر كما يلي.

Ex. Open the door.

Ex. Sit down. (commands)

Ex. Stop talking. (commands)

Ex. Drink more water. (advice)

Ex. Turn on the computer. (instructions)

• لاحظ يمكن أيضا ان نبدأ جملة الامر المثبت بـ "Always".

Ex. Always follow your parents' advice.

- 2 For negative form, we use "Don't + inf.". لا إعطاء الامر بعدم فعل شيء:

• بالنسبة للصيغة المنفية، نستخدم.

Ex. Don't run in the hallway.

Ex. Don't be late.

Ex. Don't talk in the library.

• يمكن أيضا استخدام "Never" كما يلي.

Never + inf.

Ex. Never waste your time.

Ex. Never forget to bring your notebook to class.

• ادرس البدائل التالية لحل سؤال "Rewrite" للامر المثبت والمنفى.

الأمر المثبت (Affirmative Imperative)

أولاً

الجملة الاتية تساوى جملة "Study hard".

المثال	البديل في الـ Rewrite
You should study hard.	You should... (للنصيحة)
It's important to study hard.	It's important to...
You'd better study hard.	You'd better...
Always study hard.	Always...
It is necessary to study hard.	It is necessary to...

(Negative Imperative) الأمر المنفي

ثانياً

الجملة الاتية تساوي **Don't be late or Never be late**

المثال	البديل في الـ Rewrite
You shouldn't be late.	You shouldn't...
You mustn't be late.	You mustn't...
You are not allowed to be late.	You are not allowed to...
Never be late.	Never...
You'd better not be late.	You'd better not...

أمثلة عملية على سؤال الـ Rewrite

1. "Don't park your car here." (Allowed)

You are not allowed to park your car here.

2. "Never waste your time." (Better)

You'd better not waste your time.

3. You should finish your homework before playing basketball. (Don't)

Don't play basketball before finishing your homework.

4. Wake up early. (Don't)

Don't wake up late.

5. Don't speak loudly in the library. (Speak)

Speak quietly in the library.

6. Eat healthy food. (Don't)

Don't eat unhealthy food.

Should & Shouldn't for giving advice

• We use "should" and "shouldn't" to give advice or suggestions.

• نستخدم كلمتي "should" و "shouldn't" لتقديم النصائح أو الاقتراحات.

1 To give advice about something good, we use "should"

• لتقديم نصيحة بشأن شيء جيد، نستخدم كلمة "should".

مصدر الفعل should + inf. فاعل (كل الضمائر) Subject

Ex. You should respect your school rules.

2 To give advice about a bad idea, we use "shouldn't"

مصدر الفعل shouldn't + inf. فاعل (كل الضمائر) Subject

• لتقديم نصيحة بشأن فكرة سيئة، نستخدم "shouldn't".

Ex. You shouldn't talk in the library.

• ملاحظات: هناك تعبيرات تستخدم لإعطاء النصيحة ويمكن استخدامها بدلا من (should)/(shouldn't):

Should	Shouldn't
- It's a good idea to	- It's a bad idea to
- It is advisable to /I advise you to...	- It isn't advisable to /I advise you not to.....
- If I were you I would	- If I were you I wouldn't
- You'd better ... يفضل أن...	- You'd better not

Ex. It is **advisable** to help your mother with the housework.

= You **should** help your mother with the housework.

Ex. If I were you I would go to school early. = You should go to school early.

Ex. It's a bad idea to waste your time. = You shouldn't waste your time.

Exercises on Language

1 Rewrite the sentences correctly using the words between brackets.

Set Book Exercises

- You should wake up early so you aren't late for school. (Wake.....)

- You shouldn't forget your notes on the bus. (Don't.....)

- You shouldn't talk when the teacher is explaining. (Don't.....)

- If I were you I would listen carefully to my teacher. (Listen.....)

- It's advisable to do your homework every day. (Do.....)

- It is advisable to eat breakfast before school. (should)

- If I were you I would check my timetable every morning. (should)

- Students aren't allowed to talk loudly during class time. (shouldn't)

Bit by Bit Exercises

- I advise you to brush your teeth. (should)

- I advise you to see a doctor. (should)

11. My advice is not to eat so much junk food. (shouldn't)
12. It isn't a good idea to walk alone at night. (shouldn't)
13. Be kind to your classmates. (should)
14. You should go to bed early. (Go)
15. You shouldn't cross the road here. (Don't)
16. Don't shout in the library. (shouldn't)
17. It's important to study for the exam. (should)
18. You shouldn't be rude to others. (Never)
19. Always wash your hands before eating. (should)
20. Never forget to do your homework. (shouldn't)
21. You should keep your room tidy. (Keep)
22. Don't waste your time playing games. (shouldn't)
23. You should wear a helmet when you ride your bike. (Wear...)
24. You should drink plenty of water when it's hot outside. (Drink...)
25. You shouldn't feed that wild animal. (Don't...)
26. It's advisable to look both ways before crossing the street. (Look...)
27. You shouldn't run near the swimming pool. (Don't...)

28. It is not a good idea to watch TV right before bed.

(shouldn't)

29. If I were you, I would review the answers of the test.

(should)

30. You are not allowed to use your phone during the exam.

(shouldn't)



Speaking

Ask and answer about "School Rules:

• القواعد في المدارس:

Question

1. Why do you think rules at schools are important?

لماذا تعتقد أن القواعد في المدارس مهمة؟

2. How do school rules help students learn and work together?

كيف تُساعد قواعد المدرسة الطلاب على التعلّم والعمل معاً؟

3. Why does the school have a dress code?

لماذا يوجد زيّ مدرسي مُوحّد؟

4. What is forbidden in the classroom?

ما الممنوع في الفصل؟

Answer

Because rules help us stay safe and learn better.

لأن القواعد تساعدنا على البقاء آمنين والتعلّم بشكل أفضل.

They make school safe, fair, and organized so everyone can focus and cooperate.

إنها تجعل المدرسة بيئة آمنة وعادلة ومنظمة، ما يُتيح للجميع التركيز والتعاون.

To keep students equal, safe, and focused on their work, not their clothes.

لحفاظ على المساواة بين الطلاب وسلامتهم وتركيزهم على دراستهم، لا على ملابسهم

Students mustn't use cell phones in class. Eating or drinking inside classrooms is forbidden. Talking while the teacher is speaking is not allowed.

"يجب ألا يستخدم الطلاب الهواتف المحمولة في الفصل. الأكل أو الشرب داخل الفصول الدراسية ممنوع. كما أن التحدّث أثناء شرح المعلم غير مسموح به.

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The words _____ and allowed are antonyms.
a. safe b. forbidden c. quiet d. respectful
- Healthy is similar in meaning to _____.
a. ill b. sick c. well d. tired
- We turn the verb "enjoy" into an adjective by adding the suffix _____.
a. -ly b. -ive c. -y d. -able
- To get the adverb from careful, we add the suffix _____.
a. -ful b. -ly c. ing d. ed
- He is never late. This means he is always _____ time.
a. at b. for c. on d. from
- The teacher asked us to be quiet and _____ to each other.
a. forbidden b. respectful c. timetable d. sneakers
- Please read the school _____ so you know what is allowed.
a. rulers b. timetable c. rules d. step
- My first _____ for learning English is to study every day.
a. behavior b. step c. sneakers d. hallway
- Our school _____ says we must wear a uniform every day.
a. hallway b. distractions c. environment d. dress code
- A quiet classroom is a good _____ for studying.
a. behavior b. hallway c. rules d. environment
- You should always _____ in class to learn better.
a. run b. participate c. forbidden d. avoid
- Try not to _____ someone when they are talking.
a. productive b. dress code c. interrupt d. delay
- "To be _____, you should not waste your time.
a. forbidden b. careless c. productive d. lazy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

pride - time - proud - allowed - code

Every school has rules to create a positive atmosphere and a safe environment for everyone. First, students should be on ❶ for their classes to avoid wasting time. Second, they must follow the dress ❷ and keep their uniforms clean and tidy. This shows ❸ in their school. Third, using cell phones or eating in class is not ❹ Students should take notes and listen while the teacher is speaking. These rules are well-planned for our safety and success.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. You are required to be quiet in the library. (should)
.....
2. You should read the instructions before starting the test. (Read...)
.....
3. You shouldn't forget to bring a pen to the exam. (Don't...)
.....
4. It's advisable to keep your password secret. (Keep...)
.....
5. If I were you, I would listen to the weather forecast before the trip. (Listen...)
.....
6. You shouldn't touch the hot stove. (Don't...)
.....
7. It's not polite to interrupt someone when they are speaking. (shouldn't)
.....
8. You should be careful.  (Don't)
.....
9. It's a bad idea to skip breakfast. (shouldn't)
.....
10. You are not allowed to swim right after eating a big meal. (shouldn't)
.....

4

Hazem and Ayman are talking about school rules.

Hazem : Hi Ayman! Why do we have so many school rules?

Ayman : Hi Hazem! ① _____ help keep us safe and organized.

Hazem : That is true. But what about our ② _____? It is very full.

Ayman : The timetable is important because it teaches us how to manage our time.

Hazem : I see. It tells us exactly when to study and when to have a ③ _____.

Ayman : Exactly! Without a timetable, the school day would be very messy.

Hazem : So, rules and timetables help us work better together.

Ayman : Yes, they help every 4 _____ succeed and stay safe.

5

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

“Your school day”

Handwriting practice lines (dashed lines on a white background).

• يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات بكتابة التسميع والواجب المنزلي



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

smoothly (adv)	بسهولة/بسهولة	period (n)	فترة/حصّة
organized (adj)	منظم	manage (v) (d)	يدير
fair (n)	معرض	effectively (adv)	بفعالية/بشكل مؤثر
self-control (n)	ضبط النفس		

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

movement (n)	حركة	brush (n)	فرشاة
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	enough (adj)	كافي
subjects (n)	مواد دراسية	special (adj)	خاص
lab book (n)	دفتر العمل	events (n)	فعاليات
coat (n)	معطف	Sports Day (n)	يوم رياضي
science (n)	مادة العلوم	Science Fair (n)	معرض العلوم
art (n)	مادة الرسم/فن	organize (v) (d)	ينظم
responsibility (n)	مسؤولية	review (v) (ed)	يراجع
later (adv)	لاحقًا	prepare (v) (d)	يُعِدّ / يجهز
wisely (adv)	بحكمة		



Definitions

period (n)	فترة/حصّة	a fixed time in a school timetable during which a specific subject or activity is taught
smoothly (adv)	بسهولة	in a calm, easy, and regular way
organize (v)	ينظم	to plan and arrange things in order
effectively (adv)	بفعالية	in a way that works well and produces good results
manage (v)	يدير	to control or direct something successfully

Expressions & Prepositions

full of	مليء بـ	follow it carefully	يتبعه بعناية
manage their time wisely	يدير وقتهم بحكمة	with short breaks	مع فترات راحة قصيرة
respect for time	يحترمون الوقت	change it for	يستبدله بـ
teaches us self-control	يعلموننا ضبط النفس		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
organized	منظم	arranged		disorganized/ messy	فوضوي
effectively	بفعالية	successfully		unsuccessfully	بفشل
smoothly	بسلاسة	easily		inefficiently	بشكل غير فعال
responsibility	مسؤولية	duty		irresponsibility	عدم المسؤولية
wisely	بحكمة	sensibly		foolishly	بغباء / بحماقة
special	خاص	unique		ordinary	عادي

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	responsibility/ activity
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	smoothly -wisely
-ment	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	movement
-ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	organized
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم أو وظيفة	teacher
self-	ذاتي/ بنفسه	self-control

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
bring	يُحضِر	brought	brought
teach	يُعَلِّم	taught	taught
learn	يَتَعَلَّم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1) make + مفعول + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. To **make** everything **run** smoothly, schools use a timetable.

2) In the morning / On Sunday morning

• نستخدم **in** مع فترات اليوم ما عدا **at night** ولكن اذا جاء يوم قبل **morning** نستخدم **on**.

Ex. I go to school **in** the **morning**.

Ex. **On** Sunday **morning**, our class teacher reviews the timetable with us.

3) help ... to inf./inf

يلي فعل **help** اما مصدر الفعل او **to + inf**.

Ex. The timetable helps **everyone** learn/to learn more effectively.

4) Everyone + verb + s/es / ies

• يأتي بعد **everyone** فعل مفرد ولكن يعود عليه ضمير جمع.

Ex. **Everyone** knows what **they** should do.

5) Adjectives / Adverbs

• **Adjectives** : (effective / careful / wise) الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم

Ex. What's the most **effective** way to control crime?

Ex. She's a **careful** student.

Ex. I think that's a very **wise** decision.

• **Adverbs** : (effectively / carefully / wisely) الحال (الظرف) هو كلمة تصف الفعل
الحال (الظرف) : يتكون باضافة (**ly**) للصفة

Ex. Having a timetable helps students manage their time **wisely**.

Ex. Having a timetable helps everyone learn more **effectively**.

Ex. We follow the timetable **carefully**.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The most _____ solution to traffic is to build more roads.
a. effectively b. effect c. effective d. affect
- She's a very _____ driver.
a. carefully b. care c. careful d. carefulness
- This book helps me _____ well.
a. studies b. study c. to study d. c&d
- I go to the park _____ Friday morning.
a. in b. on c. at d. of
- Everyone _____ a role at school.
a. have b. having c. has d. be

Reading

SB Page (18)

SB Page (18)

Read the article. How does a timetable help you organize your school day?

Every school day is **full of**⁽¹⁾ lessons, **activities**⁽²⁾, and movement. To make everything run **smoothly**⁽³⁾, schools use a **timetable**⁽⁴⁾. A timetable shows the **subjects**⁽⁵⁾ for each **period**⁽⁶⁾ and helps students know what to **bring**⁽⁷⁾ and when to be ready. Having a timetable is very important. It keeps students **organized**⁽⁸⁾ and helps them **manage**⁽⁹⁾ their time wisely. For example, if you have **science**⁽¹⁰⁾ first, you bring your **lab book**⁽¹¹⁾ and **coat**⁽¹²⁾. If you have art later, you **prepare**⁽¹³⁾ your colors and **brushes**⁽¹⁴⁾. Teachers also follow the timetable, so every subject gets enough time. At our school, the school day starts at 8:00 a.m and finishes at 3:00 p.m. We have eight periods every day with short **breaks**⁽¹⁵⁾ between lessons. On Sunday morning, our class teacher **reviews**⁽¹⁶⁾ the timetable with us so we can prepare for the week. Sometimes, we change it for

استمع إلى النصوص



- ملء
- أنشطة
- بسهولة
- جدول مواعيد
- مواد دراسية
- حصة/فترة
- يحضّر
- منظم
- يدير
- مادة العلوم
- دفتر العمل
- معطف
- يحضّر
- فرشة
- استراحات
- يراجع

special **events**⁽¹⁷⁾ like **Sports Day**⁽¹⁸⁾ or the **Science Fair**⁽¹⁹⁾, but most days we follow it carefully. The timetable teaches us **self-control**⁽²⁰⁾, **responsibility**⁽²¹⁾, and **respect**⁽²²⁾ for time, which helps everyone learn more **effectively**⁽²³⁾.

١٧. فعاليات
١٨. يوم رياضي
١٩. معرض العلوم
٢٠. ضبط النفس
٢١. مسؤولية
٢٢. احترام
٢٣. بشكل مؤثر

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- A _____ is a fixed time in a school timetable during which a specific subject or activity is taught.
a. behavior b. hallway c. period d. timetable
- _____ means in a way that works well and produces good results.
a. Carelessly b. Effectively c. Smoothly d. Quietly
- To _____ means to control or direct something successfully .
a. behave b. move c. organize d. fail
- To _____ means to to plan and arrange things in order.
a. behave b. prepare c. show d. manage
- _____ means in a calm, easy, and regular way .
a. Carelessly b. Effectively c. Smoothly d. Quietly

Synonyms &Antonyms

- There are no problems and everything goes smoothly. " Smoothly " is opposite in meaning to _____ .
a. easily b. inefficiently c. quickly d. effectively
- Organized people are more successful. "Organized" can be replaced by _____ .
a. easy b. messy c. arranged d. uncommon
- They've spent their money wisely.. " Wisely " is opposite in meaning to _____ .
a. foolishly b. sensibly c. smoothly d. hardly

- d. successfully

Prefixes and Suffixes

- d. -ness

Guess the meaning

- #### d. movements

21. It is my _____ to clean my room every weekend.
 a. period b. responsibility c. self-control d. timetable
22. The school concert and picnic are fun _____.
 a. subjects b. events c. movements d. responsibilities
23. Students participate in different races on _____.
 a. Sports Day b. Science Fair c. lab book d. timetable
24. Our project won first prize at the _____.
 a. coat b. brush c. Science Fair d. subjects
25. Who will _____ the class party?
 a. review b. show c. organize d. prepare
26. She can _____ her work and her hobbies well.
 a. show b. manage c. review d. lose
27. The team worked _____ and finished early.
 a. later b. effectively c. badly d. foolishly
28. We have one _____ left before the final exam.
 a. period b. movement c. responsibility d. coat

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

smoothly - timetable - reviewed - foolish - self - control

To have a productive school day, you must stay organized. Every morning, I check my ❶ _____ to know my classes and prepare my books. At school, I follow the rules and show ❷ _____ by listening to my teachers and not talking to friends during lessons. This helps everything go ❸ _____. When I return home, I ❹ _____ what I learned to remember the information. Being responsible makes my school life easier and more successful.

• يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات بكتابة التسميع والواجب المنزلي



استمع إلى المفردات
المفردات الإضافية

Vocabulary

principal (n)	مدير المدرسة	focused (adj)	مركز
morning line (n)	طابور الصباح	exactly (adv)	بالضبط
notice (n)	إشعار / ملاحظة	service (n)	خدمة
confused (adj)	مُرتبك	floors (n)	طوابق
uniform (n)	زي موحد	gym (n)	صالة رياضية
maybe (adv)	ربما	computer lab (n)	معمل حاسوب
fixed (adj)	ثابت	patient (adj)	صبور
chart (n)	مخطط	friendly (adj)	ودود
daily (adj)	يومي	drama club (n)	نادي التمثيل
duties (n)	واجبات	overall (adv)	بشكل عام
excellent (adj)	ممتاز	review (v) (ed)	يراجع
P.E. (n) = Physical Education	تربية بدنية	attend (v) (ed)	يحضر
active (adj)	نشط	discuss (v) (ed)	يناقش
helpful (adj)	متعاون / مفيد	plan (v) (ed)	يخطط
fun (adj)	ممتع	manage (v) (d)	يدير
term (n)	فصل دراسي	present (v) (ed)	يقدم
politely (adv)	بادب		

Expressions & Prepositions

confused about	أنا مرتبك بشأن .	Good point!	يتحدث عن
That makes sense.	هذا منطقي.	talk about	يتحدث عن
Sure. By the way,	بالتأكيد. بالمناسبة.	The best thing about	أفضل ما في
My opinion	رأيي	The problem is	المشكلة هي
I think that	أعتقد أن	My favorite	مفضلتي
What I like most	أكثر ما يعجبني	a bit different	مختلف قليلا
makes learning easy	يجعل التعلم سهلاً	share with	يشارك مع
change the order of	يغير ترتيب	write down	يدون



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
true	صحيح	right	untrue/false غير صحيح
fixed	ثابت	stable	flexible مرن
active	نشط	energetic	lazy كسول
confused	مربك	puzzled /distracted	clear/calm هادئ

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ful	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	powerful / helpful
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	daily / exactly/politely
-ed	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	confused

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
wear	يرتدي	wear	worn
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
grow	ينمو	grew	grown



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 every day / everyday

- every day (adv.) كلمتان منفصلتان - وتستخدم كظرف بمعنى (كل يوم)

Ex. I go to school every day.

- everyday (adj) كلمة واحدة متصلة - وتستخدم كصفة بمعنى (يومي) - ولا بد أن يأتي بعدها اسم

Ex. We have to face the problems of our everyday life.

2 confused/ confusing (Adjectives ending in (-ing / -ed)

• تستخدم الصفات المنتهية ب **ed**

• لوصف شعور من لديه الصفة

• **confused (adj)** مرتبك/متحير

Ex. This lesson is difficult, I am **confused**.

• **confusing (adj)** مربك/محير

• تستخدم الصفات المنتهية ب **ing** (لوصف المتسبب في شعور الآخرين بهذه الصفة)

Ex. This grammar lesson is **confusing**. I'm **confused**.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Esraa had nothing to do; she was
a. boring b. bored c. bore d. boredom
- Reading is part of my routine.
a. every day b. everyday c. a day d. all day
- Are you in working abroad?
a. interest b. interesting c. interests d. interested
- The students were about the timetable.
a. confuse b. confusing c. confused d. confusion

Reading

SB Page (22)

SB Page (22)

Read the following dialog.

Ahmed : Mahmoud, the **principal**⁽¹⁾ says we need to **review**⁽²⁾ the new school rules and timetable for this **term**⁽³⁾.

Mahmoud : Yeah, I saw the **notice**⁽⁴⁾. Some students were **confused**⁽⁵⁾ about the new timetable. What **changes**⁽⁶⁾ do you think we have to discuss?

Ahmed : Well, we start with the **morning line**⁽⁷⁾. It's now at 7:45, so everyone must arrive earlier.

Mahmoud : That makes sense. It keeps the school more organized. Students should also wear the school **uniform**⁽⁸⁾ every day.

استمع إلى النصوص



1. مدير المدرسة
2. تراجع
3. الفصل الدراسي
4. إشعار / ملاحظة
5. مرتبك
6. تغييرات
7. طابور الصباح
8. الزي الموحد

- Ahmed** : Right. And students mustn't use their phones **during**⁽⁹⁾ lessons. It's one of the most important **rules**⁽¹⁰⁾.
- Mahmoud** : True. We should also **plan**⁽¹¹⁾ how to **manage**⁽¹²⁾ homework time-maybe each class could have a **fixed study period**⁽¹³⁾ after school.
- Ahmed** : **Good point**⁽¹⁴⁾! We can make a **chart**⁽¹⁵⁾ showing the daily timetable and class **duties**⁽¹⁶⁾.
- Mahmoud** : Excellent! Let's **present**⁽¹⁷⁾ our ideas to the teacher tomorrow so everyone knows and follows the rules.

٩. أثناء
١٠. قواعد
١١. نخطط
١٢. يدير
١٣. وقت محدد
للدراسة
١٤. ملاحظة جيدة
١٥. رسم توضيحي
١٦. واجبات
١٧. نقدم



SB Page (23)

- Student A** : What time does school start?
- Student B** : It starts at 7:30. We have **8 periods** a day.
- Student A** : **Right!** And what's our first lesson today?
- Student B** : It 's English. **Don't forget** your notebook!
- Student A** : Sure. **By the way**, we mustn't use phones in class.
- Student B** : **Exactly!** Good students always follow the rules.

Read the following dialog:

- Sama** : Rana, our teacher said we need to talk about the new school rules and timetable.
- Rana** : Yes, I heard! The rules are a bit different this year. What do you think about them?
- Sama** : I think they're good. For example, students must be in class before 8 o'clock.
- Rana** : That's true. It helps everyone start the day on time. But I think we should have a longer break.
- Sama** : Maybe! But the timetable is already full with lessons and activities.
- Rana** : Right. Still, we could suggest changing the order of some subjects-like having P.E. before break.
- Sama** : Good point! It would make students more active and focused after the break.
- Rana** : Let's write our ideas down and share them with the class tomorrow.



Speaking skills

Giving advice, - Agreeing politely and Making a plan.

• اسداء النصح-الموافقة بادب-عمل خطة.

Giving advice تقديم النصائح	Agreeing politely الموافقة بلطف	Making a plan وضع خطة
• We should ... ينبغي علينا...	• That makes sense. هذا منطقي.	• Let's present..... لنقدم
• We shouldn't..... لا ينبغي علينا...	• Good point! ملاحظة جيدة!	• I think we should.... أعتقد أنه ينبغي علينا...
• We need to نحتاج إلى..	• True./ Right! / Exactly . صحيح! / تمامًا!	• Still, we could..... مع ذلك، يمكننا...
		• Sure. By the way بالتأكيد. بالمناسبة...



Writing Tip

Writing A school report

كتابة تقرير مدرسي

• A school report includes : يتضمن التقرير المدرسي ما يلي

1. Start with a title:

e.g. "My School Day"

١. ابدأ بعنوان:

مثال: "يومي الدراسي"

2. Write an introduction:

e.g. "Our school day starts at 7:30 and ends at 2:00"

٢. اكتب مقدمة:

مثال: "يبدأ يومنا الدراسي الساعة 7:30 وينتهي الساعة 2:00"

3. Use paragraphs:

e.g. Each paragraph should talk about one idea.

٣. استخدم فقرات:

يجب أن تتناول كل فقرة فكرة واحدة.

4. Use time words:

e.g. "first, then , after that ... "

٤. استخدم كلمات تدل على الزمن:

مثال: "أولاً، ثم، بعد ذلك..."

5. End with a conclusion:

e.g. "I enjoy my school because I learn many new things" ..

٥. اختتم بخاتمة:

مثال: "أستمتع بمدرستي لأنني أتعلم أشياء جديدة كثيرة".

- Read the following report:

My School Day

I am a student at a preparatory school in Cairo. I want to tell you about my school life and what I think about it.

First, our school is an old building and has two floors. We have 15 classrooms, a big **library**, one computer lab, and a gym.

Next, my teachers are very **helpful** and patient. My favorite teacher is Mrs. Nermin, who teaches English. She makes learning easy and **fun** with games and songs.

The students at my school are friendly and respectful. After school, I play in the school **playground**, and then I attend the art club. After that we also have sports teams and a drama club.

Overall, I really like my school. The learning is good, and I have many friends. I think my school is a great place to **learn** and grow.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms & Antonyms

1. She's over 80, but is still very active. "**Active**" is opposite in meaning to
a. energetic b. careless c. lazy d. strong
2. I am confused about the new lesson. "**Confused**" is similar in meaning to
a. interested b. puzzled c. amazed d. clear
3. The classes begin and end at fixed times. "**Fixed**" is opposite in meaning to
a. stable b. simple c. flexible d. dangerous
4. All the answers in my exam were true. "**True**" can be replaced by
a. right b. weak c. nervous d. false

Prefixes and Suffixes

5. We add the suffix to the word polite to get the adverb.
a. -ing b. -ed c. -ly d. -ive
6. To get the adjective from the word "power", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -y b. -er c. -ful d. -ion

Unit 7 My School Life

7. The suffix " _____ " changes the word "confuse" into an adjective.

- a. -ed b. -ive c. -ful d. -ion

Guess the meaning

8. The _____ manages the school effectively.

- a. maybe b. notice c. principal d. service

9. I felt _____ by the difficult instructions.

- a. friendly b. confused c. active d. patient

10. Students stand in the _____ before class starts.

- a. gym b. uniform c. morning line d. chart

11. All students must wear a school _____.

- a. duty b. uniform c. club d. song

12. Brushing your teeth is a _____ habit.

- a. friendly b. monthly c. daily d. overall

13. We play football in _____ class.

- a. P.E. b. drama c. computer d. daily

14. My friend is very _____ and shares his pencils.

- a. helpful b. daily c. helpless d. foolish

15. The school party was really _____.

- a. fixed b. fun c. service d. patient

16. Students perform a _____ by cleaning the garden.

- a. uniform b. plan c. service d. review

17. Our flat is on the fifth _____.

- a. gym b. duties c. songs d. floor

18. Our school has a large _____ for sports.

- a. computer lab b. drama club c. gym d. morning line

19. A good teacher is _____ and waits for students to understand.

- a. fun b. nervous c. patient d. angry

20. My new classmate is very _____ and always says hello.

- a. confused b. friendly c. fixed d. daily

21. I joined the _____ to act in plays.

- a. gym b. morning line c. drama club d. computer lab

22. You must _____ all your classes so you understand your lessons.
 a. discuss b. plan c. attend d. present
23. I was confused _____ the math problem.
 a. at b. of c. about d. to
24. _____ the way! I did not think of that idea.
 a. By b. At c. On d. For

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

learn - principal - teach - line - attend

We love our school. Our school ① _____ is very friendly. We stand in the morning ② _____ in our uniform. We ③ _____ all our classes. In P.E., we are very active in the gym. We also plan our work. Overall, school is fun. We ④ _____ new things every day.

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&6

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What is Mazen's mother's job?
 a. An engineer b. A farmer c. A teacher d. A doctor
2. Where does Mazen's family live?
 a. In a city apartment b. In a house on a farm
 c. In the school d. Near the sea

B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. How many brothers and sisters does Mazen have?

.....

4. What do Mazen's parents teach their children to love?

.....

5. Where does Mazen's mother work?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We play basketball and do exercise in the _____.
a. classroom b. kitchen c. gym d. morning line
2. Can you _____ your homework and your hobbies?
a. present b. manage c. learn d. notice
3. You will _____ your project to the class.
a. discuss b. plan c. attend d. present
4. We go to school to _____ new things.
a. manage b. learn c. present d. notice
5. Did you _____ the new sign on the door?
a. plan b. notice c. fixed d. attend
6. The school _____ spoke to all the students.
a. review b. principal c. uniform d. chart
7. Your idea is very clear and logical; it really _____.!
a. writes down b. makes sense
c. shares with d. changes the order
8. In my _____, English is an easy language.
a. opinion b. gym c. morning line d. fixed
9. The hard question made me feel _____.
a. active b. confused c. excellent d. fixed
10. We stand in the _____ before going to class.
a. duties b. morning line c. P.E. d. chart
11. This book is a _____ different from the one I read yesterday.
a. same b. bit c. fixed d. patient
12. Please _____ the homework in your notebook.
a. share with b. write down c. confuse d. sense
13. I like to share my ideas _____ my friends.
a. down b. of c. with d. on

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Maybe - present - notice - teach - discuss

We usually ① _____ problems in class. Yesterday, we had a service project to help the park. We sang songs while we worked. The broken gate is now fixed. ② _____ tomorrow we will ③ _____ our project. Did you ④ _____ our good work?

4 Finish the following dialog:

Ahmed is asking Bahaa about the test.

Ahmed : Good morning! How are you today?

Bahaa : Fine Thanks,

Ahmed : Are you ready for the test?

Bahaa : I will ① my notes in the morning
② before class.

Ahmed : Good plan. Did you ③ the new chart on the wall?

Bahaa : No, is there anything important on it?

Ahmed : It shows our ④ for the whole week.

Bahaa : Ok. I'll go and see it.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The activities you did at school last week"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- When did you do the activities?
- What were the activities?
- What did you do in art class?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

- Last week at school.....
- My team presented a project about.....
- In art class, we used a special brush

Review on Unit 7

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

rules (n)	قواعد	confident (adj)	واثق
behavior (n)	سلوك/ تصرف	raise (d)	يرفع
dress code (n)	قواعد الزي	interrupt (ed)	يقاطع
smoothly (adv)	بسلاسة/ بسهولة	participate (d)	يشارك
organized (adj)	منظم	responsibility (n)	مسؤولية
fair (n)	معرض	wisely (adv)	بحكمة
self-control (n)	ضبط النفس	Sports Day (n)	يوم رياضي
principal (n)	مدير المدرسة	Science Fair (n)	معرض العلوم
confused (adj)	مرتبك	organize (d)	ينظم
respectful (adj)	محترم للآخرين	duties (n)	واجبات
well-planned (adj)	مدروس بعناية	gym (n)	صالة رياضية
corridor (n) = hallway	طريقة/ ممر	sneakers (n)	حذاء رياضي
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	forbidden (adj)	ممنوع
distractions (n)	مشتتات	period (n)	فترة/ حصة
productive (adj)	مثمر	manage (v) (d)	يدير
avoid (d)	يتجنب	effectively (adv)	بفعالية/ بشكل مؤثر



Language

قواعد لغوية

Imperatives

الجملة الأمرية

- We use the imperative to give orders, instructions, or advice to tell someone what to do or not to do.

• نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء الأوامر أو التعليمات أو النصائح لإخبار شخص ما بما يجب فعله أو عدم فعله.

- We use the base form of the verb (without a subject).

لإعطاء امر بفعل شيء:

• نستخدم الصيغة الأساسية للفعل (بدون فاعل) ويستخدم لإعطاء نصيحة أو تعليمات أو أوامر كما يلي.

Ex. Open the door.

Ex. Sit down. (commands)

Ex. Stop talking. (commands)

Ex. Drink more water. (advice)

Ex. Turn on the computer. (instructions)

• لاحظ يمكن أيضا ان نبدأ جملة الامر المثبت بـ " **Always** " .

Ex. **Always** follow your parents' advice.

2 For negative form, we use "Don't + inf. " .

لاعطاء الامر بعدم فعل شيء:

• بالنسبة للصيغة المنفية، نستخدم .

Ex. **Don't run** in the hallway.

Ex. **Don't be** late.

Ex. **Don't talk** in the library.

• يمكن أيضا استخدام " **Never** " كما يلي .

Never + inf.

Ex. **Never** waste your time.

Ex. **Never** forget to bring your notebook to class.

• ادرس البدائل التالية لحل سؤال " **Rewrite** " للامر المثبت والمنفى .

الأمر المثبت (Affirmative Imperative)

أولاً

الجملة الاتية تساوى جملة **Study hard** .

المثال	البديل في الـ Rewrite
You should study hard.	You should... (للنصيحة)
It's important to study hard.	It's important to...
You'd better study hard.	You'd better...
Always study hard.	Always...
It is necessary to study hard.	It is necessary to...

الأمر المنفى (Negative Imperative)

ثانياً

الجملة الاتية تساوى **Don't be late or Never be late** .

المثال	البديل في الـ Rewrite
You shouldn't be late.	You shouldn't...
You mustn't be late.	You mustn't...
You are not allowed to be late.	You are not allowed to...
Never be late.	Never...
You'd better not be late.	You'd better not...

Should & Shouldn't for giving advice

- We use "should" and "shouldn't" to give advice or suggestions.

• نستخدم كلمتي "should" و "shouldn't" لتقديم النصائح أو الاقتراحات.

1 To give advice about something good, we use "should"

• لتقديم نصيحة بشأن شيء جيد، نستخدم كلمة "should".

مصدر الفعل **should + inf.** فاعل (كل الضمائر) **Subject**

Ex. You **should** respect **your** school rules.

2 To give advice about a bad idea, we use "shouldn't"

مصدر الفعل **shouldn't + inf.** فاعل (كل الضمائر) **Subject**

• لتقديم نصيحة بشأن فكرة سيئة، نستخدم "shouldn't".

Ex. You **shouldn't** talk in the library.

• ملاحظات: هناك تعبيرات تستخدم لإعطاء النصيحة ويمكن استخدامها بدلا من (should) / (shouldn't):

Should	Shouldn't
- It's a good idea to	- It's a bad idea to
- It is advisable to / I advise you to...	- It isn't advisable to / I advise you not to.....
- If I were you I would	- If I were you I wouldn't
- You'd better ... يفضل أن...	- You'd better not

Ex. It is **advisable** to help your mother with the housework.

= You **should** help your mother with the housework.

Ex. If I were you I would go to school early. = You should go to school early.

Ex. It's a bad idea to waste your time. = You shouldn't waste your time.

Speaking

Ask and answer about "School Rules:

• القواعد في المدارس:

Question

1. Why do you think rules at schools are important?

لماذا تعتقد أن القواعد في المدارس مهمة؟

2. How do school rules help students learn and work together?

كيف تُساعد قواعد المدرسة الطلاب على التعلم والعمل معا؟

Answer

Because rules help us stay safe and learn better.

لأن القواعد تساعدنا على البقاء آمنين والتعلم بشكل أفضل.

They make school safe, fair, and organized so everyone can focus and cooperate.

إنها تجعل المدرسة بيئة آمنة وعادلة ومنظمة، ما يُتيح للجميع التركيز والتعاون.

Question

3. Why does the school have a dress code?

لماذا يوجد زي مدرسي مُوحد؟

4. What is forbidden in the classroom?

ما الممنوع في الفصل؟

Answer

To keep students equal, safe, and focused on their work, not their clothes.

لحفاظ على المساواة بين الطلاب وسلامتهم وتركيزهم على دراستهم، لا على ملابسهم

Students mustn't use cell phones in class. Eating or drinking inside classrooms is forbidden. Talking while the teacher is speaking is not allowed.

"يجب ألا يستخدم الطلاب الهواتف المحمولة في الفصل. الأكل أو الشرب داخل الفصول الدراسية ممنوع. كما أن التحدث أثناء شرح المعلم غير مسموح به.

**Giving advice,
- Agreeing politely and Making a plan.**

• اسداء النصـح-الموافقة بادلـب-عمل خطة.

Giving advice تقديم النصائح:	Agreeing politely الموافقة بلطف:	Making a plan وضع خطة:
• We should ... ينبغي علينا...	• That makes sense. هذا منطقي.	• Let's present..... لنقدم
• We shouldn't..... لا ينبغي علينا...	• Good point! ملاحظة جيدة!	• I think we should.... أعتقد أنه ينبغي علينا...
• We need to نحتاج إلى..	• True./ Right! / Exactly . صحيح! / تمامًا!	• Still, we could..... مع ذلك، يمكننا...
		• Sure. By the way بالتأكيد. بالمناسبة...

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

My school day starts early in the morning. I always wake up at 6:00 AM because it is important to be on time. First, I put on my school uniform; I make sure it is clean and tidy because we must follow the school dress code. When I arrive at school, I meet my friends in the playground. During lessons, I listen carefully to my teachers and take notes in my notebooks. I try my best to be productive and never waste time playing or talking. In the break, I eat a healthy snack. At 2:00 PM, I go home. I really show pride in my school because it is a safe and friendly place.

Lessons 5 & 6

Last week at school was very busy and fun. On Monday, we had a Science Fair in the lap. My team presented a project about plants. On Tuesday, we used the computer lab to research for an English essay. Wednesday was Sports Day! We played football and ran races. It was very productive. On Thursday, I attended drama club after school. Friday was my favorite. In art class, we used a special brush to paint. In the afternoon, our teacher was patient and helped us review for a math test. Overall, it was an excellent week. I learned many new things and enjoyed time with my friendly classmates.

Al-Azhar Test

Every school has rules to make everything go smoothly. First, students should arrive on time and stand quietly in the morning line. It is important to wear the school uniform to look organized. Following these rules helps us stay safe and makes our school a better place for everyone.

Test on Unit 7

My school day starts when I stand in the morning line wearing my uniform. First, we attend lessons in different subjects like science and English. After that, we go to the gym for P.E. class, where we run and play active games. During the lunch break, I talk with my friendly classmates. In the afternoon, we might have art or use the computer lab. Sometimes I feel confused by a hard problem, but my teachers are patient and helpful. At the end of the day, I review my notes. I have daily duties like cleaning the classroom floor. Overall, my school day is busy but good for learning.

Al Azhar

Test

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What does Fawzy's father keep on his farm?
2. What time does Fawzy's school day start?

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Samy meets his friend Hani in the street.

Hani : I see you're in a hurry ①

Samy : I'm going to the hospital.

Hani : ②

Samy : To visit my uncle ③

Hani : Could I go with you, Samy?

Samy : Yes, of course.

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Something which is is not allowed to happen by rules or law.
a. favorable b. forbidden c. permitted d. wanted
2. Is this place safe for children? "Safe" is similar in meaning to.....
a. difficult b. secure c. stressed d. dangerous
3. run in the corridors.
a. Didn't b. Don't c. Doesn't d. Always
4. You should down notes during class.
a. wrote b. writes c. write d. writing

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. You should always used few salt in your food. (.....)
2. Doesn't be late for school, Mona. (.....)
3. You should always been polite. (.....)
4. Listening carefully to your teacher. (.....)

D. Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Reading is a useful and important habit in our modern life. We read books when we are alone or have free time. A lot of people prefer watching television but I like reading because it widens my mind. I can find new ideas and a lot of information which help me to make my life better. It gives me the chance to think and dream. Although we live in the age of computer, the internet and there is a television set in every house, we need to read books which are easier to carry and move with us everywhere. Try to read a book in the shade of a tree in a garden or a field and I am sure you will enjoy it very much.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why is reading important and useful?
2. Where can you read a book?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. _____ people prefer watching TV.
a. A few b. Much c. Many d. Little
4. The underlined word "It" refers to _____.
a. computer b. the internet c. reading d. television

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

"School rules "

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Test on Unit 7

A. Listening

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What do you need to study effectively?
 - a. A special brush
 - b. An organized timetable
 - c. A new coat
 - d. A clean lab book
2. What must you do every day?
 - a. Wear a coat
 - b. Review your subjects
 - c. Use a brush
 - d. Prepare smoothly

B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. What are two things a good student uses in their classes?
.....
4. What is your responsibility in science class?
.....
5. How should you prepare your work?
.....

B. Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. are instructions that tell people what they must or must not do.
 - a. Sneakers
 - b. Manners
 - c. Corridors
 - d. Rules
2. The film was based on a true story. "True" is opposite in meaning to.....
 - a. right
 - b. weak
 - c. nervous
 - d. false
3. You are right! That is a, I agree with you.
 - a. good point
 - b. confused
 - c. timetable
 - d. principal
4. To get the noun of the word "active", we add the suffix ".....".
 - a. -ment
 - b. -ity
 - c. -ship
 - d. -ion

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

manage - confused - review - duties - confusing

I have to do many things every day. My daily ① include cleaning the floors. I also ② my chart for class. Sometimes I feel ③, but my teacher is patient and helpful. After school, I go to the drama club or the computer lab. It is an excellent way to ④ my time.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

I'm a student in the second year at a prep school. My school is clean and beautiful. It is the biggest one in the town. I like it very much for many reasons. Firstly, I'm lucky to have good teachers, specially the teachers of English. Secondly, I can practise my hobbies in my school such as drawing, reading in its big library, playing music and playing football.

Thirdly, all the students and I can learn how to use the computer and the internet. My school day starts at 8 o'clock in the morning and ends at 2 o'clock in the afternoon. Students don't go to school on Friday or Saturday every week. In short, I'm very proud of my school.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The writer's school is a
a. primary school b. prep school
c. secondary school d. school for KG
- The writer and all students spend hours at school every day.
a. 2 b. 4 c. 8 d. 6

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why does the writer think himself lucky?

.....

- What are the hobbies that the writer can practise in this school?

.....

- What does the underlined word "It" refer to?

.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. The animals believed that human didn't belong to the wild.	☐	☐
2. Shere Khan swore that he would one day be friends with the man-cub.	☐	☐
3. Baloo, the bear, was responsible for teaching the Law of the Jungle to young animals.	☐	☐
4. Bagheera offered a freshly killed ox in exchange of the boy.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Who supported Mother Wolf?

6. Why do you think the animals were surprised when they first discovered the human child in the cave?

C. Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. If I were you, I would save some money for the journey. (Save.....)

2. Good students wouldn't waste their time. (shouldn't)

3. It's a good idea to help your parents at home. (should...)

4. You are not allowed to take photos here. (shouldn't)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Yasser meets a tourist.

Yasser : Where do you come from?

Tourist : I ① from England.

Yasser : How long will you ② here?

Tourist : I'll stay here for two weeks .

Yasser : What places will you ③ ?

Tourist : I will visit Luxor and Aswan.

Yasser : Have a nice ④ in Egypt.

Tourist : Thank you.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

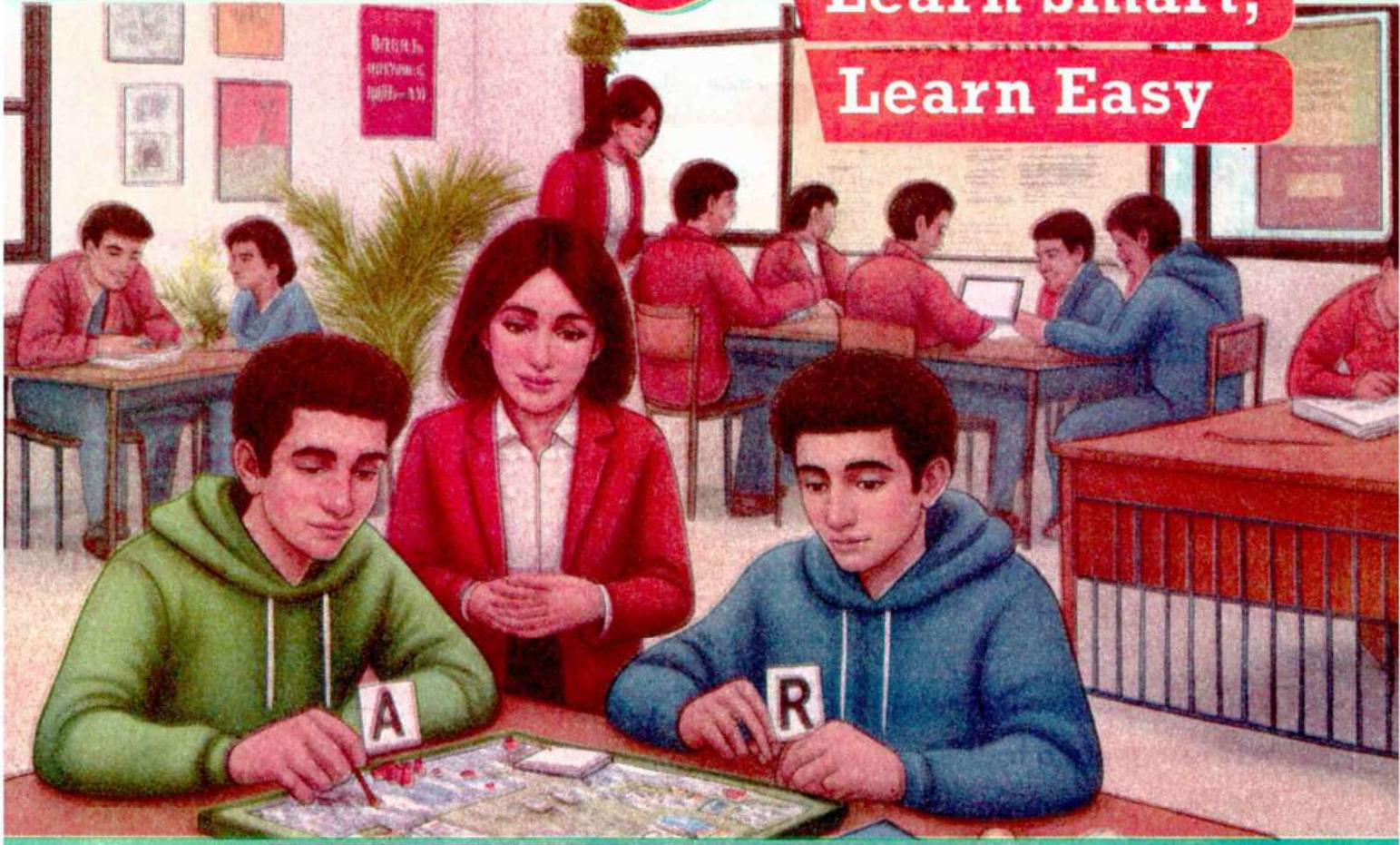
"Your School Day"

.....

.....

.....

.....



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify the main idea of a text about games and getting smarter
- Identify specific details

Listening:

- Identify the gist of a text about games and getting smarter
- Identify how teachers make learning fun
- Identify a teacher's advice and belief about learning

Speaking:

- Participate in a mini debate using reasons and vocabulary from the lesson
- Share ideas about how to make learning fun
- Discuss different study methods and learning preferences

Language:

- Contrast connectors

Writing:

- Create a "Study Tips" poster with 4-5 practical tips and explanations (90-100) words



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

concentration (n)	تركيز	shy (adj)	خجول
brain training games (n)	ألعاب تدريب العقل/ ألعاب تنمية الذكاء	improve (v) (d)	يحسّن
mental (adj)	عقلي	combine (v) (d)	يجمع
expert (n)	خبير	participate (v) (d)	يشارك
interactive apps (n)	تطبيقات تفاعلية	handle (v) (d)	يتعامل مع
effective (adj)	فَعَال	support (v) (ed)	يدعم
encourage (v) (d)	يشجّع	motivate (v) (d)	يحفز

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

smarter (adj)	أذكى	growth (n)	نمو
scientist (n)	عالِم	stranger (n)	غريب
certain (adj)	مُؤَكَّد / مُعَيَّن	debate (n)	نقاش / جدال
research (n)	بحث / أبحاث	funny (adj)	مضحك
especially (adv)	خُصُوصًا	space (n)	فضاء
puzzle games (n)	ألعاب الألغاز	group activities (n)	أنشطة جماعية
clearly (adv)	بوضوح	memory skills (n)	مهارات الذاكرة
real life (n)	الحياة الواقعية	language learning (n)	تعلّم اللغات
action games (n)	ألعاب الحركة	educational (adj)	تعليمي
learning games (n)	ألعاب التعلّم	education (n)	تعليم
enjoyable (adj)	مُمتِع	development (n)	تطوير
style (n)	أسلوب / نمط	task (n)	مهمة
role (n)	دور	goal (n)	هدف
gradually (adv)	تدريجياً	develop (v) (ed)	يطوّر
needs (n)	احتياجات	balance (v) (d)	يوازن
traditional methods (n)	الطرق التقليدية	distract (v) (ed)	يشتت
proper equipment (n)	المعدات المناسبة	believe (v) (d)	يؤمن
tools (n)	أدوات	seem (v) (ed)	يبدو
basic (adj)	أساسي	invite (v) (d)	يدعو
administrator (n)	مدير / مسئول	ignore (v) (d)	يتجاهل
digital learning (n)	التعلم الرقمي	replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
actively (adv)	بنشاط	engage (v) (d)	يتفاعل / يشارك
mind (n)	عقل		



Definitions

concentration	تركيز	focusing your mind on one thing
mental	عقلي	related to ⁽¹⁾ the mind or thinking
experts	خبراء	people who know a lot about something
combine	يجمع	to put things together
shy	خجول	not confident ⁽²⁾ to talk to others
participate	يشارك	to take part in ⁽³⁾ an activity

١. مرتبط ب

٢. واثق

٣. يشارك في

Expressions & Prepositions

play video games	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو	combine.... with	يجمع/ يدمج بين... و...
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	have fun	يستمتع/ يقضي وقتاً ممتعاً
for fun	من أجل المتعة	good for	جيد لـ
solve problems	يحل مشاكل	take part in	يشارك في
popular with	شائع بين	get distracted	ينشغل/ يشتت انتباهه
popular in	شائع في	keep active	يبقي ... نشطاً
focus on	يركز على	take a long time	يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً
work harder	يعمل بجد أكبر	make sure	يتأكد
find solutions	يجد حلول	That sounds wonderful	هذا يبدو رائعاً
develop quick thinking	يطور التفكير السريع	join in	يشارك



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
smart	ذكي	intelligent/ clever	foolish احمق
fun/ enjoyable	ممتع	amusing	boring ممل
concentration	تركيز	focus	distracton إلهاء/ تشتيت
popular	شائع/ منتشر	well-known	unknown غير معروف
effective	فعال	successful	ineffective غير فعال
shy	خجول	timid	confident واثق
active	نشط	energetic	lazy/ inactive كسول
quiet	هادئ	calm	noisy صاخب

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	concentration/ education
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	training/ learning/ thinking
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	clearly / actively / carefully/ gradually/ effectively
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	educational
-ment	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	development
-able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	enjoyable
-ive	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	effective/ interactive
-ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	focused
inter-	بين / بيني (تدل على وجود رابط بين شيئين)	interactive

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought	thought
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
know	يعرف / يعلم	knew	known
speak	يتحدث / يتكلم	spoke	spoken
cost	يكلف	cost	cost



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 search / research

• search

• يبحث عن شيء سريعاً مثل (مفاتيح) / تستخدم غالباً في الانترنت.

Ex. I'm searching for my keys. (for). يأتي بعدها حرف جر.

• research (v)

• يبحث عن شيء علمي بشكل دقيق وعميق لاكتشاف حقائق جديدة.

Ex. She is researching new ways to treat diseases.

• research (n) (U) بحث (لا يعد)

Ex. Research shows that certain games can improve concentration.

2 expert/experiment /experience

- **expert (n)** خبير

Ex: He is an **expert** in computers.

- **experiment (n)** تجربة علمية

Ex: The student did a science **experiment**

- **experience (n)** (خبرة أو تجربة حياتية)

Ex: I have five years of work **experience**.

3 without + V.ing

• بدون:

Ex: You need good concentration to finish your homework **without getting** distracted.

4 Can you tell me + Q.word + subject + verb?

• يستخدم هذا الأسلوب عند السؤال عن معلومات بطريقة مهذبة

Ex: **Can you tell me how** you make learning fun in your classroom?

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The teacher invited science _____ to talk to the class.
a. experiments b. experts c. experience d. experimental
- The charity raises money for medical _____ .
a. research b. search c. reach d. rescue
- Soha finished her work without _____ any mistakes.
a. make b. making c. made d. makes

Reading

SB Page (27)



Audio Script

SB Page (27)

استمع إلى النص



Many people think video games are just for fun, but **scientists**⁽¹⁾ believe games can make you **smarter**⁽²⁾. **Research**⁽³⁾ shows that certain games can improve **concentration**⁽⁴⁾ and help players solve problems faster. **Brain training games**⁽⁵⁾ are especially **popular**⁽⁶⁾ with students. These games **focus on**⁽⁷⁾ **memory skills**⁽⁸⁾, math, and **language learning**⁽⁹⁾. When you play puzzle games, your brain works harder to find **solutions**⁽¹⁰⁾. This **mental**⁽¹¹⁾ exercise helps you think more clearly in real life.



However, **experts**⁽¹²⁾ say not all games are **educational**⁽¹³⁾. **Action games**⁽¹⁴⁾ can **develop**⁽¹⁵⁾ quick **thinking**⁽¹⁶⁾, but players need to choose games carefully. The best learning games **combine**⁽¹⁷⁾ fun with education. They make skill **development**⁽¹⁸⁾ enjoyable and **effective**⁽¹⁹⁾.

Many teachers now use games in their classrooms. Students learn better when they're having fun. Games can make difficult subjects like math and science more interesting. They also help **shy**⁽²⁰⁾ students **participate**⁽²¹⁾ actively in lessons.

So, can games make you smarter? The answer seems to be yes - if you choose the right games and don't play too much!

١. العلماء
٢. أذكي
٣. البحث
٤. التركيز
٥. ألعاب تنمية
٦. الذكاء
٧. شائع
٨. يركز على
٩. مهارات الذاكرة
١٠. تعلم اللغات
١١. حلول
١٢. عقلي
١٣. خبراء
١٤. تعليمي
١٥. ألعاب الحركة
١٦. تطور
١٧. التفكير
١٨. تدمج
١٩. تطوير
٢٠. فعال
٢١. خجول
٢٢. يشارك في



Audio Script SB Page (29)



استمع إلى النصوص



Interviewer : Good morning! Can you tell me how you make learning fun in your classroom?

Mrs. Manal : Good morning! I use games and group activities to keep students active while they learn new skills.

Interviewer : That sounds wonderful. Do all students enjoy these activities?

Mrs. Manal : Most of them enjoy them, but some students **prefer**⁽¹⁾ quieter **tasks**,⁽²⁾ so I always try to **balance**⁽³⁾ both styles .

Interviewer : Interesting. However, games sometimes take a long time. How do you **handle**⁽⁴⁾ that?

Mrs. Manal : I choose short and focused games that take only a few minutes but still help students **practice**⁽⁵⁾ the lesson.

Interviewer : And what about technology? Do you use it in your lessons?

Mrs. Manal : Yes, I use videos and **interactive apps**;⁽⁶⁾ however, I make sure they **support**⁽⁷⁾ the lesson and do not **distract**⁽⁸⁾ the students.

Interviewer : How do you **motivate**⁽⁹⁾ shy students to join in?

Mrs. Manal : I give them simple **roles**⁽¹⁰⁾ in group work while gradually **encouraging**⁽¹¹⁾ them to speak and **participate**⁽¹²⁾ more.

Interviewer : Do fun activities really **improve**⁽¹³⁾ learning?

Mrs. Manal : Sure! Students remember **information**⁽¹⁴⁾ better when they enjoy the lesson; however, the most important thing is to have clear learning **goals**⁽¹⁵⁾.

١. يفضل
٢. مهام
٣. يوازن
٤. يتعامل مع
٥. يتدرب
٦. تطبيقات
- تفاعلية
٧. تدعم
٨. يشجعت انتباه
٩. يحفز
١٠. أدوار
١١. يشجع
١٢. يشارك
١٣. يطور
١٤. معلومات
١٥. أهداف



SB Page (30)

Educational⁽¹⁾ technology is becoming very popular in schools today. Students love using tablets and computers for learning. However, teachers need training to use these **tools**⁽²⁾ **effectively**⁽³⁾.

Interactive games make math and science more interesting. While games are motivating, students still need to practice **basic**⁽⁴⁾ skills through **traditional methods**⁽⁵⁾.

Many schools want to buy new technology. However, sometimes it is difficult. School **administrators**⁽⁶⁾ **support**⁽⁷⁾ **digital learning**⁽⁸⁾, but teachers will always be the most important part in the educational system.

١. تعليمي
٢. الأدوات
٣. بشكل فعال
٤. أساسي
٥. طرق تقليدية
٦. المديرين
٧. يدعم
٨. التعلم الرقمي

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. "....." means not confident to talk to others. SB
 - a. Educational
 - b. Focused
 - c. Shy
 - d. Funny
2. To is to put things together. SB
 - a. replace
 - b. engage
 - c. participate
 - d. combine
3. "....." means focusing your mind on one thing. SB
 - a. Conclusion
 - b. Concentration
 - c. Information
 - d. Solutions
4. are the people who know a lot about something. SB
 - a. Players
 - b. Experiments
 - c. Administrators
 - d. Experts

Synonyms & Antonyms

5. Good concentration helps students understand the lesson. "....." is similar in meaning to "concentration".
 - a. Focus
 - b. Distraction
 - c. Growth
 - d. Education
6. This game is very popular with children. "....." is the opposite of "popular".
 - a. Famous
 - b. Well-known
 - c. Known
 - d. Unknown

7. Practice is effective for learning. The synonym of "effective" is
a. ineffective b. focused c. energetic d. successful
8. My little daughter is shy. "Shy" is opposite of
a. timid b. confident c. lazy d. noisy
9. The antonym of "smart" is
a. intelligent b. clever c. stupid d. wise
10. The word "....." is similar in meaning to "fun".
a. boring b. difficult c. enjoyable d. calm

Prefixes and Suffixes

11. To get the noun from the verb "concentrate", we add the suffix
a. -ive b. -ion c. -tion d. -ly
12. The suffix changes the verb "develop" into a noun.
a. -tion b. -ment c. -ion d. -ed
13. To get the adjective from the verb "effect", add the suffix
a. -able b. -al c. -ive d. -ful
14. To change the verb "enjoy" into an adjective, we add the suffix
a. -able b. -al c. -ive d. -ful

Collocations & Guessing the meaning

15. Reading books helps with growth. **SB**
a. mental b. careful c. body d. popular
16. She is so that she can't speak in front of strangers. **SB**
a. confident b. interactive c. shy d. smart
17. All students should in the school sports day. **SB**
a. balance b. avoid c. participate d. motivate
18. If you milk and chocolate, you get chocolate milk. **SB**
a. develop b. combine c. encourage d. distract
19. The teacher invited science to talk to the class. **SB**
a. players b. experts c. trainings d. methods

20. You should combine study rest to stay healthy and focused.
a. at b. from c. with d. in
21. The says exercise is good for your mind.
a. equipment b. research c. concentration d. education
22. These apps encourage shy children to participate more actively.
a. traditional b. interactive
c. boring d. useless
23. Playing puzzle games can help quick thinking skills.
a. combine b. handle c. develop d. participate
24. The school will teachers with proper training and equipment.
a. distract b. support c. combine d. balance
25. It is important for everyone to take part group activities.
a. on b. in c. at d. with

2

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

goals - motivate - handle - memory – balance

Research shows that learning games are effective in education. Brain training games help improve concentration, ① skills, and mental focus. Many experts believe these games ② students to participate actively and become smarter. However, teachers should ③ digital learning with traditional methods to support real life learning and achieve clear ④



Language

قواعد لغوية

Contrast Connectors

روابط التناقض

- We use contrast **connectors** to show “**differences**” or “**opposite ideas**”.

نستخدم روابط التناقض لإظهار "الاختلافات" أو "الأفكار المتضادة".

1 But لكن

- Used to connect ideas that contrast. ١- تستخدم للربط بين الأفكار التي يوجد بينها تضاد
- Links two parts of a sentence together. ٢- تربط بين جزأين من الجملة معًا
- Used in the middle of a sentence and often has a comma before it. ٣- تأتي في منتصف الجملة و غالبًا ما يسبقها فاصلة

Ex. Games are fun, but they should also be educational.

Part 1

Part 2

Ex. The game is fun, but it is difficult.

Ex. Aswan is an interesting place, but it takes a long time to get there.

2 However ومع ذلك / لكن

- Used at the beginning of a new sentence that contracts the previous one ١- تُستخدم في بداية جملة جديدة لتناقض الجملة السابقة.
- More formal than “but” ٢- أكثر رسمية من كلمة “but”
- Always followed by a comma ٣- متبوعة دائمًا بفاصلة

Ex. Students love video games. However, parents worry about too much screen time.

بداية جملة جديدة (الجملة التي تسبقها منفصلة عنها و منتهية بنقطة)

Ex. I want to buy a new computer. However, it is very expensive.

Ex. She studied hard. However, she didn't pass the test.

3 While بينما / بالرغم من

- Shows contrast between two simultaneous ideas

١- تظهر التناقض بين فكرتين متزامنتين (تحدثان في وقت واحد)

- Can be at the beginning or in the middle. If it starts the sentence, put a comma in the middle.

٢- يمكن أن تأتي في بداية الجملة أو في منتصفها. إذا بدأت الجملة بها، نضع فاصلة في المنتصف.

Ex. While traditional methods work well, modern technique engage students more.

٣- توضح التزامن بين الطرق التقليدية والأساليب الحديثة في التعليم

Ex. I passed the test while it was hard.

Ex. I like math while my friend likes art.

لاحظ:

١- تستخدم **but** للربط بين فكرتين في جملة واحدة و تأتي في المنتصف و غالبًا ما يسبقها **comma**

٢- تستخدم **However** للربط بين جملتين و تأتي في بداية الجملة الثانية (أي يسبقها نقطة) و نضع بعدها **comma**

٣- تستخدم **While** للمقارنة بين شيئين متناقضين و لكن يحدثان في الوقت نفسه و تأتي في بداية

الجملة أو في المنتصف

Check on Language ✓

Rewrite the sentences correctly using the words between brackets.

1. I like video games. I don't play them every day. (However)
I like video games. However, I don't play them every day.
2. Technology helps learning. Students still need books. (While)
While technology helps learning, students still need books.
3. She is tired. She keeps studying. (but)
She is tired, but she keeps studying.
4. The movie was long. It was interesting. (However)
The movie was long. However, it was interesting.
5. The game is fun. It takes a long time. (but)
The game is fun, but it takes a long time.
6. Group work is helpful. Students still need individual practice. (While)
While group work is helpful, students still need individual practice.

Exercises on Language

1 Rewrite the sentences correctly using the words between brackets.

Set Book Exercises

1. Educational games are effective. They cost a lot of money. (but)
.....
2. Students enjoy interactive lessons. Some prefer traditional methods. (However)
.....
3. Technology helps learning. It can't replace good teachers. (While)
.....
4. Fun games take more time to prepare. Teachers see better results. (but)
.....
5. Games improve memory. Not all games are educational. (However)
.....
6. Stories make learning fun. Some students prefer facts and numbers. (while)
.....
7. Technology engages students. Schools need proper equipment. (but)
.....

8. Fun methods work well. They require teacher training. (but)

9. Many schools want to buy new technology. Sometimes it is difficult. (However)

10. She worked very hard. She didn't pass the exam. (However)

11. Games are motivating. Students still need to practice basic skills through traditional methods. (While)

12. I wanted to go out. I had a lot of homework. (However)

Bit by Bit Exercises

13. Interactive apps encourage participation. Some students like quiet work. (While)

14. Fun lessons keep students active. They need careful planning. (but)

15. Celin is shy. She answered the question. (However)

16. Hany tried to concentrate. The noise was too loud. (but)

17. Many children enjoy online games. Some games are not educational. (However)

18. Some methods are old. They are still very effective. (While)

19. The lesson was difficult. The teacher explained it clearly. (but)

20. The internet is useful. It can also be a distraction. (While)

21. He is a quiet student. He participates actively online. (However)

22. I called him several times. He didn't answer his phone. (but)

23. The hotel was cheap. However, it was clean and comfortable. (but)

24. The book was short, but it has a lot of useful information. (However)
25. My brother loves action games, but I prefer quiet puzzles. (While)
26. The food was delicious. However, the service was very slow. (but)



Speaking skills

Agreeing and Disagreeing

• الاتفاق والاعتراض :

Agreeing

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------|
| 1. I agree | الاتفاق |
| 2. I think so | أظن ذلك. |
| 3. I believe that | أعتقد أن |
| 4. That's right | هذا صحيح. |

Disagreeing

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| I don't agree | لا اتفق |
| I disagree | اعتراض/لا أتفق |
| I don't think so | لا أعتقد ذلك |
| I am not sure | لست متأكدًا |

Participate in a dialog showing reasons and contrast

• المشاركة في حوار وإبداء الأسباب والتناقض

I think games are good because they improve concentration.

Educational games are effective.

Technology helps learning.

I think so, but sometimes they are not good because they can distract students.

That's right. However, they cost a lot of money.

I agree. However, it can't replace good teachers.

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Regular practice is the most _____ way to improve your English. SB
 a. slow b. effective c. careful d. difficult
2. You need good _____ to finish your homework without getting distracted. SB
 a. education b. experts c. research d. concentration

3. "-----" means related to the mind or thinking.
 a. Mental b. Careful c. Physical d. Digital
4. To ----- is to take part in an activity.
 a. participate b. combine c. handle d. motivate
5. To get the adjective from the noun "education", we add the suffix -----.
 a. -ar b. -er c. -al d. -ir
6. The antonym of "quiet" is -----.
 a. easy b. calm c. noisy d. different
7. Everyone should ----- new skills to keep their mind active
 a. think b. require c. ignore d. learn
8. This lesson will focus ----- improving your writing skills
 a. on b. in c. at d. with
9. The debate between ----- methods and technology will continue.
 a. modern b. new c. traditional d. updated
10. The word "smart" is similar in meaning to -----.
 a. clever b. amusing c. energetic d. lazy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

motivate - needs - smarter - encourage - enjoyable

Digital learning is now very popular. Interactive apps make language learning more ① -----, especially for shy students. These apps combine fun games with clear educational goals. They ② ----- students to participate actively and learn new skills. While some people prefer traditional methods, new tools can ③ ----- learners more. The most important thing is to focus on the ④ ----- of each student and use technology as a helpful tool in their education.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. She studied a lot. She didn't get a high score. SB (While)

2. My sister loves classical music. I prefer modern music. SB (but)

3. Selim woke up early. He missed the bus. (but)

4. The weather was cold. We went swimming. (However)

5. Traditional classrooms are common. Online learning is growing fast. (While)

.....

6. The game was difficult. However, she finished it quickly. (but)

.....

7. The phone is old, but it still works well. (However)

.....

8. Some students learn best by reading. Others need to practice. (while)

.....

4 Complete the following dialog:

Marwan asks his father about using games in education

Marwan : Do you think learning games are useful at school?

Father : Yes, I believe they can improve ①

Marwan : Do interactive ② help students in class?

Father : Yes, they encourage ③

Marwan : Can games sometimes ④ students?

Father : Yes, sometimes students lose focus when playing games

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Learning games"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. How can learning games help students?
2. What can interactive games improve?
3. Why should teachers balance games with traditional methods?
4. How can games help students learn difficult subjects?
5. Why should children use learning games carefully?



استمع إلى المفردات
المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

smart learning (n)	التعلم الذكي	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى / هادف
interactive (adj)	تفاعلي	imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل
anxious (adj)	قلق / متوتر	empathize (v) (d)	يتعاطف

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

way (n)	طريقة	emotion (n)	عاطفة / شعور
fact (n)	حقيقة	culture (n)	ثقافة
pronunciation (n)	نطق	communication (n)	تواصل
phrase (n)	عبارة	feelings (n)	مشاعر / أحاسيس
naturally (adv)	بشكل طبيعي / تلقائياً	importance (n)	أهمية
bored (adj)	يشعر بالملل	purpose (n)	غرض / هدف
joy (n)	فرح / بهجة	traditional learning (n)	التعلم التقليدي
technique (n)	تقنية / أسلوب	upset (adj)	منزعج / متضايق
participation (n)	مشاركة	memorize (v) (d)	يحفظ / يستذكر
creative (adj)	مبدع / مبتكر	repeat (v) (ed)	يكرر
knowledge (n)	معرفة	remember (v) (ed)	يتذكر
confidence (n)	ثقة	connect (v) (ed)	يربط / يتصل
atmosphere (n)	جو / أجواء / بيئة	create (v) (d)	يخلق / يبتكر
powerful (adj)	قوي / مؤثر	avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب
value (n)	قيمة		

Definitions

interactive	تفاعلي	involving active participation ⁽¹⁾ and communication ⁽²⁾
anxious	قلق / متوتر	worried or nervous
meaningful	ذو معنى / هادف	having real importance ⁽³⁾ or purpose ⁽⁴⁾
imagine	يتخيل	to form ideas in the mind about something
empathize	يتعاطف	to understand other's feelings ⁽⁵⁾

١. مشاركة
٢. تواصل
٣. أهمية
٤. غرض
٥. مشاعر

Expressions & Prepositions

around the world	حول العالم	turn ... into	يحول ... إلى
move towards	يتحرك نحو / يتجه إلى	different from	مختلف عن
explore ideas	يستكشف الأفكار	create a happy atmosphere	يخلق جوًا سعيداً
connect ... to ..	يربط ... بـ ..	instead of	بدلاً من
build confidence	يبني الثقة	in a creative way	بطريقة إبداعية



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
modern	حديث / معاصر	new/ recent	old/ traditional قديم / تقليدي
exciting	مثير / ممتع	interesting	boring ممل
different	مختلف	various/ unusual	same/ similar نفس الشيء / مشابه
anxious	قلق / متوتر	worried/ nervous	calm/ relaxed هادئ / مسترخٍ
remember	يتذكر	recall/ memorize	forget ينسى
confidence	ثقة	trust	distrust عدم الثقة
meaningful	ذو معنى / هادف	important	useless / meaningless عديم الفائدة / عديم المعنى
powerful	قوي / مؤثر	effective	powerless/ ineffective غير مؤثر

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	information / pronunciation
-ive	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	creative
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	naturally
-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	powerful/ meaningful
-ent	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	different

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
sing	يغنى	sang	sung
build	يبني	built	built
feel	يشعر	felt	felt



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 instead of + v.ing

• بدلًا من

Ex. Instead of memorizing facts, students explore ideas in a creative and interactive way.

2 Adverb الحال

• يمكن ان نكون الحال من الصفة اما باضافة **ly**

• creative creatively

• او بالصيغة اللاتية

in a/an + الصفة + way

in a creative and interactive way.

Ex. Students explore ideas in a creative and interactive way.



Reading



SB Page (31)



Audio Script

SB Page (31)

استمع إلى النصوص



Today, schools around the world are moving towards smart learning.⁽¹⁾ This modern way of education uses digital⁽²⁾ tools, songs, and stories to make lessons more exciting. Instead of memorizing⁽³⁾ facts, students explore⁽⁴⁾ ideas in a creative⁽⁵⁾ and interactive⁽⁶⁾ way. Smart learning helps students connect knowledge⁽⁷⁾ to real life and enjoy every moment of study. Singing is not only fun - it also helps with memory⁽⁸⁾ and pronunciation⁽⁹⁾. When students sing educational songs, they remember vocabulary and grammar more easily. Music improves focus, builds

confidence⁽¹⁰⁾, and creates a

happy atmosphere⁽¹¹⁾ in the

classroom. Teachers often use

songs to make students repeat

new phrases⁽¹²⁾ naturally without feeling bored or

anxious⁽¹³⁾. Stories are another powerful⁽¹⁴⁾ tool

in smart learning. Through stories, students learn

about



١. التعليم الذكي
٢. رقمي
٣. حفظ
٤. يستكشف
٥. مبدع
٦. تفاعلي
٧. معرفة
٨. ذاكرة
٩. نطق
١٠. ثقة
١١. جو
١٢. عبارات
١٣. قلق/متوتر
١٤. مؤثر

values,⁽¹⁵⁾ emotions,⁽¹⁶⁾ and culture.⁽¹⁷⁾ They also practice listening, reading, and speaking skills. Good stories make lessons more meaningful⁽¹⁸⁾ and help students imagine⁽¹⁹⁾ and empathize⁽²⁰⁾ with others. Together, singing and storytelling turn classrooms into creative spaces full of learning and joy⁽²¹⁾.

١٥. قيم
١٦. مشاعر
١٧. ثقافة
١٨. هادف
١٩. يتخيل
٢٠. يتعاطف
٢١. فرح

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- To _____ is to understand other's feelings. SB
a. imagine b. memorize c. create d. empathize
- The word "_____" means involving active participation and communication. SB
a. creative b. powerful c. interactive d. anxious
- "_____" means worried or nervous. SB
a. Joy b. Anxious c. Meaningful d. Powerful
- To _____ is to form ideas in the mind about something. SB
a. imagine b. avoid c. explore d. empathize

Synonyms & Antonyms

- "_____" is similar in meaning to "powerful"
a. Ineffective b. Powerless c. Useless d. Effective
- The school trip was exciting for all students. The antonym of "exciting" is _____
a. boring b. wonderful c. important d. interesting
- Playing games in class builds my confidence. "_____" is an antonym of "confidence".
a. Communication b. Participation c. Distrust d. Knowledge
- The antonym of "meaningful" is _____
a. important b. effective c. meaningless d. useful
- I feel anxious before a big exam. "Anxious" is similar in meaning to _____.
a. worried b. various c. recent d. important

Suffixes and prefixes

- The suffix _____ changes the verb "differ" into an adjective.
a. -ant b. -able c. -ent d. -ful
- The suffix _____ changes the noun "power" into an adjective.
a. -ly b. -ful c. -ive d. -able

12. The suffix "-ly" changes the word "normal" into a/an _____.
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective

Collocations & Guessing the meaning

13. I need to _____ all the new vocabulary for the test. SB
a. imagine b. empathize c. participate d. memorize
14. The new English app is very _____ ; it lets students talk and play learning games together. SB
a. interactive b. traditional c. anxious d. natural
15. Before the exam, many students feel _____ and can't sleep well. SB
a. calm b. relaxed c. anxious d. creative
16. Helping others makes our lives more _____ and full of purpose. SB
a. shy b. boring c. anxious d. meaningful
17. Close your eyes and _____ you are walking on the moon! SB
a. memorize b. imagine c. connect d. avoid
18. Reading books gives us more _____ about the world.
a. knowledge b. pronunciation c. phrases d. techniques
19. Parents should teach children good _____ from a young age
a. atmosphere b. roles c. values d. tools
20. A good teacher can turn a boring lesson _____ an exciting one.
a. onto b. off c. into d. for
21. We learn languages to improve our _____ with others
a. values b. culture c. feelings d. communication

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

methods - powerful - smart learning - anxious - confidence

A good classroom atmosphere is very important. It helps students feel calm and not ① _____. Interactive activities encourage everyone to participate actively. Teachers use creative ② _____ to make lessons meaningful. These methods build ③ _____ in students and help them avoid feeling upset or shy. When students feel happy, they learn better. This shows the real value and importance of ④ _____ in class

General Exercises



on Lesson 3

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع اختر الكتاب



- Singing and stories help students new words naturally.
a. ignore b. memorize c. distract d. replace
- This learning style builds students'
a. confidence b. shyness c. fear d. silence

B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

- What makes learning fun and meaningful?
.....
- How do students feel when they learn this way?
.....
- Who joins in when learning with songs and stories?
.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The word "....." means having real importance or purpose. SB
a. powerful b. interactive c. meaningful d. creative
- Modern technology helps us learn faster. The word is opposite to "modern"
a. new b. traditional c. recent d. updated
- To get the adjective from the verb "create", we add the suffix
a. -ful b. -ive c. -al d. -able
- It's important to with your friends when they are sad or upset. SB
a. avoid b. imagine c. empathize d. repeat
- Parents encourage their children to move their goals
a. towards b. for c. with d. at

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

atmosphere - recent - build - traditional - explore

Our school is very modern because we use smart learning. This way of study is very different from the old, ① learning. In our classroom, we do not just memorize long lists of facts. Instead, we use interactive tablets to ② ideas and find new information. This technique helps us ③ confidence every day. The ④ in my class is always full of joy.

4

Ramy was a smart but shy student. He felt anxious about speaking in class. His teacher, an expert in smart learning, gave him advice. **She** told him about interactive apps for language learning. These apps used stories to build confidence . When Ramy practiced at home, he could imagine he was the hero. Gradually, his pronunciation improved. He started to participate in group activities. He found that the interactive tasks in the apps developed his mental skills and memory, not just his language. He even began to empathize with the characters in the stories, understanding their emotions. This **meaningful** practice made him feel more confident. Ramy learned that games were not just for fun; they were powerful tools to help him connect with others and lose his fear.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- [illegible]

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What advice did Ramy's teacher give him?

4. What does the underlined pronoun "She" refer to?

5. Do you think learning games can help shy students? Why/ Why not?

5

to your friend Zain to tell him about the new way of learning your teacher uses. Your name is Murad and your email address is murad@gmail.com. Your email address is zain2026@gmail.com

(مُجَاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1. What does the teacher use in this new way of learning?
2. How is it useful?
3. How does it help students?
4. How do you feel while using this new way?



استمع إلى المفردات
المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

flashcards (n)	بطاقات تعليمية	photosynthesis (n)	عملية البناء الضوئي
definitions (n)	تعريفات	struggle (v) (d)	يعاني / يواجه صعوبة
diagram (n)	رسم توضيحي / مخطط	concentrate (v) (d)	يركز
visual (adj)	بصري / مرئي		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

silence (n)	صمت	achievable (adj)	قابل للتحقيق
upcoming (adj)	قادم	process (n) (v.ed)	عملية / يعالج
familiar (adj)	مألوف / معروف	study environment (n)	بيئة الدراسة
notes (n)	ملاحظات	time management (n)	إدارة الوقت
definitely (adv)	بكل تأكيد / قطعاً	motivation (n)	حافز / دافع
lyrics (n)	كلمات الأغاني	tips (n)	نصائح
brilliant (adj)	عبقري / رائع	regular breaks (n)	استراحات منتظمة
poem (n)	قصيدة	schedule (n)	جدول مواعيد
rhythm (n)	إيقاع	additionally (adv)	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقي	furthermore (adv)	علاوة على ذلك
graphic novel (n)	رواية مصورة	animations (n)	رسوم متحركة
comics (n)	قصص مصورة	mix (v) (ed)	يخلط / يمزج
feedback (n)	ملاحظات تقييمية	entertain (v) (ed)	يسلي / يرفه عن
space (n)	مساحة	suit (v) (ed)	يناسب / يلائم
alone (adj)	بمفرده		

Expressions & Prepositions

prepare for	يستعد لـ / يجهز لـ	make your own	اصنع بنفسك / كون خاصتك
struggle with	يعاني من / يواجه صعوبة في	draw diagrams	يرسم مخططات (رسوم توضيحية)
use flashcards	يستخدم بطاقات تعليمية	make a story	يؤلف قصة
get boring	يصبح مملاً	set goals	يحدد أهدافاً
in silence	في صمت	practice makes perfect	التمرين يؤدي إلى الإتقان



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
familiar	مألوف	common/ known		unfamiliar/ strange	غير مألوف/ غريب
struggle	يعانى/ يصارع	try hard		relax	يستريح
definition	تعريف	explanation		question	سؤال
silence	صمت	calm/quiet		noise	ضوضاء
memorize	يحفظ	recall		forget	ينسى

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ition	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	definition
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	motivation
-ment	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	management
-ize	تحول الاسم إلى فعل	memorize
re-	تعني يفعل مرة أخرى	reread
-able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	achievable
-ate	تحول الاسم إلى فعل	motivate



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 alone / lonely

- **alone** بمفرده

Ex. I prefer to study **alone**. بمفرده

- **lonely** وحيدا

Ex. He is sad because he is **lonely**.

2 try + verb + ing / try + to + inf.

يمكن أن يأتي بعد الفعل **try** إما **verb + ing** أو **to + inf** مع اختلاف فى المعنى كما يلى:

- **try + verb + ing** يجرب

يجرب عمل شئ لمعرفة النتيجة

Ex. You should **try making** your own flashcards.

- **try + to + inf.** يحاول ان

Ex. We must **try to prevent** this from happening again

3 Let's + inf مصدر الفعل

- **Let's + inf** مصدر الفعل هيا بنا

Ex. **Let's** study together and mix our methods!.



Reading



SB Page (35)



SB Page (35)



استمع إلى النصوص

Read this conversation between Samir and Maher who are discussing study methods for an **upcoming**⁽¹⁾ test.

Samir : Hey Maher, how are you **preparing for**⁽²⁾ the science test? I'm **struggling**⁽³⁾ with the' vocabulary.

Maher : I use **flashcards**⁽⁴⁾. You should try making your own- they help me memorize **definitions**⁽⁵⁾.

Samir : I've tried, but they got boring.

Maher : Add colors and pictures! I draw **diagrams**⁽⁶⁾. **Visual**⁽⁷⁾ memory really helps.

Samir : Good idea. But what about long **processes**⁽⁸⁾, like **photosynthesis**⁽⁹⁾?

Maher : Make a story! Connect each step to something **familiar**⁽¹⁰⁾. Understanding is better than memorizing.

Samir : I usually just reread notes. Maybe I need to change.

Maher : Definitely. What helps you remember in daily life?

Samir : Song **lyrics**⁽¹¹⁾!

Maher : Perfect! Turn facts into songs.

Samir : Brilliant! I also teach my sister.

Maher : Let's study together and mix our methods!

١. قادم
٢. يستعد لـ
٣. يعاني/ يواجه
- صعوبة
٤. بطاقات تعليمية
٥. تعريفات
٦. رسوم توضيحية
٧. مرئي/ بصري
٨. عمليات
٩. عملية البناء
- الضوئي
١٠. مألوف
١١. كلمات الأغاني



SB Page (37)

Sample Student Poster

SUPER STUDY TIPS⁽¹⁾

Help Yourself Learn Better!

- Find a quiet place to study. Choose a space without distractions like T.V or loud music. This helps you **concentrate**⁽²⁾ better and remember information longer.
- Take **regular breaks**⁽³⁾. Study for 30-40 minutes, then rest for 10 minutes. Your brain needs time to **process**⁽⁴⁾ information, so breaks actually help you learn more!
- Use different learning methods. Don't just read - also write notes, draw diagrams, or explain topics to friends. Different methods help different parts of your brain.
- Set small, **achievable**⁽⁵⁾ goals. Instead of "study everything," try "finish chapter 1 today." Small goals motivate you and make big tasks feel easier.

Remember: Practice makes perfect! You can do it!

١. نصائح
٢. يركز
٣. استراحات
- منتظمة
٤. يعالج
٥. قابل للتحقيق



Speaking Skills

Useful Expressions

1- Sharing your methods: مشاركة طرقك أو أساليبك

I usually + inf. عادة

Ex. I usually use flashcards.

What works for me is + (Verb + ing/ noun) ما يناسبني/ ما ينجح معي هو

Ex. What works for me is using games to learn.

I find it helpful to + inf. أجد أنه من المفيد أن

Ex. I find it helpful to repeat new words aloud.

My strategy is to + inf. استراتيجيتي/ خطتي هي أن..

Ex. My strategy is to practice a little every day.

I prefer to + inf. أفضّل أن

Ex. I prefer to learn with songs and stories.

2- Explaining reasons: شرح الأسباب

This helps you + inf. هذا يساعدك على أن

Ex. This helps you remember new words.

This way you can + inf. بهذه الطريقة يمكنك...

Ex. This way you can do the task easily.

Subject + verb + because + full sentence (subject + verb) لأن

Ex. I like smart learning because it is interactive.

3- Giving advice: تقديم النصيحة

You should + inf. يجب عليك أن

Ex. You should practice English every day.

Why don't you + inf.? لم لا تقوم ب...؟

Ex. Why don't you use learning games in class?

Have you considered + (Verb + ing/ noun)? هل فكرت في...؟/ هل أخذت في الاعتبار

Ex. Have you considered studying with a friend?

قد يفيد أن... It might help to + inf.

Ex. It might help to repeat the lesson at home.

من المهم أن It's important to + inf.

Ex. It's important to listen carefully in class.

تأكد من أنك Make sure you + inf.

Ex. Make sure you follow the teacher's instructions.

4- Asking about Methods:

كيف تتذكر...؟ How do you remember + noun?

Ex. How do you remember new words?

ما هي استراتيجيتك لـ...؟ What's your strategy for + (Verb + ing/ noun)?

Ex. What's your strategy for remembering vocabulary?

هل تجد أنه من المفيد أن...؟ Do you find it useful to + inf.?

Ex. Do you find it useful to study with games?

5- Responding politely:

That's a good/great idea!

هذه فكرة جيدة/رائعة!

I never thought of that.

لم أفكر في ذلك من قبل.

That sounds interesting.

هذا يبدو مثيراً للاهتمام.

I'm not sure that would work for me.

لست متأكداً أن هذا سينجح معي.

I'll definitely try that.

سأجرب ذلك بكل تأكيد.

6- Connecting ideas: ربط الأفكار

also (أيضا) (تأتي قبل الفعل الاساسي)

Ex. I like tea. I also like coffee.

Additionally (بالإضافة إلى ذلك) (تأتي عادة في بداية الجملة)

Ex. The hotel is cheap. Additionally, it is near the beach.

Furthermore (علاوة على ذلك)

تُستخدم لإضافة معلومة "قوية" أو مهمة جداً لإقناع القارئ

Ex. Smoking is expensive. Furthermore, it is bad for your health.

However (ولكن / ومع ذلك):

تُستخدم لربط جملتين بينهما تضاد. تأتي عادة في بداية الجملة الثانية ويتبعها فاصلة (,).

Ex. I studied hard. However, I didn't pass the test.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms & Antonyms

- The topic is familiar to me. The word "familiar" is similar in meaning to
a. unknown b. strange c. known d. unfamiliar
- Short breaks help me concentrate again. "....." is an antonym of "concentrate".
a. struggle b. distract c. entertain d. suit
- I struggled to study this difficult lesson. "Struggle" is similar in meaning to
a. try easily b. try hard c. relax d. sleep
- The antonym of memorize is
a. forget b. recall c. remind d. remember
- I prefer to study in silence. "Silence" is antonym of
a. peaceful b. calm c. quite d. noisy

Suffixes & Prefixes

- The suffix changes the verb "manage" into a noun.
a. -ment b. -ion c. -ence d. -ition
- To get the antonym of "familiar", we add the prefix
a. ir- b. in- c. un- d. dis-
- The suffix turns the noun memory into a verb.
a. -ize b. -ing c. -ly d. -ed
- The prefix means to do again.
a. un- b. il- c. re- d. ir-
- The suffix turns the verb achieve into an adjective.
a. -able b. -ive c. -ly d. -ion

Collocations & Guessing the meaning

- I use to study new words.
a. photosynthesis b. documentaries c. trips d. flashcards
- Clear help me understand lessons well.
a. time management b. definitions c. schedule d. motivation

2

feedback - interesting - prepare - boring - make

I like to mix different study methods to remember facts better. I ① _____ my own flashcards and diagrams. Sometimes lessons get ② _____, so I add colors, pictures, or even a small story to help. Using different techniques helps me remember new words and definitions. I also review my work with friends for ③ _____, which improves my learning. These steps help me ④ _____ for tests successfully..

3

Ahmed and Bassem are talking about learning methods.

Ahmed : How do you remember new vocabulary?

Bassem : I usually use _____ with pictures.

Ahmed : That's a good 2 _____ ! I will try that.

Bassem : ③ _____ works for me is saying the words out loud too.

Ahmed : I find that helpful as well. My  _____
is to practice a little every day.

Bassem : That's smart.

4

Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

“Study tips”

1000

Review on Unit 8

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

concentration (n)	تركيز	support (v) (ed)	يدعم
brain training games (n)	ألعاب تدريب العقل / ألعاب تنمية الذكاء	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى / هادف
		imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل
mental (adj)	عقلي	empathize (v) (d)	يتعاطف
expert (n)	خبير	photosynthesis (n)	عملية البناء الضوئي
interactive apps (n)	تطبيقات تفاعلية	struggle (v) (d)	يعاني / يواجه صعوبة
effective (adj)	فَعَال	concentrate (v) (d)	يركز
smart learning (n)	التعلم الذكي	motivate (d)	يحفز
interactive (adj)	تفاعلي	encourage (d)	يشجع
anxious (adj)	قلق / متوتر	scientist (n)	عالم
flashcards (n)	بطاقات تعليمية	digital learning (n)	التعلم الرقمي
definitions (n)	تعريفات	debate (n)	نقاش / جدال
diagram (n)	رسم توضيحي / مخطط	confidence (n)	ثقة
visual (adj)	بصري / مرئي	participation (n)	مشاركة
shy (adj)	خجول	achievable (adj)	قابل للتحقق
improve (v) (d)	يحسّن	additionally (adv)	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
combine (v) (d)	يجمع	furthermore (adv)	علاوة على ذلك
participate (v) (d)	يشارك	animations (n)	رسوم متحركة
handle (v) (d)	يتعامل مع		



Language

قواعد لغوية

Contrast Connectors

روابط التناقض

- We use contrast **connectors** to show “**differences**” or “**opposite ideas**”.

نستخدم روابط التناقض لإظهار "الاختلافات" أو "الأفكار المتضادة".

1 But لكن

- 1- تستخدم للربط بين الأفكار التي يوجد بينها تضاد
- 2- تربط بين جزأين من الجملة معًا
- Used to connect ideas that contrast.
- Links two parts of a sentence together.
- Used in the middle of a sentence and often has a comma before it.

٣- تأتي في منتصف الجملة و غالبًا ما يسبقها فاصلة

Ex. Games are fun, but they should also be educational.

Part 1

Part 2

Ex. The game is fun, but it is difficult.

Ex. Aswan is an interesting place, but it takes a long time to get there.

2 However ومع ذلك/ لكن

- Used at the beginning of a new sentence that contracts the previous one
١- تُستخدم في بداية جملة جديدة لتناقض الجملة السابقة.

- More formal than "but" ٢- أكثر رسمية من كلمة "but"

- Always followed by a comma ٣- متبوعة دائمًا بفاصلة

Ex. Students love video games. However, parents worry about too much screen time.
بداية جملة جديدة (الجملة التي تسبقها منفصلة عنها و منتهية بنقطة)

Ex. I want to buy a new computer. However, it is very expensive.

Ex. She studied hard. However, she didn't pass the test.

3 While بينما/ بالرغم من

- Shows contrast between two simultaneous ideas

١- تظهر التناقض بين فكرتين متزامنتين (تحدثان في وقت واحد)

- Can be at the beginning or in the middle. If it starts the sentence, put a comma in the middle.

٢- يمكن أن تأتي في بداية الجملة أو في منتصفها. إذا بدأت الجملة بها، نضع فاصلة في المنتصف.

Ex. While traditional methods work well, modern technique engage students more.

٣- توضح التزامن بين الطرق التقليدية و الأساليب الحديثة في التعليم

Ex. I passed the test while it was hard.

Ex. I like math while my friend likes art.

لاحظ:

١- تستخدم but للربط بين فكرتين في جملة واحدة و تأتي في المنتصف و غالبًا ما يسبقها comma

٢- تستخدم However للربط بين جملتين و تأتي في بداية الجملة الثانية (أو يسبقها نقطة) ونضع بعدها comma

٣- تستخدم While للمقارنة بين شيئين متناقضين و لكن يحدثان في الوقت نفسه و تأتي في بداية الجملة أو في المنتصف



Speaking skills

Agreeing and Disagreeing

• الاتفاق و الاعتراض :

Agreeing

1. I agree	الاتفاق
2. I think so	أظن ذلك.
3. I believe that	أعتقد أن
4. That's right	هذا صحيح.

Disagreeing

I don't agree	لا اتفق
I disagree	اعتراض/لا أتفق
I don't think so	لا أعتقد ذلك
I am not sure	لست متأكدًا

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية و رسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

Learning games are fun and effective. They help students learn new skills. Interactive apps and brain training games can improve concentration, memory skills, and mental development. Games motivate students and make lessons more enjoyable. Games help students participate actively and become smarter. When you play puzzle games, your brain works harder to find solutions. Games can make difficult subjects like math and science more interesting. However, teachers should balance games with traditional methods. Learning games are popular with children and help them stay focused. Children should use them carefully because they can support both education and mental growth.

Lesson 3


New Message

To : zain2026@gmail.com Cc Bcc

From : murad@gmail.com

Subject : A new way of learning

Hi Murad,

I hope you are doing well. I want to tell you about the new way of learning at school. Our teacher uses smart learning with games and interactive activities. It makes lessons fun and helps us understand difficult subjects. We can imagine, explore ideas, and work in groups. I feel more confident and remember things better. I really enjoy this method, and it makes learning exciting. I think you would like it too!

Yours,

Zain

Send
🔗
📎
📷
🔍
😊
🗑️

Lessons 5 & 6

Good study habits help students learn better. First, find a quiet space without distractions. This helps you concentrate and remember information longer. Use different methods, such as writing notes, making diagrams, or using flashcards. Visual tools make learning easier and more enjoyable. Set small, achievable goals instead of trying to study everything at once. Take regular breaks to give your brain time to process information. You can also make stories or songs to remember difficult facts. Teaching others what you learn is helpful. Finally, stay motivated and confident. These tips make studying easier and more fun.

Al-Azhar Test

To get ready for exams, you should make a study schedule. This helps you organize your time and study everything. It is also important to find a quiet place to study because this way you can concentrate better. While studying is important, make sure you take regular short breaks to rest your mind.

Test on Unit 8

Smart learning is a modern and effective way of education. It uses interactive tools like apps and games. These tools make lessons enjoyable. It also help students participate actively. For example, brain training games can improve your concentration and memory skills. This creative style is very different from traditional methods. It helps shy students build confidence. It encourages everyone to learn new skills. The goal is to make learning meaningful and connected to real life. When lessons are fun, students feel more motivated. Smart learning is the future of education.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What kind of learning helps Malek understand faster?

2. How does Malek study long processes?

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Salma asks her teacher about learning apps.

Salma : Do you think educational apps are good for learning?

Teacher : Yes, I believe they are ① -----
They help students practice new skills.

Salma : ② ----- ?

Teacher : Yes, they encourage everyone to participate.

Salma : Can using apps distract students sometimes?

Teacher : Yes, sometimes they ③ -----

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. The children loved the colorful ----- in the online story.

SB

a. apps b. animations c. skills d. solutions

2. The new system will ----- traditional and digital learning tools.

a. combine b. participate c. replace d. empathize

3. ----- he was tired, he stayed up late to finish his homework.

SB

a. Because of b. While c. Since d. Therefore

4. Students love video games. -----, parents worry about too much screen time.

a. While b. Since c. Because d. However

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. I am tired, while I will finish my homework. (.....)
2. Marwan is very clever. While, he makes mistakes. (.....)
3. I tried to call him, so he didn't answer. (.....)
4. However traditional methods are familiar, new methods can be more effective. (.....)

C: Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

When Sara moved to a new country, she felt anxious and alone. She struggled with the new language. The traditional method of repeating words made her feel bored. Her new teacher tried something different. They played games to practice pronunciation and learned simple phrases through songs. This interactive style created a safe atmosphere. Gradually, Sara could communicate basic feelings. She started to feel calm and confident. She learned that smart learning turns fear into joy.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Sara feel anxious when she moved?

2. How did the teacher help Sara learn the language?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. The interactive style created a _____ atmosphere.

a. boring b. traditional c. safe d. silent

4. Smart learning turns _____ into joy.

a. fear b. fun c. games d. confidence

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

SB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"How to get ready for exams"

Test on Unit 8

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Rayan is a/an student.

- a. active b. shy c. lazy d. naughty

2. The teacher uses to help Rayan.

- a. flashcards and diagrams
b. interactive apps and learning games
c. traditional books d. videos and songs

B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. Who gives Rayan some advice to improve?

.....

4. What makes learning easy and enjoyable for him?

.....

5. How does Rayan feel at the end?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To is to understand other's feelings.

- a. imagine b. empathize c. participate d. motivate

2. Playing puzzles helps improve your skills and concentration.

- a. visual b. mental c. physical d. social

3. The synonym of "anxious" is

- a. calm b. worried c. nervous d. both b & c

4. To get the adjective from the verb "enjoy", we add the suffix

- a. -ive b. -ful c. -able d. -al

3

memorize - diagram - equipment - concentrate - struggle

In science class, we study photosynthesis. It is the way plants make food. To understand it, our teacher shows us a ❶ _____. This visual tool makes the knowledge easy to see. Some students ❷ _____ with the long definitions, but the teacher helps us. We use flashcards to ❸ _____ the facts. This way, we can ❹ _____ on the lesson and get high marks.

4

Every student has a different learning style. Some prefer visual tools, while others like **interactive** group activities. Modern education uses digital learning to motivate students. This style is different from traditional methods because it is more interactive. Students can use flashcards on their phones or participate in learning games. These tools turn a boring lesson into an exciting one. It is important to combine knowledge with fun to make the information meaningful. When the process is enjoyable, students work harder and improve **their** results gradually.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is mainly about _____ .
- a. studying alone
c. traditional learning
b. modern education styles
d. useless flashcards
2. The underlined word “their” refers to _____ .
- a. traditional methods
c. students
b. results
d. group activities

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined word “interactive” mean?

100 200 300 400 500 600 700 800 900 1000 1100 1200 1300 1400 1500 1600 1700 1800 1900 2000 2100 2200 2300 2400 2500 2600 2700 2800 2900 3000 3100 3200 3300 3400 3500 3600 3700 3800 3900 4000 4100 4200 4300 4400 4500 4600 4700 4800 4900 5000 5100 5200 5300 5400 5500 5600 5700 5800 5900 6000 6100 6200 6300 6400 6500 6600 6700 6800 6900 7000 7100 7200 7300 7400 7500 7600 7700 7800 7900 8000 8100 8200 8300 8400 8500 8600 8700 8800 8900 9000 9100 9200 9300 9400 9500 9600 9700 9800 9900 10000

- #### 4. Why is it important to combine knowledge with fun?

[illegible]

5. Do you agree that digital learning is more effective than traditional methods?
Why or why not?

[illegible]

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

1. Mowgli learned that loyalty and respect are parts of true friendship.

☐
☐

2. The Bandar-log respected the Law of the Jungle.

☐
☐

3. Bagheera's lessons included hiding and climbing.

☐
☐

4. Mowgli disliked his teachers because they were tough.

☐
☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Which animal helped Baloo and Bagheera save Mowgli?

6. Why do you think Mowgli trusted Baloo and Bagheera more than the Bandar-log?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. She was ill. She went to school.

SB (but)

2. Action games are fast. Puzzle games need concentration.

(While)

3. Hossam is very confident. He needs to practice more.

(However)

4. Research is difficult. However, it is effective for our development.

(but)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Mariam and Sofia are discussing how to learn a long science process, like photosynthesis.

Mariam : How do you learn long processes for science?

Sofia : My ❶ is to draw the steps.

Mariam : That's a good ❷ What next?

Sofia : Then I explain each step out loud. This ❸
you can find what you don't know.

Mariam : I see. Why ❹ you use some tools to connect them?

Sofia : Yes, I use a short story to connect them.

Mariam : That's helpful. Thanks for the tips.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Smart learning"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify the main idea in a text about job profiles
- Analyze a job profile
- Determine the meaning of unknown words based on context

Listening:

- Identify the gist in a text about workers' stories
- Identify key details about workers' jobs, feelings, and main responsibilities
- Recognize the meanings of new words related to job experiences based on context

Language:

- Cause & Effect

Writing:

- Write a paragraph about a future job, including interests, skills, why chosen, and future goals

Speaking:

- Discuss and present ideas about a dream job, including required skills and responsibilities
- Role-play a job interview, asking and answering questions about skills and values
- Discuss the importance of different jobs.



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

profile (n)	ملف شخصي	responsibilities (n)	مسؤوليات
communication (n)	الاتصال - التواصل	strengths (n)	نقاط القوة
job profile (n)	ملف مهني	career (n)	الحياة المهنية
qualifications (n)	مؤهلات	useful (adj)	مفيد
tiring (adj)	متعب	dangerous (adj)	خطير
mindful (adj)	واعي - مدرك	exciting (adj)	مثير

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

description (n)	وصف	equipment (n)	معدات
skills (n)	مهارات	safety (n)	امن
employer (n)	صاحب العمل	factories (n)	مصانع
role (n)	دور	treatment (n)	علاج - معاملة
particular (adj)	محدد/معين	teamwork (n)	العمل الجماعي
mechanical engineer (n)	مهندس ميكانيكي	leadership (n)	القيادة
ensure (v.d.n)	يؤكد	degrees (n)	درجات
workshop (n)	ورشة	training (n)	تدريب
patients (n)	المرضي	interests (n)	اهتمامات
problem-solving	حل المشاكل	traffic (n)	المرور
certificates (n)	شهادات	mechanic (n)	ميكانيكي
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	respected (adj)	محترم
vehicles (n)	مركبات	passion (n)	شغف
chef (n)	رئيس الطباخين	test (v.ed) (n)	اختبار - يختبر
guide (n)	مرشد	mention (v.ed)	يذكر
employee (n)	موظف	highlight (v.ed)	يبرز
development (n)	تطوير	solve (v.d)	يحل
technical (adj)	فني	match (v.ed)	يطابق

interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية	backgrounds (n)	خلفيات
report (n) (v. ed)	تقرير - يبلغ	fires (n)	حرائق
accidents (n)	حوادث	act (v.ed)	يتصرف - يمثل
clear (adj)	واضح	facilitate (v.d)	يسهل

Definitions

job profile	ملف مهني	tells about a person's work, skills, and responsibilities
responsibilities (n)	مسئوليات	duties or tasks someone must do
qualifications (n)	مؤهلات	studies or training needed for a job
career (n)	الحياة المهنية	the work a person does through life
communication (n)	الاتصال - التواصل	the way people share ideas, thoughts, or feelings

Expressions & Prepositions

focus on	يركز علي	care for	يهتم ب
on the road	في الطريق	depend on	يعتمد على
rely on	يعتمد علي	break down	يتعطل
makes me feel useful	تجعلني اشعر اني مفيد	include facilitating learning	يتضمن تسهيل التعلم
work as a journalist	يعمل كصحفي		
involve solving problems	يشمل حل المشاكل		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
useful (adj)	مفيد	helpful - valuable		useless - harmful	عديم الفائدة/ضار
tiring (adj)	متعب	exhausting - difficult		relaxing - easy	مريح/سهل
mindful (adj)	منتبه	careful - aware		careless - unaware	مهمل/غير واع
exciting (adj)	مثير	interesting - thrilling		boring - dull	ممل
dangerous (adj)	خطير	risky - unsafe		safe - harmless	امن
clear (adj)	واضح	obvious - plain		unclear - confusing	غير واضح/مربك
facilitate (v.d)	يسهل	make easier		complicate - make difficult	يعقد

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ful	تحول الفعل الي صفة	useful-mindful
-ing	تحول الفعل الي صفة	exciting-tiring
-ous	تحول الاسم الي صفة	dangerous
-ion	تحول الفعل الي اسم	communication
-er	تحول الفعل الي اسم	employer
-ee	تحول الفعل الي اسم	employee
en-	تحول الصفة الي فعل	ensure

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
give	يعطي	gave	given
know	يعرف	knew	known
do	يفعل	did	done
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
make	يجعل	made	made



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 include / involve / contain

- **include** (يشمل / يتضمن - جزء من قائمة)

• تُستخدم لإضافة شيء كجزء من مجموعة أو قائمة. تعني أن هذا الشيء هو واحد من عدة أشياء أخرى

Ex. The price **includes** breakfast.

- **involve** (يتطلب / يشمل - شيء معنوي أو نشاط)

Ex. The job **involves** working long hours.

- **contain**

• يحتوي تُستخدم عندما يكون الشيء بداخل شيء آخر

Ex. The box **contains** old photos.

2 during / while

• while

• (بينما / أثناء) - تُستخدم مع جملة كاملة (فاعل + فعل)، وغالبًا تعبر عن حدثين يحدثان في نفس الوقت.

Ex. I was listening to music **while** I was studying.

Ex. He fell asleep **while** he was watching TV.

• during

• (أثناء / خلال) - يأتي بعدها اسم فقط (وليس فعل)، وتدل على فترة زمنية

Ex. I fell asleep **during** the movie.

3 enjoy +v.+ing or noun

Ex. I **enjoy playing** football with my friends.

4 profession / career / job

• job

• عمل تقوم به لتحصل على المال

Ex. My dad has a **job** in a school.

• profession

Ex. Teaching is my **profession**.

• career

• حياة مهنية/مسيره مهنية

Ex. I want a **career** in medicine.

• عمل يحتاج تدريباً او دراسة مثل الطب او التدريس

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The course practical training.

a. contains b. consists c. includes d. holds

2. He was talking on the phone the meeting.

a. while b. during c. when d. on

3. Students enjoy different hobbies.

a. do b. does c. did d. doing

Reading

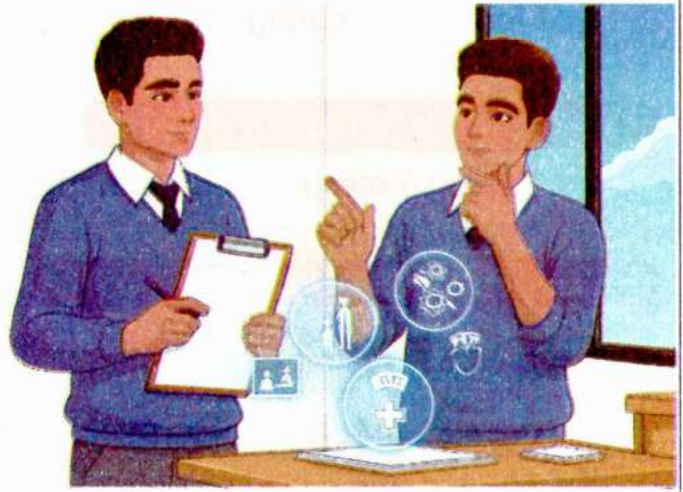
SB Page (40)

SB Page (40)

استمع إلى النصوص



A job **profile**⁽¹⁾ is a short but clear **description**⁽²⁾ of a person's work, skills, and **responsibilities**⁽³⁾. It **acts**⁽⁴⁾ like a **guide**⁽⁵⁾ that helps both **employers**⁽⁶⁾ and **employees**⁽⁷⁾ understand exactly what is expected in a **particular role**⁽⁸⁾. For example, the job profile of a teacher includes **facilitating**⁽⁹⁾ student learning and **development**⁽¹⁰⁾, preparing lessons, explaining ideas in a simple way, and **supporting**⁽¹¹⁾ students in their learning journey.



A **mechanical engineer's profile**⁽¹²⁾ is quite different: it involves solving **technical problems**⁽¹³⁾, testing **equipment**⁽¹⁴⁾, and ensuring **safety**⁽¹⁵⁾ in workshops and factories. A nurse's profile **focuses on**⁽¹⁶⁾ caring for patients, giving medicines correctly, and supporting doctors during **treatment**⁽¹⁷⁾. Job profiles often mention the specific skills needed, such as **communication**⁽¹⁸⁾, teamwork, problem-solving, and sometimes leadership. They also highlight **qualifications**⁽¹⁹⁾, like university degrees, certificates, or technical training.

For young people, understanding job profiles is very useful because it helps them plan their future. When you know what a job requires, you can decide if it matches your own interests, **strengths**⁽²⁰⁾, and **career**⁽²¹⁾ goals.

١. ملف المهني
٢. وصف
٣. مسئوليات
٤. يمثل
٥. مرشد / دليل
٦. اصحاب العمل
٧. الموظفون
٨. دور محدد
٩. تسهيل
١٠. تطوير
١١. دعم
١٢. ملف المهندس
- الميكانيكي
١٣. مشاكل فنية
١٤. المعدات
١٥. الامان
١٦. يركز علي
١٧. العلاج
١٨. التواصل
١٩. المؤهلات
٢٠. نقاط القوة
٢١. الحياة المهنية



Audio Script SB Page (42)

Hi. My name is Ali, and I am a Bus Driver. I **wake up**⁽¹⁾ at 4 a.m. every day to start my work. Because the city is always **crowded**⁽²⁾ and full of **traffic**⁽³⁾, I must stay **focused**⁽⁴⁾ and very careful on the road. I work for a long time, and that is tiring. My job is important since many people **depend on**⁽⁵⁾ me to get to their schools and workplaces **safely**⁽⁶⁾.

My name is Samir. I'm a **mechanic**⁽⁷⁾. I repair cars and solve technical **problems**⁽⁸⁾, so people **rely on**⁽⁹⁾ me whenever their vehicles **break down**⁽¹⁰⁾. This makes me feel useful and **respected**⁽¹¹⁾.

Hi, my name is Hassan. I'm a **chef**⁽¹²⁾. I work in a busy restaurant where I prepare meals for many people. Cooking is my **passion**⁽¹³⁾; therefore, I enjoy spending long hours in the kitchen. As a result, I improve my **skills**⁽¹⁴⁾ every day.

Hi, I'm Rana, and I work as a **journalist**⁽¹⁵⁾. I write news stories and **interview**⁽¹⁶⁾ people from different **backgrounds**⁽¹⁷⁾, so my job is exciting. However, it can be dangerous when I report fires or accidents. As a result, I always stay mindful and careful.

١. يستيقظ
٢. مزدحم
٣. المرور
٤. مركز
٥. يعتمد علي
٦. بأمان
٧. ميكانيكي
٨. مشكال فنية
٩. يعتمد علي
١٠. يتعطّل
١١. محترم
١٢. طاهي
١٣. شغف
١٤. مهارات
١٥. صحفي
١٦. يقابل
١٧. خلفيات

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. _____ are duties or tasks someone must do.
a. Qualifications b. Responsibilities c. Thoughts d. Feelings
2. _____ are studies or training needed for a job
a. Tasks b. Jobs
c. Qualifications d. Strengths
3. A _____ is the work a person does through life
a. training b. career c. duty d. thought
4. _____ is the way people share ideas, thoughts, or feelings.
a. Communication b. Atmosphere c. Feedback d. Idea

Synonyms and antonyms

5. My job is long and tiring. The antonym of "tiring" is.....
a. exhausting b. relaxing c. boring d. helpless
6. Be mindful when you use the knife. The synonym of "mindful" is.....
a. useful b. tiring c. sleepy d. aware
7. Watching football is very exciting. The antonym of "exciting" is.....
a. helpful b. boring c. easy d. shameful
8. Playing with fire is dangerous. The synonym of "dangerous" is.....
a. risky b. safe c. dead d. valuable

Prefixes and Suffixes

9. To form the adjective of the word "mind", we add the suffix.....
a. -ion b. -ive c. -ful d. -ing
10. We add the suffix "ous" to the word "danger" to form a/an.....
a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
11. We can form the noun from "employ" when we add the suffix".....".
a. -ee b. -er c. or d. a&b
12. We add the prefix"....." to form a verb from the word "sure"
a. en b. in c. il d. on

Guess the meaning and Collocations

13. She updated her online..... before applying for the job.
a. password b. profile c. background d. career
14. The job..... dealing with customers every day.
a. consists b. involves c. contains d. wakes
15. Good.....helps people understand each other better.
a. noise b. argument c. punishment d. communication
16. The long walk was very..... for the children.
a. exciting b. tiring c. useful d. careful

17. He has the right _____ to become a teacher.
a. hobbies b. qualifications c. games d. clothes
18. You should be _____ when you cross the street.
a. careless b. mindful c. angry d. noisy
19. The football match was really _____. We enjoyed it a lot.
a. boring b. tiring c. exciting d. dangerous
20. Students should focus _____ their studies well during exams.
a. in b. on c. with d. by
21. We wake _____ early when we travel.
a. up b. down c. out d. away
22. My car _____ down yesterday. I took a taxi.
a. gave b. hit c. broke d. made
23. My hobbies _____ reading and swimming.
a. include b. consist c. make d. need
24. We should teach our children to rely _____ themselves.
a. down b. in c. out d. on
25. Speaking English well helps us _____ a good job.
a. to getting b. get c. got d. gets

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

relaxing - communication - qualifications - tiring - mindful

Ahmed was excited about applying for a new job after finishing university. He updated his online profile carefully before sending the application. During the interview, the manager focused on his ① _____ skills and how well he could work with others. Although the work was sometimes ② _____ Ahmed stayed ③ _____ of his duties because his strong ④ _____ helped him succeed.



Language

قواعد لغوية

Cause & Effect

السبب والنتيجة

- Cause and effect means that something happens because of a reason.

• (السبب والنتيجة) تعني أن حدثًا ما يقع بسبب سبب معين

1 because / since → show the cause

• نستخدم (because- since) لشرح سبب حدوث شيء ما:

السبب + because / since + النتيجة

Ex. He stayed home because he was sick.

Ex. She passed the exam since she had studied hard.

• لاحظ: يأتي بعد because/since جملة (فاعل + فعل ...) نستخدم Why للسؤال عن السبب.

2 so / therefore / as a result → show the effect (النتيجة)

• نستخدم (as a result- so-therefore) للتعبير عن النتيجة التي حدثت بسبب السبب

النتيجة + so / therefore / as a result + السبب

Ex. He was sick, so he stayed home.

Ex. She studied hard; therefore, she passed the exam.

Ex. The shop was closed; as a result, we couldn't buy anything.

• ادرس الاتي لحل سؤال Rewrite

بدائل since / because

Ex. We decided to stay home because it was raining.

• ممكن استخدام As بدلا من because/since

Ex. As it was raining, we decided to stay at home.

• يمكن ايضا استخدام because of/due to لكن يأتي بعدهما اسم وليس جملة كما يلي

Ex. He stayed home because he was ill. (because of)

Ex. He stayed home because of his illness.

• لاحظ الجمل الاتية:

- "The weather was bad. We cancelled the trip." (because)/(Since)
- "We cancelled the trip because the weather was bad."
- "Since the weather was bad, we cancelled the trip."

• يمكن استخدام **so / therefore / as a result** بدلا من **because** ولكن يجب عكس ترتيب الجمل.

- "The weather was bad, **so** we cancelled the trip."
- "The weather was bad. **As a result**, we cancelled the trip."
- "We cancelled the trip **because of** the bad weather."

• أعد كتابة الجملة التالية باستخدام:

- Rewrite the sentences correctly using the words between brackets.

"I didn't have enough money, so I didn't buy the phone." (Therefore)

"He was very tired; as a result, he went to bed early." (Since)

Exercises on Language

1 Rewrite the sentences correctly using the words between brackets.

Set Book Exercises

1. He didn't come to school because he was ill. (so)
2. I was tired so I went to bed early. (since)
3. The streets were wet because it rained. (therefore)
4. She studied hard so she passed the exam. (because)
5. We stayed at home because it was raining. (as a result)

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. The mechanic fixed the car quickly, so the customer was happy. (because)
7. Since the doctor was busy, the nurse helped the patients. (so)
8. He missed the bus because he woke up late. (so)
9. She was happy so she smiled all day. (because)
10. They didn't play the match because it was raining. (therefore)

Unit 9 Jobs & Skills

11. I didn't understand the lesson so I asked the teacher. (since)
12. The shop was closed because it was a holiday. (as a result)
13. He was very tired so he went to sleep early. (because)
14. She didn't study well because she was ill. (so)
15. The road was blocked so we arrived late. (since)
16. The weather was very stormy, so the plane couldn't take off. (because)
17. She practiced every day; therefore, she won the competition. (Since)
18. I forgot my wallet, so I couldn't pay for the meal. (As)
19. Because the bridge was old, it was closed for repairs. (Therefore)



Speaking

السؤال عن الوظيفة الحلم • Asking and answering questions about "Dream jobs":

Question

1. What's your dream job?

ما هي وظيفتك احلامك؟

2. Why do you want to do that job?

لماذا تريد أن تعمل في هذه الوظيفة؟

3. What skills or talents does it need?

ما المهارات أو المواهب التي تحتاجها هذه الوظيفة؟

4. Who inspired you to choose this job?

من الذي ألهمك لاختيار هذه الوظيفة؟

Answer

1. My dream job is to be a teacher.

وظيفة احلامي هي أن أكون معلماً.

2. I want to be a teacher because I enjoy helping students learn and grow.

أريد أن أكون معلماً لأنني أستمتع بمساعدة الطلاب على التعلم والنمو.

3. It needs good communication skills, patience, teamwork, and problem-solving abilities.

تحتاج إلى مهارات اتصال جيدة، وصبر، والعمل الجماعي، والقدرة على حل المشكلات.

4. My favorite teacher inspired me because she always encourages students to do their best.

ألهمتني معلمتي المفضلة لأنها كانت دائماً تشجع الطلاب على بذل أفضل ما لديهم.

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A job that makes you feel exhausted is described as
 a. exciting b. mindful c. tiring d. useful
2. The word "useful" is similar in meaning to
 a. useless b. helpful c. tiring d. harmful
3. A job profile mainly tells about a person's
 a. hobbies only b. age and name
 c. work and responsibilities d. salary
4. The prefix turns the adjective "sure" into a verb.
 a. un- b. en- c. ir- d. dis-
5. Communication is the way people ideas and feelings.
 a. hide b. share c. test d. break
6. The opposite of "dangerous" is
 a. risky b. unsafe c. safe d. exciting
7. A/An refers to someone who employs workers.
 a. employer b. employee c. interviewee d. reporter
8. The verb "facilitate" means
 a. complicated b. make easier c. ignore d. delay
9. We should discuss the problem well to it.
 a. create b. work c. solve d. cause
10. The city is crowded, the word "crowded" means
 a. empty b. noisy c. full of people d. dangerous
11. My friend is always He focuses well.
 a. careless b. unaware c. mindful d. lazy
12. The word "clear" is opposite in meaning to
 a. plain b. obvious c. confusing d. useful
13. I felt nervous the interview.
 a. while b. during c. as soon as d. the moment

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**communication - qualifications - facilitate - dangerous - useful**

A job profile is a short but clear description of a person's work. It explains the skills and responsibilities needed for a job. Good ① skills are important in most careers. Job profiles also highlight the ② required, such as degrees or training. They help employers ③ learning and development. Understanding job profiles is very ④ for young people planning their future.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. He didn't come to school because he was ill. (so)

.....

2. He got high marks because he answered the questions correctly. (so)

.....

3. I felt cold so I wore a coat. (since)

.....

4. I was tired because I worked a lot. (therefore)

.....

5. As he didn't have the right qualifications, he didn't get the job. (As a result)

.....

6. It was a very tiring day. As a result, I went to bed early. (so)

.....

7. Since the internet was down, I couldn't finish my task. (Therefore)

.....

4 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed and Karim are talking about job profiles.

Ahmed : What is your dream job, Karim?

Karim : I want to be a ① I want to write news stories.

Ahmed : That sounds cool! What else does a journalist do?

Karim : I would interview people from different ②
to hear their stories.

Ahmed : Do you think the work will be ③?

Karim : No, I think my job is exciting because every day is different.

Ahmed : Is it always ④ to be a journalist?

Karim : No. It can be dangerous when I report fires or accidents.

5 Write an email of ONE HUNDRED (100) words to:

Your friend about your dream job. Your name is Ahmed and your email address is ahmed77@gmail.com. Your friend is Omar and his email address is omar88@yahoo.com.

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)


New Message
— / ×

To :

From :

Subject :

Cc Bcc

Send













استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

motivation (n)	تحفيز	interests (n)	اهتمامات
opportunities (n)	فرص	stress (n)	توتر / ضغط
disappointment (n)	احباط	satisfaction (n)	الرضا

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

decisions (n)	قرارات	nursing (n)	تمريض
happiness (n)	سعادة	excellent (adj)	ممتاز
relationship (n)	علاقة	programing (n)	البرمجة
social (adj)	اجتماعي	architecture (n)	الهندسة المعمارية
choice (n)	اختيار	personality (n)	شخصية
creative (adj)	مبدع	success (n)	نجاح
satisfying (adj)	مُرَضٍ / مُشْبِع	growth (n)	النمو
skills (n)	مهارات	options (n)	اختيارات
experience (n)	خبرة	certificates (n)	شهادات
confidence (n)	الثقة	suit (v) (ed)	يناسب / يلائم
long-term (adj)	طويل الامد	explore (v.d)	يستكشف
engineering (n)	الهندسة	affect (v.ed)	يؤثر علي
health (n)	الصحة	consider (v.ed)	يفكر في



Definitions

motivation (n) تحفيز what **pushes**⁽¹⁾ you to do something and helps you keep going until you succeed.

interests (n) اهتمامات things you like or enjoy

disappointment (n) احباط a feeling of **sadness**⁽²⁾, unhappiness and **dissatisfaction**⁽³⁾.

stress (n) توتر feeling worried or under **pressure**⁽⁴⁾

satisfaction (n) الرضا feeling happy and proud of what you did

١. تدفعك

٢. حزن

٣. عدم الرضا

٤. ضغط

Expressions & Prepositions

love helping people	يحب مساعدة الناس	think about	يفكر في
connect to	مرتبط ب	before making a decision	قبل اتخاذ قرار
spend years working	يقضي سنوات في العمل	such a big part of life	جزء كبير من الحياة
		let's talk	دعنا نتحدث



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
disappointment (n)	محبط	sadness - frustration		satisfaction - happiness - pleasure	رضا/سعادة
stress (n)	توتر	pressure - tension		relaxation - comfort - ease	راحة/استرخاء
wrong (adj)	خطأ	incorrect - false		right - correct - true	صحيح
motivation (n)	تحفيز	encouragement - inspiration		discouragement	تثبيط/احباط
satisfaction (n)	الرضا	happiness - pleasure		dissatisfaction - unhappiness	عدم رضا
creative (adj)	مبدع	innovative - artistic		uncreative - ordinary	عادي/غير مبدع

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	motivation
dis-	تحول الكلمة الى العكس	dissatisfaction
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	greatly
-ness	تحول الصفة الى اسم	happiness / sadness
-ive	تحول الفعل الى صفة	creative
-ment	تحول الفعل الى اسم	disappointment

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
spend	يقضي	spent	spent
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought	thought
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
bring	يحضر	brought	brought



1) another / other / others

• **another** + آخر (شيء إضافي) مفرد يعد

Ex. Would you like to move to **another** country?

• **other** + اسم جمع أخرى

Ex. Osama has always loved fish and **other** sea animals.

• **others** آخرون اسم جمع (بدون اسم بعدها) = **other** + اسم جمع

Ex. Some people like playing chess. **Others** (Other people) don't.

2) affect / effect

• **affect** (v.) يؤثر علي = **have an effect on**

Ex. Good food **affects** us well.

• **effect** (n) تأثير

Ex. Good food **has a good effect on** us.

3) explore / invent / discover

• **explore**

• يستكشف مكان:

Ex. The best way to **explore** the countryside is on foot.

• **invent**

• يخترع (شيء لم يكن له وجود من قبل)

Ex. The mobile was **invented** in 1957.

• **discover**

• يكتشف (شيء كان موجودا من قبل ولكنه كان مجهولا)

Ex. Christopher Columbus **discovered** America.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Exercises our health well.

a. effect

b. affection

c. effective

d. affect

2. Ahmad Zewail the femto second.

a. explored

b. discovered

c. invented

d. found

3. Some students are active; are lazy.

a. others

b. other

c. another

d. the other

Reading

SB Page (40)

استمع إلى النص



SB Page (40)

Choosing the right **career**⁽¹⁾ is one of the most important **decisions**⁽²⁾ in life. People spend many years working, so their jobs greatly **affect**⁽³⁾ their **happiness**⁽⁴⁾, health, and even **relationships**⁽⁵⁾.

A good career can give you **motivation**⁽⁶⁾ and happiness. When thinking about a career, you should always begin with your **interests**⁽⁷⁾. For example, if you love helping people, or **nursing**⁽⁸⁾, social work could be an **excellent choice**⁽⁹⁾. If you enjoy solving problems and working with technology, or computer science, programming may suit you. If you are a **creative person**⁽¹⁰⁾, jobs such as **architecture**⁽¹¹⁾, writing, music, or cooking might be more **satisfying**⁽¹²⁾.



It is also important to consider your skills, **qualifications**⁽¹³⁾, and **personality**⁽¹⁴⁾. Some careers require years of university study, while others depend on training or experience. Students should also think about job **opportunities**⁽¹⁵⁾ in the future and how careers connect to their country's needs.

Because work is such a big part of life, choosing the wrong job can cause stress, and **disappointment**⁽¹⁶⁾. However, the right choice can bring **success**⁽¹⁷⁾, **confidence**⁽¹⁸⁾, personal growth, and long-term **satisfaction**⁽¹⁹⁾. Therefore, students should carefully explore many **options**⁽²⁰⁾ before making a final decision about their future.

١. الحياة المهنية
٢. قرارات
٣. يؤثر علي
٤. السعادة
٥. العلاقات
٦. التحفيز
٧. اهتمامات
٨. تمرير
٩. اختيار ممتاز
١٠. شخص مبدع
١١. هندسة معمارية
١٢. مرضي
١٣. مؤهلات
١٤. شخصية
١٥. فرص
١٦. احباط
١٧. نجاح
١٨. ثقة
١٩. رضا
٢٠. اختيارات

Speaking

Asking and answering questions about "Giving Career Advice:

• جمل عن اعطاء النصيحة

Question

1. What should I do to get my dream job?

ماذا يجب علي ان افعل لالحصل على وظيفة احلامي؟

2. What is your advice for getting more experience?

ما هي نصيحتك للحصول على خبرة اكثر؟

3. What job can I choose?

ما هي الوظيفة التي يمكن ان اختارها؟

4. I enjoy solving problems and technology.

استمتع بحل المشكلات والتكنولوجيا.

Answer

You should begin with your interests when thinking about a career.

يجب أن تبدأ باهتماماتك عند التفكير في المسار المهني.

If I were you, I would consider my skills, qualifications, and personality before deciding.

إذا كنت مكانك، سأضع مهاراتي ومؤهلاتي وشخصيتي في الاعتبار قبل اتخاذ القرار.

It's a good idea to choose a job that gives you motivation and happiness.

من الجيد أن تختار وظيفة تمنحك الحماس والسعادة.

Why don't you think about programming if you enjoy solving problems and technology?

لماذا لا تفكر في البرمجة إذا كنت تستمتع بحل المشكلات والتكنولوجيا؟

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. _____ are the things you like or enjoy.

a. Interests b. Pressure c. Satisfaction d. Failure

2. _____ is what pushes you to do something and helps you keep going until you succeed.

a. Stress b. Disappointment c. Motivation d. Sadness

3. _____ is when you feel worried or under pressure .

a. Motivation b. Satisfaction c. Stress d. Health

4. _____ is when you feel happy and proud of what you did.

- a. Interests b. Pressure c. Satisfaction d. Failure

Synonyms & Antonyms

5. The antonym of "disappointment" is _____.

- a. satisfaction b. sadness c. frustration d. failure

6. The synonym of "wrong" is _____.

- a. useful b. correct c. false d. right

7. The antonym of "creative" is _____.

- a. artistic b. ordinary c. easy d. clever

8. The synonym of "motivation" is _____.

- a. encouragement b. safety c. death d. disappointment

Suffixes and prefixes

9. To form the adverb of the word "great", we add the suffix _____.

- a. -ion b. -ly c. -ful d. -ing

10. We add the suffix _____ to the "word" happy to get the noun.

- a. -ly b. -ing c. -ness d. -ed

11. We can form the adjective from "create" by adding the suffix _____.

- a. -tion b. -ive c. -ly d. a&b

12. We add the prefix "_____ " to form the opposite of "satisfaction".

- a. un- b. im- c. ir- d. dis-

Guessing the meaning and Collocations

13. Bad weather _____ us badly.

- a. effects b. affects c. affections d. effect

14. We should depend _____ ourselves to achieve our goals.

- a. in b. on c. at d. with

15. The mobile is connected _____ the charger.

- a. with b. to c. by d. out

16. Let's _____ that poor man.

- a. helps b. help c. helped d. helping

17. Before _____ a decision, you should think well.

- a. doing b. making c. going d. spending

18. I spend my free time _____ stories.

- a. read b. reads c. reading d. is reading

- [illegible]

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

motivation - explore - opportunities - disappointment - stress

Learning is a long journey that needs strong ❶ ----- Sometimes, students face a lot of ❷ ----- because of exams and homework. If they do not get high grades, they might feel ❸ ----- However, they should not give up. School is a great place to explore new subjects and hobbies. By working hard, students can find many ❹ ----- to grow and reach their dream jobs in the future.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed and Sara are speaking about giving career advice.

Ali : I am really confused about my future. What should I do?

Sara : It's a good ❶ _____ to start by thinking about your favorite hobbies.

Ali : I love technology and solving ② but I don't know which job is best.

Sara : ③ don't you think about computer programming?
It suits your skills.

Ali : That sounds exciting, but I'm worried about the difficult exams.

Sara : 4 I were you, I would study a little every day to avoid stress.

Ali : You are right. Should I ask my teacher for more information?

Sara : Yes, you should ask for advice to explore all your opportunities.



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

environmental scientist (n)	عالم بيئي	responsible (adj)	مسئول
ambitious (adj)	طموح	creative (adj)	مبدع
skilled (adj)	ماهر	challenging (adj)	صعب
rewarding (adj)	مجزي	successful (adj)	ناجح
opportunities (n)	فرص	community development (n)	تنمية المجتمع
management (n)	ادارة		

Vocabulary



المفردات الاضافية

values (n)	قيم	communities (n)	مجتمعات
nature (n)	الطبيعة	project (n)	مشروع
challenge (n)	تحدي	flexibility (n)	مرونة
service (n)	خدمة	abilities (n)	قدرات
matters (n)	امور	patience (n)	الصبر
meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى	dream (n.v.ed)	حلم/يحلم
presentation (n)	تقديم	shape (v.d)	يشكل
teamwork (n)	عمل جماعي	organize (v.d)	ينظم
workplaces (n)	اماكن عمل	guide (v.d)	يوجه - يرشد
inspire (n)	يلهم	achieve (v.d)	يحقق
engineer (n)	مهندس	fit (v) (ted)	يناسب/يلائم

Expressions & Prepositions

give me an example	يعطي مثال	in the future	في المستقبل
makes sense	هذا منطقي	when I grow up	عندما اكبر
point to	يشير الي	I hope to	امل ان
good at	جيد في	in fact	في الواقع/في الحقيقة
believe in	يؤمن بـ		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
ambitious (adj)	طموح	determined - aspiring		lazy - unmotivated - careless	كسول/مهمل
skilled (adj)	ماهر	talented - experienced		unskilled - inexperienced	غير ماهر
rewarding (adj)	مجزي	satisfying		disappointing - tiring - useless	مخيّب للآمال/متعب
responsible (adj)	مسئول	reliable - accountable		irresponsible - careless	غير مسئول/مهمل
successful (adj)	ناجح	good- accomplished		unsuccessful - failing - defeated	غير ناجح

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ful	تحول الاسم الى صفة	successful
-ed	تحول الاسم الى صفة	skilled
-ing	تحول الفعل الى صفة	rewarding
-ible	تحول الاسم الى صفة	responsible
-ive	تحول الفعل الى صفة	creative

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
become	يصبح	became	become
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought	thought
begin	يبدأ	began	begun

Reading

SB Page (48)

SB Page (48)

استمع إلى النصوص



Talking about Job Skills

Sara: Hi, Lina. Are you still reading about **careers**⁽¹⁾?

Lina: Yes, but this book talks about how interests and values shape your job **choice**⁽²⁾.

Sara: That sounds interesting! Can you give me an example?

Lina: Sure. For example, if someone enjoys **nature**⁽³⁾, they might become an environmental scientist.

Sara: Oh, that's different. What about people who like helping their **communities**⁽⁴⁾?

Lina: They could think about public service, like working in community development.

Sara: I see. And what about people who are good at organizing things?

Lina: Then jobs in event planning or **project management**⁽⁵⁾ could be great for them.

Sara: That **makes sense**⁽⁶⁾. So, what do you think matters: more- skills or **values**⁽⁷⁾?

Lina: I'd say values, because they guide you toward a career that truly matches your **personality**⁽⁸⁾. What do you think?

Sara: I agree. A job feels more **meaningful**⁽⁹⁾ when it **fits**⁽¹⁰⁾ what you believe in.

١. الحياة المهنية
٢. الاختيار
٣. الطبيعة
٤. المجتمعات
٥. إدارة المشروعات
٦. هذا منطقي
٧. القيم
٨. الشخصية
٩. له معني
١٠. يلائم

SB Page (49)

Nader: Hi, Ramy. I'm preparing a **presentation**⁽¹⁾ about job skills for our class project.

Ramy: Oh, nice! Which skills are you going to **include**⁽²⁾?

Nader: Well, I already wrote about communication and teamwork. But I still need to add problem-solving skills.

Ramy: That's a good one. I believe problem-solving is very important too, because it helps people deal with **challenges**⁽³⁾ and find solutions.

Nader: You're right. Without problem-solving, many jobs would be difficult. I'm also thinking about flexibility. Workers today should be **flexible**⁽⁴⁾.

Ramy: Exactly! Technology and workplaces change so fast. If people are flexible, they can keep learning.

Nader: Yes, and **motivation**⁽⁵⁾ is also important. People who are motivated work harder and achieve more.

Ramy: I totally agree. In fact, if we have all these skills and values, we can be successful in our future jobs.

Nader: Perfect! I'll **add**⁽⁶⁾ that point to my presentation. Thanks for your help, Ramy.

Ramy: Anytime, Nader. Good luck with your **project**⁽⁷⁾!

١. التقديم
٢. يشمل
٣. التحديات
٤. مرن
٥. التحفيز
٦. يضيف
٧. مشروع



Writing Skills

Useful Language

- **Describing interests:** I enjoy..., / I am interested in
- **Explaining reasons:** because / since / that's why, so
- **Future expressions:** I want to..., / I hope to be..... / I'd like to...
- **Giving examples:** For example
- **Read this model paragraph and identify the different examples of useful language phrases.**

My dream job is to become a teacher. **I enjoy** explaining ideas to others, and helping students learn new things. Teaching is not always easy, but I believe it is a very rewarding career. For **example**, a teacher can inspire students and make them confident about their abilities. In the future, **I hope** to teach English **because** it is an international language that connects people from all over the world. I know it will take hard work and patience, but I am ready to follow this dream.



Speaking skills

Asking and answering questions about "Choosing the career":

• السؤال عن اختيار الوظيفة:

Stimuli

1. Which do you think is more important when choosing a career: skills, values, or interests? Why?

ما الذي تعتقد أنه الأكثر أهمية عند اختيار مهنة: المهارات، القيم، أم الاهتمامات؟ ولماذا؟

2. Can you give an example of a career that connects to nature or the environment?

هل يمكنك أن تعطي مثالاً على مهنة تتعلق بالطبيعة أو البيئة؟

3. What kind of jobs can people do if they are good at organizing?

ما نوع الوظائف التي يمكن أن يعمل بها الأشخاص إذا كانوا جيدين في التنظيم؟

4. Why do you think values are important in choosing a career?

لماذا تعتقد أن القيم مهمة عند اختيار مهنة؟

Response

I think interests are the most important because you will enjoy your work if it matches what you like.

أعتقد أن الاهتمامات هي الأكثر أهمية لأنك ستستمتع بعملك إذا كان يتوافق مع ما تحب.

A career as an environmental scientist connects directly to nature.

المهنة كعالم بيئة ترتبط مباشرة بالطبيعة.

They can work as event planners, office managers, or project coordinators.

يمكنهم العمل كمنظمي فعاليات، أو مديري مكاتب، أو منسقي مشاريع.

Because they help you feel proud and satisfied with your work.

لأنها تساعدك على الشعور بالفخر والرضا عن عملك.

5. How can a job feel more meaningful when it matches your personality?

كيف يمكن أن تصبح الوظيفة أكثر معنى عندما تتوافق مع شخصيتك؟

A job feels more meaningful when it matches your personality because you enjoy it and can do it well.

تصبح الوظيفة أكثر معنى عندما تتوافق مع شخصيتك لأنك تستمتع بها ويمكنك أداؤها بشكل جيد.

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He is very -----; everyone can trust him with important tasks.
a. responsible b. creative c. careless d. boring
- We add the suffix ----- to the word "success" to get the adjective.
a. -ly b. -able c. -ful d. -ion
- A person who can create new ideas is -----.
a. creative b. lazy c. careless d. rewarding
- Which suffix can turn "response" into an adjective?
a. -d b. -ible c. -ing d. -ive
- She was ----- to achieve her dream of becoming an engineer.
a. lazy b. determined c. careless d. unskilled
- What is the opposite of "rewarding"?
a. satisfying b. useless c. enjoyable d. talented
- She is very ----- at solving problems.
a. good b. keen c. lay d. new
- Completing this project was very -----; I learned a lot.
a. rewarding b. disappointing c. stressful d. lazy
- He believes ----- teamwork for success.
a. in b. at c. on d. for
- Which suffix turns "reward" into an adjective?
a. -able b. -ed c. -ing d. -ive
- The word ----- is an antonym of successful.
a. failing b. good c. accomplished d. talented
- The ----- scientist guided the community to protect nature.
a. teaching b. cultural c. industrial d. environmental
- The word "ambitious" means -----.
a. unmotivated b. determined c. lazy d. careless

14. We should teach our children the _____ of our society.

a. values

b. matches

c. failures

d. worries

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rewarding - successful - challenging - skilled - responsible

Good management is very important in any team project. A **1** _____ and ambitious student can help guide others and achieve goals. Working on a **2** _____ task can be hard, but it is also **3** _____ when the team succeeds. Creative ideas make projects more interesting, and **4** _____ students can solve problems easily.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Fatma and Karma are talking about choosing a job.

Fatma : I'm confused about my future job. What is more important: skills or interests?

Karma : **1** _____! If you like your job, you will enjoy it every day.

Fatma : True. I love nature. What can I be?

Karma : You could be an environmental **2** _____.

Fatma : Nice. But my sister is great at organizing. What about her?

Karma : She could be an event planner or an office **3** _____.

Fatma : Are values important when choosing a job?

Karma : Of course. Values make you feel proud. When your job matches your **4** _____, you feel satisfied.

Fatma : Thanks, Karma! A good career must match who we are.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"How to develop your skills"

Review on Unit 9

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

profile (n)	ملف	responsibilities (n)	مسؤوليات
communication (n)	الاتصال - التواصل	strengths (n)	نقاط القوة
job profile (n)	ملف مهني	career (n)	الحياة المهنية
qualifications (n)	مؤهلات	useful (adj)	مفيد
tiring (adj)	متعب	dangerous (adj)	خطير
mindful (adj)	واعي - مدرك	exciting (adj)	مثير
motivation (n)	تحفيز	interests (n)	اهتمامات
opportunities (n)	فرص	stress (n)	توتر
disappointment (n)	احباط	satisfaction (n)	الرضا
environmental scientist (n)	عالم بيئي	responsible (adj)	مسؤول
ambitious (adj)	طموح	creative (adj)	مبدع
skilled (adj)	ماهر	challenging (adj)	صعب
rewarding (adj)	مجزي	successful (adj)	ناجح
opportunities (n)	فرص	community development (n)	تنمية المجتمع
management (n)	ادارة		



Language

قواعد لغوية

Cause & Effect

السبب والنتيجة

- Cause and effect means that something happens because of a reason.

• (السبب والنتيجة) تعني أن حدثًا ما يقع بسبب سبب معين

1 because / since → show the cause

• نستخدم (because- since) لشرح سبب حدوث شيء ما:

السبب + because / since + النتيجة

Ex. He stayed home because he was sick.

Ex. She passed the exam since she had studied hard.

2 so / therefore / as a result → show the effect (النتيجة)

• نستخدم (as a result- so-therefore) للتعبير عن النتيجة التي حدثت بسبب السبب

النتيجة + so / therefore / as a result + السبب

Ex. He was sick, so he stayed home.

Ex. She studied hard; **therefore**, she passed the exam.

Ex. The shop was closed; **as a result**, we couldn't buy anything.

Speaking

Asking and answering questions about "Dream jobs": السؤال عن الوظيفة الحلم

Question

1. What's your dream job?

ما هي وظيفتك احلامك؟

2. Why do you want to do that job?

لماذا تريد أن تعمل في هذه الوظيفة؟

3. What skills or talents does it need?

ما المهارات أو المواهب التي تحتاجها هذه الوظيفة؟

Answer

1. My dream job is to be a teacher.

وظيفة احلامي هي أن أكون معلمًا.

2. I want to be a teacher because I enjoy helping students learn and grow.

أريد أن أكون معلمًا لأنني أستمتع بمساعدة الطلاب على التعلم والنمو.

3. It needs good communication skills, patience, teamwork, and problem-solving abilities.

تحتاج إلى مهارات اتصال جيدة، وصبر، والعمل الجماعي، والقدرة على حل المشكلات.

Asking and answering questions about "Giving Career Advice": جمل عن اعطاء النصيحة

Question

1. What should I do to get my dream job?

ماذا يجب على أن افعل للحصول على وظيفة احلامي؟

2. What is your advice for getting more experience?

ما هي نصيحتك للحصول على خبرة أكثر؟

3. What job can I choose?

ما هي الوظيفة التي يمكن أن أختارها؟

4. I enjoy solving problems and technology.

استمتع بحل المشكلات والتكنولوجيا.

Answer

You should begin with your interests when thinking about a career.

يجب أن تبدأ باهتماماتك عند التفكير في المسار المهني.

If I were you, I would consider my skills, qualifications, and personality before deciding.

لو كنت مكانك، سأضع مهاراتي ومؤهلاتي وشخصيتي في الاعتبار قبل اتخاذ القرار.

It's a good idea to choose a job that gives you motivation and happiness.

(من الجيد أن تختار وظيفة تمنحك الحماس والسعادة).

Why don't you think about programming if you enjoy solving problems and technology?

(لماذا لا تفكر في البرمجة إذا كنت تستمتع بحل المشكلات والتكنولوجيا؟)

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2


New Message

To : Omar Cc Bcc

From : Ahmed

Subject : My dream job

Dear Omar,

I hope you are fine. I want to tell you about my dream job. I would like to work as a teacher because I enjoy helping others learn. My job includes preparing lessons, explaining ideas clearly, and supporting students. Good communication skills are very important in my job. I also need patience, teamwork, and problem-solving skills. Teaching can be tiring sometimes, but it is very rewarding. This job gives me satisfaction because I help students achieve their goals.

Yours,
Ahmed

Send









Lesson 3

Choosing your career is an important decision in your life. First, you should think about your interests and what you enjoy doing. You also need to know your strengths and skills. Reading job profiles can help you understand the responsibilities and qualifications needed for each job. Talking to teachers, parents, or a career guide is very useful. Sometimes you may feel confused or stressed, but good planning helps. When you choose a career that matches your goals and interests, you will feel satisfied and motivated to succeed.

Lessons 5 & 6

My dream job is to be a mechanical engineer. I enjoy learning how machines work and how to fix problems. In this job, I will design and repair equipment and solve technical problems. I need good problem-solving skills and clear communication to work with a team. This job can be tiring, but it is very exciting and useful to society. I feel motivated to study hard and gain the right qualifications. In the future, I hope to work in a factory and help improve safety and development.

Al-Azhar Test

In the future, I hope to work as a successful engineer. This job is very important because engineers help build a better life for people. I want to design modern buildings and useful machines that make daily life easier. To achieve this dream, I must study hard, especially mathematics and science, and develop my problem-solving skills.

Test on Unit 9

The job I prefer is to be a teacher because teaching is a noble and important career. A teacher helps students gain knowledge and build their personalities. I enjoy explaining ideas and helping others understand difficult lessons. This job needs patience, kindness, and good communication skills. I believe I have these qualities, so teaching suits me well. Teachers also play a great role in developing society and guiding the new generation. In addition, teaching allows me to keep learning all the time. I want to be a successful teacher who inspires students to work hard and achieve their dreams.

Al Azhar

Test

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What job would the writer like to work as?
2. Why does the writer want to be a teacher?

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Mona : Do you go to school every day ?

Farida : ①

Mona : ② ?

Farida : I have five lessons every day.

Mona : When do you return home?

Farida : ③

Mona : Thank you.

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. A job that is makes you feel happy
 a. bored b. rewarding c. tired d. careless
2. You should choose your carefully to enjoy it.
 a. career b. failure c. stress d. problem
3. He didn't come he was ill.
 a. so b. since c. but d. although
4. He studied well he got high marks.
 a. so b. since c. but d. although

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. He got up late because he went to school late. (.....)
2. But he is ill, he comes daily on time. (.....)

3. He travelled to Italy so he got the visa. (.....)
4. He studied well so he failed. (.....)

D. Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Doctors are important because they look after people. Doctors are people who take care of others and help them get well when they are sick. Doctors help sick people get better by giving them medicine. They work in hospitals. They are helpful.

To be a doctor, you should work hard. You should like working with people and helping others. You should be kind. If you aren't kind, people won't love you.

A. Answer the following questions:

- What do you think of the doctor's job?
- Where do doctors work?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. If you aren't a kind doctor, people will..... you.
- a. love b. like c. dislike d. admire
4. The underlined word "They" refers to
- a. doctors b. patients c. nurses d. farmers

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

"Your future job"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Test on Unit 9

A. Listening

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Choosing your career is described as a/an decision.
a. easy b. unimportant c. important d. quick
- Reading job profiles helps students understand
a. salaries only b. responsibilities and qualifications
c. school subjects d. hobbies

B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. What should you think about first when choosing your career?

.....

4. Why is it important to know your strengths and skills?

.....

5. How can job profiles help you choose the right career?

.....

B. Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- As a team leader, he has many at work.
a. games b. responsibilities c. holidays d. rewards
- A/An is the work a person does through life.
a. interview b. career c. plot d. salary
- The word "ambitious" is similar in meaning to
a. boring b. dull c. determined d. tiring
- We add the suffix to the word "excite" to get an adjective.
a. -er b. -ive c. -ee d. -ing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ambitious - lazy - rewarding - responsible - creative

Choosing a career is a big step in life. If you are an ① person, you will work hard to reach your goals. You should not be lazy because success needs a lot of effort. Being ② helps you make the right decisions about your future. A ③ job, like art or design, allows you to express your ideas. In the end, finding a ④ career will make you feel happy and proud.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

A job profile gives a brief and clear explanation of what a person does at work, including their skills and duties. It works as a guide to help employers and employees understand what is required in a specific job. For example, a teacher's job profile includes helping students learn, preparing lessons, explaining ideas clearly, and supporting learners. In contrast, a mechanical engineer's profile focuses on solving technical problems, testing machines, and ensuring safety in factories. A nurse's role involves caring for patients, giving medicine correctly, and assisting doctors during treatment. Job profiles also list important skills like communication, teamwork, and problem-solving, as well as qualifications such as degrees or training. Understanding job profiles helps young people choose careers that match their interests and future goals.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
 - Different places of work
 - The importance of job profiles
 - How students choose subjects
 - Problems at work
- The underlined word "role" in the passage means
 - game
 - job
 - rule
 - place

B. Answer the following questions:

- What are two duties mentioned in a mechanical engineer's job profile?

- What does the underlined word "It" refer to ?

- Why is it important for young people to understand job profiles before choosing a career?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Shere Khan whispered lies to the wolves.	☐	☐
2. Mowgli took burning coal from the jungle.	☐	☐
3. Bagheera advised Mowgli to learn about fire.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli used fire to drive away the wolves.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Who hated Mowgli? Why?
6. Why do you think Mowgli felt sad after he won against Shere Khan?

C. Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. The traffic was heavy, so he arrived late. (because)

2. We stayed at home because the streets were crowded. (as a result)

3. She didn't feel well because she was tired. (so)

4. He trained hard; therefore, he improved his skills. (since)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Nada and Huda are talking about dream jobs.

Nada : Hi, Huda. What are you doing?

Huda : Hi, Nada. I'm reading about my **1** ----- job.

Nada : What is it?

Huda : I want to be a computer **2** -----

Nada : **3** ----- do you choose this job?

Huda : Because I like problem **4** ----- and working with technology.

Nada : I hope you get your dream job.

Huda : Thank you.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The job you prefer and why"

Review (3)

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

consoles (n)	أجهزة الألعاب	strategy games	الألعاب الاستراتيجية
certain (adj)	محدد/معين	quick decisions	قرارات سريعة
memory (n)	ذاكرة	in moderation	باعتدال
puzzle games	العاب الألغاز	wisely (adv)	بحكمة



Audio Script SB Page (55)

Many people enjoy playing games on their phones, computers, or consoles. But can games make you smarter? Some studies have shown that certain games can improve memory, problem-solving skills, and concentration. Puzzle games, strategy games, and brain-training apps help players think carefully and make quick decisions. However, it is important to play in moderation. Spending too much time on games can badly affect schoolwork, sleep, and health. When used wisely, games can be fun and also help your brain work better.

Lesson 1

1 Listen to the audio, then choose the correct answer.

- Some games can improve your _____ problem-solving skills, and concentration.
a. memory b. hunger c. speed d. energy
- Puzzle games and strategy games help players _____ carefully and make quick decisions.
a. sleep b. eat c. think d. run
- It is important to play games in _____.
a. a hurry b. moderation c. groups d. competition
- Playing too much games can badly affect schoolwork, sleep, and _____.
a. homework b. friends c. money d. health

2 Complete the following dialog:

Maha and her friend Nada are talking about school life.

Maha : I have so much homework and exams these days!

Nada : Me too! School is really busy.

Maha : ①

Nada : That's true! Do you make a plan for your tasks?

Maha : ②

I need to focus more.

Nada : Taking short breaks helps me finish my work.

Maha : ③

Nada : Yes! It 's easier to learn when classes are fun .

Maha : ④?

Nada : I do my homework first, then I read or draw. It helps me relax.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

uniform - wild - manage - combine - anxious

1. All students must wear a school every day.
2. We saw some animals during our trip to the jungle.
3. She felt before giving her first presentation.
4. It is hard to studying, sports, and hobbies at the same time.
5. You can art and science to create interesting projects.

4 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Healthy habits"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Every job needs different skills. Some jobs need practical skills, like building, cooking, or fixing things. Other jobs need thinking skills, like solving problems, planning, or designing. Communication and teamwork are important in almost every job. Technology skills are also becoming more important today because many jobs use computers and machines. Learning new skills can help you get better jobs and enjoy your work more. It is important to choose a job that matches your interests and abilities.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Some jobs need practical skills, like _____, cooking, or fixing things.
a. reading b. painting c. running d. building
- Communication and _____ are important in almost every job.
a. reading b. painting c. teamwork d. travelling
- Learning new skills can help you get better jobs and _____ your work more.
a. eat b. enjoy c. buy d. watch

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why are technology skills important in many jobs today?

- How can learning new skills help you in your future career?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The students did a/an _____ in the science lab to test their ideas.
a. experience b. experiment c. response d. homework
- Playing chess can improve your _____ skills and help you think clearly.
a. musical b. cooking c. physical d. mental
- She wants to have a _____ conversation, not just small talk.
a. quick b. boring c. meaningful d. meaningless
- I need to _____ all the new vocabulary words before the test.
a. forget b. memorize c. ignore d. write
- To apply for this job, you need the right skills and _____.
a. qualifications b. hobbies c. friends d. clothes

6. I like coffee, ----- my sister prefers tea.

- a. so b. but c. because d. and

7. He studied hard, ----- he didn't pass the exam.

- a. although b. and c. because d. so

8. You ----- eat too much fast food; it is unhealthy.

- a. should b. shouldn't c. could d. must

9. ----- your hands before eating to stay healthy.

- a. Washing b. Washed c. Washes d. Wash

10. I forgot my umbrella, ----- I got wet in the rain.

- a. and b. so c. but d. although

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. I like pizza, but I don't like pasta.

(although)

2. I advice you to study for the exam.

(should)

3. I missed the bus, so I was late for school.

(because)

The Story

4 A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Mother Wolf insist that Mowgli should stay with the wolf pack?

2. How did Bagheera and Baloo help Mowgli when he was kidnapped by the Bandar-log?

3. What lesson did Mowgli learn about friendship and loyalty in the jungle?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Mowgli was discovered by Father Wolf and Mother Wolf because he had ----- from his village.

- a. run away b. slept c. played d. walked

Review 3

5. Baloo promised to _____ Mowgli and teach him the Law of the Jungle.

- a. ignore b. train c. hide d. chase

6. Mowgli learned the secret of fire from watching humans so he could _____.

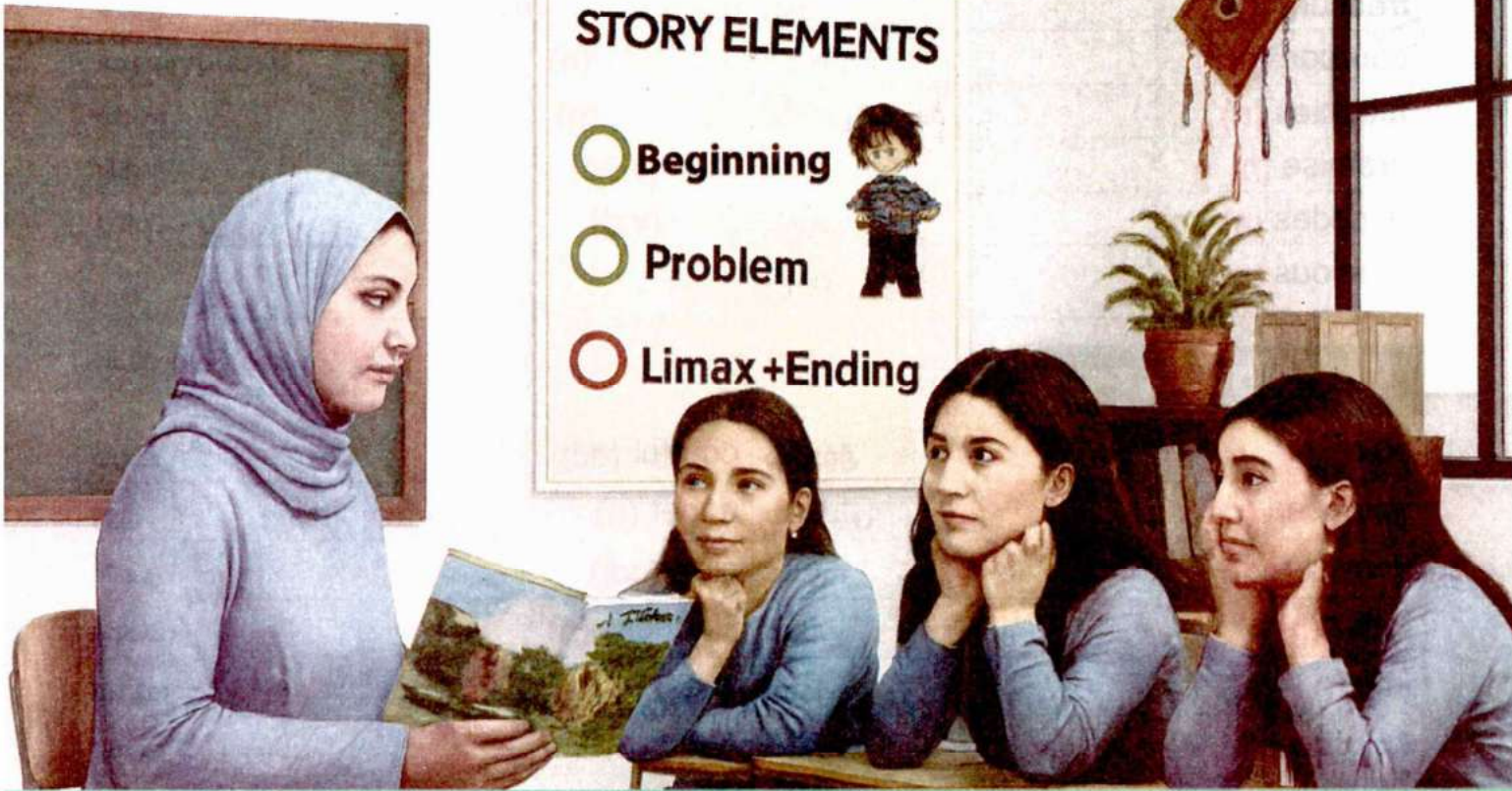
Shere Khan.

- a. help b. follow c. feed d. drive back

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

“Study Tips”

[illegible]



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify plot points and characters in a familiar story (Cinderella).
- Infer lessons or morals from stories (e.g., trust, greed)

Listening:

- Recognize words related to relationships (gratitude, promise, trust, secret).
- Identify key events and the moral lesson in a folktale

Language:

- The past perfect tense

Writing:

Write a story ending that includes feelings, unexpected events, and a final reflection

Speaking:

- Express opinions on what makes a good story and favorite characters
- Retell a story in a short sequence, using time connectors (first, then, after that, finally).



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

treasure (n)	كنز	generations (n)	اجيال
courage (n)	الشجاعة	gratitude (n)	العرفان بالجميل
folktales (n)	قصص شعبية	curiosity (n)	فضول
promise (n)	وعد	trust (v.ed)	يثق
decades (n)	عقود	fade (v.d)	يبهت - يزبل
precious (adj)	ثمين		

Vocabulary



المفردات الاضافية

box (n)	صندوق	careful (adj)	حريص
surprised (adj)	مندهش	paper (n)	ورق
normal (adj)	عادي	clear(adj)	واضح
letter (n)	خطاب	kindness (n)	العطف
ink (n)	الحبر	lines (n)	سطور
words (n)	الكلمات	heart (n)	القلب
message (n)	رسالة - يختبر	shape (v.d)	يشكل
eyes (n)	عيون	forward (adv)	للامام
memory (n)	ذاكرة	desire (n)	رغبة
patience (n)	الصبر	trapped (adj)	محبوس
light (adj)/ (n)	خفيف/ ضوء	strength (n)	قوة
discovery (n)	اكتشاف	crops (n)	محاصيل
forest ((n)	غابة	mechanic (n)	ميكانيكي
net (n)	شبكة	respect (v.ed)	يحترم
request (n)	طلب	forever (adv)	للابد
sadly (n)	بحزن	lift (v.ed)	يرفع
wooden (adj)	خشبي	picture (v.d)	يتصور
plain (adj)	عادي - سهل	free (v.d)	يطلق سراح
strange (adj)	غريب	wish (v.ed)	يتمني
slow (adj)	بطيء	realize (v.d)	يدرك

Definitions

faded (v)	بهت	to lose color and brightness
courage (n)	الشجاعة	strong quality that helps you face danger or fear
decade (n)	عقد	a period of ten years
precious (adj)	ثمين	something valuable or expensive
generation (n)	جيل	people born and living at the same time
gratitude (n)	العرفان بالجميل	being thankful for someone's help or kindness
promise (n)	وعد	a strong agreement to do or not to do something
curiosity (n)	فضول	a strong desire to know or learn something
trust (v)	يثق	to believe in someone and feel safe with them
folktale (n)	قصة شعبية	is a traditional story passed from one generation to another. It usually teaches a moral or lesson through simple characters like farmers, ... animals, or children.

Expressions & Prepositions

lift out	ينتزع من	clear enough to read	واضح لدرجة ان تقرأه
filled with	مليئة بـ	full of	مليء بـ
living memory	ذكريات الحياة	a piece of its heart	جزء من قلبه
part of its story,	جزء من قصته	belong to	ينتمي الي
believe in	يؤمن بـ	thankful for	شاكر لـ
break his promise	يخلف وعده	keep his promise	يحافظ علي وعده
made a promise	اعطي وعد	on the farm	في المزرعة



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
precious (adj)	ثمين	valuable - priceless		worthless - valueless	بلا قيمة
courage (n)	شجاعة	bravery - fearlessness		fear	خوف
normal	عادي	typical - usual		abnormal - unusual	غير عادي
plain (adj)	عادي - سهل	simple - ordinary		difficult - wonderful	صعب - رائع
strange (adj)	غريب	odd		normal - familiar	معتاد
slow (adj)	بطيء	gradual		fast - quick	سريع
careful (adj)	حريص	cautious - attentive		careless	مهمل

Unit 10 Storytelling

old (adj)	قديم	aged - ancient	new	جديد
kindness (n)	العطف	generosity	cruelty	القسوة
quietly (adj)	بهدوء	softly - peacefully	loudly - noisily	بصخب/بضوضاء
sadly (adv)	بحزن	sorrowfully	happily	بسعادة

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	quietly - warmly - happily - sadly
-ful	تحول الفعل الى صفة	careful - thankful
-ness	تحول الصفة الى اسم	kindness
-ity	تحول الصفة الى اسم	curiosity
-ion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	generation
-en	تحول الاسم الى صفة	wooden

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
read	يقرأ	read	read
write	يكتب	wrote	written
hold	يمسك	held	held
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
break	يكسر	broke	broken

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 lose / miss

• lose

- يفقد شيئاً ولا يجده

Ex. I **lost** my bag. I can't find it.

• miss

• يفوت شيئاً (حافلة - درس - فرصة)

Ex. I **missed** the bus.

2 experience

• experience

(Countable معدودة)

- تجربة أو موقف مرّ به الشخص

Used with (a / an.)

Ex. Visiting Luxor was an amazing **experience**.

• experience

(Uncountable غير معدودة)

- خبرة أو مهارة يكتسبها الشخص مع الوقت

Used without (a / an.)

Ex. She has a lot of **experience** in teaching.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This job needs in clothes design.
a. expert b. experience c. an experienced d. experiment
2. He his phone. He couldn't find it.
a. missed b. lost c. stole d. sent
3. That was bad experience for me.
a. an b. a c. the d. no article



Reading



SB Page (57)



SB Page (57)

استمع إلى النصوص



When Salma opened the old **wooden**⁽¹⁾ box, she was **surprised**⁽²⁾. The box itself looked **plain**⁽³⁾ and normal from the outside, yet in her hands, it already felt **strange**⁽⁴⁾ and normal **precious**⁽⁵⁾. With slow, careful **fingers**⁽⁶⁾, she lifted out a **folded**⁽⁷⁾, yellowed letter. The paper was old, and though the ink had **faded**⁽⁸⁾ with time, the words were still **clear**⁽⁹⁾ enough to read.



١. خشبي
٢. مندهش
٣. عادي
٤. غريب
٥. ثمين
٦. اصابع
٧. ملفوف
٨. بهت
٩. واضح
١٠. عقود
١١. شجاعة
١٢. عطف
١٣. ذكري
١٤. القلب
١٥. يصور
١٦. الصبر
١٧. كنز
١٨. اجيال

Decades⁽¹⁰⁾ earlier, her grandfather had written this message to her mother, wishing her a life filled with **courage**⁽¹¹⁾, **kindness**⁽¹²⁾, and strong hope. As Salma's eyes moved across the lines, she felt that she was holding far more than paper-she was holding her family's living **memory**⁽¹³⁾, a piece of its **heart**⁽¹⁴⁾. She **pictured**⁽¹⁵⁾ her grandfather, quietly sitting at a desk, shaping each word with **patience**⁽¹⁶⁾ and love quietly. Smiling warmly, Salma realized this **treasure**⁽¹⁷⁾ had been kept for **generations**⁽¹⁸⁾, and now she, too, was part of its story, ready to carry its light forward.



Audio Script

SB Page (59)

Many years ago, a **kind**⁽¹⁾, poor farmer was walking through the **forest**⁽²⁾ when he found a small bird **trapped**⁽³⁾ in a net.

By the time he reached it, the bird had already lost most of its **strength**⁽⁴⁾. The farmer **gently**⁽⁵⁾ **freed**⁽⁶⁾ the bird, and after he had helped it, the bird suddenly changed into a young man. He thanked the farmer with deep **gratitude**⁽⁷⁾ because the farmer had saved his life.

The young man made a **promise**⁽⁸⁾ to stay with the farmer and work on the farm. They planted **crops**⁽⁹⁾ and shared meals happily. However, the young man had

one **request**⁽¹⁰⁾: the farmer must not ask about his past. The farmer **respected**⁽¹¹⁾ this request before he broke it.

But one day, **curiosity**⁽¹²⁾ won. After the farmer had asked about the young man's past, the young man sadly left forever, teaching the farmer how important it is to **keep your promise**⁽¹³⁾.

١. عطوف
٢. الغابة
٣. محبوس
٤. قوة
٥. برقة
٦. يحرر
٧. العرفات بالجميل
٨. يعطي وعد
٩. محاصيل
١٠. طلب
١١. احترم
١٢. فضول
١٣. يحافظ علي
- وعدة

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. _____ is a strong quality that helps you face danger or fear.
a. Violence b. Courage c. Coward d. Curiosity
2. A _____ is a period of ten years.
a. century b. age c. decade d. days
3. Something that is very valuable or expensive is described as _____.
a. precious b. faded c. curious d. cheap
4. _____ means being thankful for someone's help or kindness.
a. Courage b. Gratitude c. Promise d. Generation
5. _____ is a strong agreement to do or not to do something.
a. Disagreement b. Curiosity c. Promise d. Theft

6. A _____ is a traditional story passed from one generation to another and usually teaches a lesson.

- a. decade b. generation c. folktale d. gratitude

Synonyms and antonyms

7. The statue was covered with precious jewels. The synonym of "precious" is _____.

- a. worthless b. ordinary c. valuable d. strange

8. She has a lot of courage . "Courage" can be replaced by _____.

- a. bravery b. fear c. kindness d. calmness

9. The synonym of "plain" is _____.

- a. difficult b. wonderful c. simple d. strange

10. The antonym of "strange" is _____.

- a. odd b. unusual c. plain d. familiar

11. The synonym of "careful" is _____.

- a. cautious b. reckless c. careless d. slow

12. The antonym of "quietly" is _____.

- a. peacefully b. softly c. sadly d. loudly

Prefixes and Suffixes

13. To form the adverb of the word quiet, we add the suffix _____.

- a. -ness b. -ful c. -ly d. -ion

14. We add the suffix _____ to the adjective kind to form a noun.

- a. -ity b. -ness c. -en d. -ly

15. To form a noun from the adjective curious, we add the suffix _____.

- a. -ful b. -ness c. -ity d. -ion

16. We can form a noun from the verb generate by adding the suffix _____.

- a. -ly b. -en c. -ful d. -ion

17. We add the suffix _____ to the noun wood to form an adjective.

- a. -ness b. -ful c. -ly d. -en

Guess the meaning & collocations

18. The old chest was full of discovered on the island.
a. courage b. treasures c. kindness d. memory
19. Gold is a / an metal that people value highly.
a. wooden b. brave c. precious d. ordinary
20. It takes great to tell the truth in difficult situations.
a. gratitude b. courage c. memory d. treasure
21. Stories are passed down from parents to children through many
a. kindness b. memories c. generations d. treasures
22. We should show to those who help us in hard times.
a. courage b. gratitude c. memory d. treasure
23. The table is made of material, not plastic or metal.
a. precious b. wooden c. brave d. kind
24. Her small act of made everyone feel happy.
a. kindness b. mess c. generation d. memory
25. Childhood stay in our minds for a long time.
a. gratitude b. treasures c. memories d. kindness

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**treasure - courage - memories - generations - gratitude**

The old village was famous for its folktales passed down through many ①
These stories were a real ② for the children. Over the decades, some traditions
had faded, but people still showed ③ for their ancestors and had the ④
to protect their precious culture.



Language

قواعد لغوية

The Past Perfect Tense

زمن الماضي التام

Form التكوين

had + past participle (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

Ex. had finished

- had gone

- had eaten .

Usage الاستخدام

• للتعبير عن: حدث وقع قبل حدث آخر في الماضي .
يعني عندنا حدثان في الماضي

Past Perfect → - الحدث الأول (الأقدم)

Past Simple → - الحدث الثاني (الأحدث)

Ex. She **had finished** her homework **before** her friend arrived.

Common Connectors with Past Perfect

• أدوات الربط الشائعة مع الماضي التام

1 before (الماضي التام) ، (الماضي البسيط)

يُستخدم لبيان أن حدثًا وقع قبل حدث آخر.

Ex. He **had cleaned** his room **before** he **did** his homework.

كان قد نظف غرفته قبل أن يؤدي واجبه.

2 After (الماضي البسيط) ، (الماضي التام)

نضع الماضي التام مع الحدث الذي وقع أولاً.

Ex. **After** he **had left**, it **started** to rain.

بعد أن كان قد غادر، بدأت تمطر.

3 because (الآن)

يُستخدم الماضي التام لشرح سبب شيء في الماضي.

(الماضي التام) because (الماضي البسيط)

Ex. He **was** tired **because** he **had worked** all day.

كان متعباً لأنه كان قد عمل طوال اليوم.

4 By the time (بحلول الوقت الذي)

يُستخدم الماضي التام لشرح سبب شيء في الماضي.

(الماضي التام) ، (الماضي البسيط) By the time

تدل على أن شيئاً كان قد انتهى قبل وقت معين في الماضي.

Ex. **By the time** we **got** there, the film **had started**.

بحلول الوقت الذي وصلنا فيه إلى هناك، كان الفيلم قد بدأ.

5 As soon as بمجرد ان

As soon as (ماضي تام) , (ماضي بسيط)

Ex. As soon as he had met Ali, He gave him the book. بمجرد ان قابل علي اعطاة الكتاب.

6 (ماضي بسيط) so (ماضي تام)

Ex. He had played well so he won the game. لقد لعب جيدا لذلك فاز بالمباراة.

7 ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط When +

Ex. When Dad arrived, we had finished our lunch. عندما وصل الوالد كنا قد انهينا الغداء.

8 ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام When +

Ex. When he had finished his studies, he travelled abroad. عندما أنهى دراسته , سافر للخارج.

Exercises on Language

Rewrite the sentences correctly using the words between brackets.

Set Book Exercises

1. He went to bed. He had finished his work. (after)
2. She had studied hard. She passed the test. (because)
3. I reached the cinema. The movie had started. (by the time)
4. First he arrived home, then he had a shower. (before)

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. She left the house. She had locked the door. (after)
6. He was tired. He had worked all day. (because)
7. We arrived at the station. The train had left. (by the time)
8. First they finished the exam, then they left the room. (before)

9. After I had eaten lunch, I slept. (before)
10. Because she had studied hard, she passed the exam. (after)
11. By the time we arrived at school, the lesson had started. (before)
12. After he had finished his homework, he went out. (because)
13. Because they had missed the bus, they were late. (by the time)
14. Before she went to bed, she had brushed her teeth. (after)
15. By the time I got to the cinema, the film had begun. (because)
16. After he had saved the file, he turned off the computer. (before)



Speaking

Imagine you found an letter or object from your family:

Student A

1. What did you find?

ماذا وجدت؟

2. Where did you find it?

أين وجدتتها؟

3. What does it look like?

كيف تبدو؟

4. Whom does it belong to?

لمن تعود؟

5. How do you feel about it?

ما هو شعورك تجاهها؟

Student B

I found an old letter.

وجدت رسالة قديمة.

I found it in the attic.

وجدتها في العلية.

It is yellowed and torn, with a faint smell of old paper.

إنها مصفرة وممزقة، وتفوح منها رائحة خفيفة للورق القديم.

It belongs to my grandmother.

إنها تعود لجديتي.

I feel curious and emotional because it tells stories about her life when she was young.

أشعر بالفضول والتأثر لأنها تحكي قصصاً عن حياتها في صغرها.

Think-Pair-Share :

Retelling a story

Read a story and plan to retell it in 5 sentences using time connectors: first, then, after that, finally

Plan

1. First, Cinderella lived with her cruel stepmother and stepsisters.

عاشت سندريلا مع زوجة أبيها القاسية وأخواتها غير الشقيقات.

2. Then, she received help from her fairy godmother to go to the ball.

ثم تلقت مساعدة من الام الروحية الجنية لتذهب إلى الحفل.

3. After that, she danced with the prince but had to leave at midnight.

بعد ذلك، رقصت مع الأمير لكنها اضطرت إلى المغادرة عند منتصف الليل.

4. The prince searched for her with the glass slipper.

بحث الأمير عنها باستخدام الحذاء الزجاجي.

5. Finally, Cinderella tried on the slipper and married the prince.

أخيرًا، جرّبت سندريلا الحذاء وتزوجت الأمير.

Retelling

Student B:

First, Cinderella lived with her cruel stepmother and stepsisters.

أولًا، عاشت سندريلا مع زوجة أبيها القاسية وأخواتها غير الشقيقات.

Then, she received help from her fairy godmother to go to the ball.

ثم تلقت مساعدة من امها الروحية الجنية لتذهب إلى الحفل.

After that, she danced with the prince but had to leave at midnight.

بعد ذلك، رقصت مع الأمير لكنها اضطرت إلى المغادرة عند منتصف الليل.

Finally, the prince found her with the glass slipper and married her.

أخيرًا، وجدها الأمير باستخدام الحذاء الزجاجي وتزوجها.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Childhood stay in our minds for many years

- a. kindness b. gratitude c. memories d. courage

2. The antonym of courage is

- a. bravery b. kindness c. fear d. gratitude

3. A period of ten years is called a

- a. generation b. decade c. memory d. folktale

4. Something that loses color and brightness is said to

- a. shine b. fade c. glow d. grow

5. Stories passed from one generation to another are called

- a. memories b. treasures c. folktales d. decades

6. Being thankful for someone's help is called
 a. courage b. gratitude c. curiosity d. kindness
7. The synonym of plain is
 a. difficult b. strange c. simple d. wonderful
8. The antonym of quietly is
 a. softly b. peacefully c. sadly d. loudly
9. We add the suffix to form an adverb from the word "sad"
 a. -ness b. -ful c. -ly d. -ion
10. We can form a noun from the adjective "kind" by adding the suffix
 a. -ity b. -en c. -ness d. -ly
11. To form a noun from the verb "generate", we add the suffix
 a. -ful b. -ion c. -ly d. -en
12. The table is made of material
 a. precious b. wooden c. brave d. careful
13. People born and living at the same time are called a
 a. decade b. memory c. generation d. courage
14. The synonym of careful is
 a. careless b. reckless c. cautious d. strange
15. The synonym of precious is
 a. worthless b. valuable c. plain d. strange

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

treasure - faded - courage - generations - folktales

Grandparents often share their memories with children through interesting ❶
 These stories connect different ❷ and keep history alive. Although some traditions
 have ❸ with time, they remain a cultural ❹ People feel deep gratitude
 for their elders and love them.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. He studied well. Then he did the homework (After)

2. He sent the letter after he had written it. (before)

3. Before he met Ali , he had finished his work.

(by the time)

4. She had studied hard and she passed the exam.

(because)

4 Complete the following dialog:

Yumna and Nada are speaking about reading folktales.

Yumna : Hi, Nada. I'm reading some folktales for our project.

Nada : That sounds fun. What ① do you enjoy?

Yumna : I enjoy stories that teach courage and kindness.

Nada : Yes, those lessons are very ②
because they help us in life.

Yumna : Exactly. Many stories also show the ③
of different generations.

Nada : True. If we read stories carefully, we can learn important values.

Yumna : That's ④ It will help us understand people
and history better.

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A story you read and loved it"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



استمع إلى المفردات
المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

stepsisters (n)	أخوات غير شقيقات	cruel (n)	قاسي
servant (n)	خادم	kind fairy (n)	جنية لطيفة
party (n)	حفلة	slippers (n)	حذاء منزلي
midnight (n)	منتصف الليل	fairy tale (n)	حكاية خيالية

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

beloved (adj)	محبوب	gentle (adj)	رقيق
kind-hearted (adj)	طيب القلب	stepmother (n)	زوجة الاب
death (n)	الموت	task (n)	مهمة
nature (n)	الطبيعة	patience (n)	الصبر
king (n)	ملك	royal (adj)	ملكي
prince (n)	الامير	bride (n)	عروسة
dress (n)	فستان	dazzling (adj)	مبهر
golden (adj)	ذهبي	pumpkin (n)	قرع العسل
horse (n)	حصان	carriage (n)	عربة
beauty (n)	الجمال	kindness (n)	عطف
magic (n)	سحر	admire (v.d)	يعجب بـ
fit (v.fit)	يناسب	fade (v.d)	يذبل - يبهت - يتلاشي
mice (n)	فئران	reward (v.ed)	يكافئ
moral (n)	درس اخلاقي	replace (v.d)	يستبدل



Definitions

a fairy tale (n.)

حكاية خيالية

is a short story that includes magic, fantasy, and imaginary characters such as fairies, giants, or talking animals.

Expressions & Prepositions

do task	يؤدي مهمة	dream of	يحلم بـ
let her go	سمح لها ان تذهب	turn into	يتحول الي
at midnight	في منتصف الليل	run away	يهرب
search for	يبحث عن	made her do	جعلها تفعل



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
kind (adj)	عطوف - نوع	friendly / caring / helpful		cruel / unkind / mean	قاسي
excited (adj)	منفعل	happy / thrilled		bored / calm / uninterested	مائل / ضجر
beautiful (adj)	جميل	pretty / lovely / attractive		ugly / unattractive / plain	قبيح
magical (adj)	سحري	wonderful / amazing		ordinary / normal / boring	عادي
cruel (adj)	قاسي	harsh / mean / heartless		kind / gentle / merciful	عطوف
happiness (n)	السعادة	joy / pleasure / delight		sadness / unhappiness / misery	البؤس

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
un-	تحول المعني الي العكس	unhappily - unkind
-ly	تحول الصفة الي الحال	unhappily - comfortably - greatly
-ce	تحول الصفة الي اسم	patience
-ive	تحول الفعل الي صفة	creative

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
tell	told	told
choose	chose	chosen
give	gave	given
become	became	become
wear	wore	worn



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 reward / award

• reward

- مكافأة غالباً مادية على مجهود أو سلوك جيد
(غير رسمي)

Ex. She got a **reward** for helping others.

• award

- جائزة في مسابقة أو حدث رسمي

Ex. He won an **award** for the best story.

2 magical / magic

• magical (adj) سحري / خيالي

Ex. It was a **magical** night.

• magic (n) سحر

Ex. The magician used **magic**.

3 gold / golden

• gold (n.) ذهب

Ex. The ring is made of **gold**.

• golden (adj) ذهبي / ثمين

Ex. She has **golden** hair.

4 tell / say

• tell + person

- يخبر / يقول لشخص (مفعول)

Ex. She **told me** the truth.

• say (+ words) يقول

Ex. He **said that** he met Ali.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The teacher gave the student a for helping others.
a. courage b. reward c. prize d. punishment
- Can you me what happened in the story?
a. tell b. say c. speak d. understand
- The movie was full of creatures and wonderful adventures.
a. magician b. golden c. magical d. metal
- Harry Potter is famous for using to defeat his enemies.
a. magic b. magical c. reward d. memory

Reading

SB Page (61)

SB Page (61)

استمع إلى النص



Cinderella is one of the most beloved **fairy tales**⁽¹⁾ in the world. It tells the story of a gentle, **kind-hearted**⁽²⁾ girl who lives unhappily with her cruel **stepmother**⁽³⁾ and two unkind stepsisters. After the **death**⁽⁴⁾ of her father, Cinderella works as a **servant**⁽⁵⁾ in her own house, cleaning, cooking, and doing every task while her stepsisters live comfortably. Although she suffers greatly, she never loses her good nature, **patience**⁽⁶⁾, or hope.



One day, the king has a big **royal**⁽⁷⁾ party so that the prince may choose his future **bride**⁽⁸⁾. Cinderella dreams of going, but her stepmother doesn't let her go. Just when all hope seems lost, her kind fairy appears. She replaced Cinderella's old clothes with a **dazzling**⁽⁹⁾ dress, and she is given beautiful glass **slippers**⁽¹⁰⁾. A pumpkin becomes a golden **carriage**⁽¹¹⁾, and mice turn into horses.

At the party, the prince admires Cinderella's **beauty**⁽¹²⁾ and **kindness**⁽¹³⁾. But at midnight, the magic fades, and she runs away, leaving behind one slipper. The prince searches for her until he finds her, the only one whose foot fits the shoe. They marry, and Cinderella's kindness is finally **rewarded**⁽¹⁴⁾ with love and happiness.

١. حكايات خيالية
٢. عطوف
٣. زوجة الاب
٤. الموت
٥. خادم
٦. الصبر
٧. ملكي
٨. عروسة
٩. مبهر
١٠. حذاء منزلي
١١. عربة
١٢. جمال
١٣. عطف
١٤. كافأ

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms & Antonyms

1. The antonym of 'kind' is
 - a. friendly
 - b. cruel
 - c. caring
 - d. helpful
2. The synonym of 'excited' is
 - a. happy
 - b. bored
 - c. calm
 - d. uninterested
3. The antonym of 'beautiful' is
 - a. lovely
 - b. pretty
 - c. ugly
 - d. attractive
4. The synonym of 'magical' is
 - a. ordinary
 - b. wonderful
 - c. boring
 - d. normal

5. The antonym of 'cruel' is
 a. kind b. harsh c. mean d. heartless
6. The synonym of 'happiness' is
 a. misery b. delight c. sadness d. unhappiness

Prefixes and Suffixes

7. To form the adverb of the word 'comfortable' we add the suffix
 a. -ce b. -ly c. -ive d. -un
8. We add the suffix to the word 'patient' to form a noun
 a. -ce b. -ly c. -ive d. -un
9. We can form the adjective from 'create' by adding the suffix
 a. -ive b. -ce c. -ed d. a&b
10. We add the prefix to form the opposite of 'kind'
 a. un b. im c. des d. dis

Guess the meaning & collocations

11. Can you your homework before dinner?
 a. do b. dream c. turn d. search
12. She always about of becoming a doctor when she grows up.
 a. run b. go c. dream d. made
13. The teacher asked her to her tasks carefully.
 a. do b. go c. turn d. search
14. The thief tried to run from the police last night.
 a. away b. out c. into d. of
15. She asked him to for the lost book in the library.
 a. search b. dream c. run d. turn
16. Some people are very and treat others badly.
 a. cruel b. kind c. servant d. party
17. The worked hard to complete all the tasks on time.
 a. slippers b. cruel c. servant d. stepsisters
18. A kind can help people in unexpected and kind ways.
 a. slippers b. thief c. cruel d. fairy
19. We all enjoyed the held at the community center last weekend.
 a. party b. slippers c. midnight d. fairy tale
20. The clock struck and everyone knew it was time to leave.
 a. midnight b. slippers c. stepsisters d. party

Unit 10 Storytelling

21. Some people are very and treat others badly.
a. cruel b. kind c. servant d. party
22. The worked hard to complete all the tasks on time.
a. slippers b. cruel c. servant d. stepsisters
23. A kind can help people in unexpected and kind ways.
a. slippers b. thief c. cruel d. fairy
24. We all enjoyed the held at the community center last weekend.
a. party b. slippers c. midnight d. fairy tale
25. The clock struck and everyone knew it was time to leave.
a. midnight b. slippers c. stepsisters d. party

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cruel - beloved - stepmother - death - task

Sami loved his grandmother, who was very gentle and always helped everyone in the village. After her ①, he felt very sad. His ② treated him kindly and helped him complete every ③ at home. Spending time outdoors helped him appreciate nature and feel peaceful. Everyone remembered her as a ④ person.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed and Ali are at the library.

Ahmad : I want to improve my vocabulary, but I don't know where to start.

Ali : Don't ① ; reading books can really help.

Ahmad : Really? How can I ② the most from reading?

Ali : Try to read every day and take notes of new words.

Ahmad : I hope my reading habits will be ③ and useful for school.

Ali : Yes, reading regularly helps us ④ our knowledge and skills.

4 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

"A story of a poor girl"

.....

.....

.....



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

lion (n)	اسد	dangers (n)	اخطار
choice (n)	اختيار	success (n)	النجاح
sailor (n)	بحار	expression (n)	تعبير
courage (n)	شجاعة	sadness (n)	حزن
details (n)	تفاصيل	show (n)	عرض
shock (n)	صدمة	partner (n)	شريك
talent (n)	موهبة	manage (v.d)	يتحكم
encouragement (n)	تشجيع	face (v.d.)	لغة معني
mouse (n)	فأر	clap (v.ped)	يصفق
voyage (n)	رحلة	summarize (v.d)	يلخص
action (n))	فعل - حركة	express (v.ed)	يعبر عن

Expressions & Prepositions

think about	يفكر في	plan to tell	يخطط ان يخبر
tell the story	يحكي قصة	full of	مليء بـ
lead to	يؤدي الي	manage the time	يتحكم في الوقت
make sense	له معني	practice telling our stories	يمارس حكاية القصص
keep going	يستمر في الذهاب	believe in	يؤمن بـ



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
surprising (adj)	مدهش	amazing - shocking	مدهش - صادم	expected - normal	متوقع
sadness (n)	الحزن	unhappiness - sorrow	سوء الحظ - حزن	happiness - joy	السعادة
hopeful (adj)	متفائل	optimistic - confident	متفائل - واثق	hopeless	بلا امل
calm (adj)	مستو	peaceful - quiet	سلمي - هادئ	nervous - excited	متوتر
nervous (adj)	هاديء عصبي	anxious - worried	قلق - قلق	calm - relaxed	هادئ

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
dis-	تعطي عكس المعني	disagree
-ly	تحول الصفة الي ظرف	politely- suddenly
-ous	تحول الاسم الي صفة	nervous
-ful	تحول الاسم الي صفة	hopeful
-ing	تحول الاسم الي صفة	surprising

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
say	يقول	said	said
forget	نسي	forgot	forgotten

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 quite / quiet / quit

• quite

- جدًا/ إلى حدٍّ ما (حال)

Ex. The exam was quite easy.

• quit

- يترك/ يستقيل/ يتوقف عن (فعل)

Ex. He decided to quit his job.

• quiet

- هادئ/ صامت (صفة)

Ex. The library is very quiet.

2 row / queue

• row

- (صف) أشخاص أو أشياء عرضي

Ex. The students sat in a row.

• queue

- طابور طولي

Ex. People are waiting in a queue.

Reading

SB Page (65)



SB Page (65)

استمع إلى النصوص



Salma : Yomna, our teacher asked us to bring a story to class tomorrow. Have you thought about which one you'll tell?

Yomna : Yes, I'm thinking about telling the story of "The Lion and the Mouse." It's short but has a strong lesson.

Salma : That's a good **choice**⁽¹⁾! I believe stories should always have a **moral**⁽²⁾.

Yomna : True. Which story are you planning to tell?

Salma : I want to tell the story of "The Seven **Voyages**⁽³⁾ of Sinbad the Sailor." It's exciting and full of **action**⁽⁴⁾.

Yomna : Nice! But it's also quite long. How will you **manage**⁽⁵⁾ the time?

Salma : I'll just **summarize**⁽⁶⁾ the important parts. The main idea is that **courage**⁽⁷⁾ helps us face dangers and lead to **success**⁽⁸⁾.

Yomna : **Makes sense**⁽⁹⁾. Maybe we should practice telling our stories to each other first.

Salma : Great idea! That way, we won't forget important details in class.

١. اختيار
٢. درس اخلاقي
٣. رحلات
٤. فعل
٥. يتحكم
٦. يلخص
٧. شجاعة
٨. يؤدي للنجاح
٩. له معنى



Writing Skills

Useful Language

• Describing feelings: وصف المشاعر

يمكن ان نستخدم صفات مثل:

happy سعيد, disappointed خائب الأمل, overjoyed في غاية السعادة, shocked! مصدوم

• Showing cause & effect: إظهار السبب والنتيجة

يمكن ان نستخدم كلمات مثل:

because of this بسبب هذا, therefore لذلك, as a result نتيجة لذلك, that's why لهذا السبب

• Adding twists: إضافة مفاجآت/تحويلات

يمكن ان نستخدم كلمات مثل:

unexpectedly بشكل غير متوقع, to their surprise لدهشتهم, out of nowhere فجأة / من العدم

• Wrapping up: الخاتمة/الإنهاء

يمكن ان نستخدم كلمات مثل:

in conclusion في الختام, in the end في النهاية, finally أخيرًا, at last في نهاية المطاف

• **Giving examples:** For example

• **Read this model paragraph and identify the different examples of useful language phrases.**

Yesterday was the school **talent**⁽¹⁾ **show**⁽²⁾, and I was more **nervous**⁽³⁾ than ever. When it was finally my turn, I almost forgot my lines, but then I saw my best friend smiling at me in the front row. That gave me the **courage**⁽⁴⁾ to keep going. The music started, and I sang as loudly as I could. To my surprise, the whole hall clapped along with me. Suddenly, all my fear **disappeared**.⁽⁵⁾

In the end, I didn't win the first place, but I felt like a real winner. I had faced my fear and discovered that courage grows when people believe in you. It was a moment I will never forget.

١. موهبة
٢. عرض
٣. عصبي
٤. شجاعة
٥. اختفى

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms and antonyms

- It is not surprising that they lost. The synonym of "surprising" is
a. expected b. amazing c. normal d. ordinary
- He saw the sadness on her face. The antonym of "sadness" is
a. sorrow b. grief c. happiness d. unhappiness
- I feel hopeful that we'll win. "Hopeful" can be replaced by
a. optimistic b. hopeless c. pessimistic d. doubtful
- The antonym of "calm" is
a. relaxed b. peaceful c. nervous d. quiet
- The synonym of "nervous" is
a. anxious b. calm c. relaxed d. confident
- The antonym of "hopeful" is
a. optimistic b. confident c. hopeless d. positive

Prefixes and Suffixes

- To form the opposite of the word agree, we add the prefix
a. re- b. un- c. dis- d. in-
- To form an adjective from the noun nerve, we add the suffix
a. -ful b. -ing c. -ly d. -ous

9. To form the adverb of the word polite, we add the suffix -----
 a. -ly b. -ful c. -ous d. -ing
10. To form an adjective from the noun hope, we add the suffix -----
 a. -ful b. -ness c. -ly d. -ous
11. To form an adjective from the noun surprise, we add the suffix -----
 a. -ly b. -ing c. -ful d. -ous

Guess the meaning & collocations

12. He worked hard to achieve ----- in his career.
 a. success b. voyage c. choice d. dangers
13. She has a natural ----- for playing the piano beautifully.
 a. talent b. show c. encouragement d. partner
14. The performers gave a fantastic ----- at the festival.
 a. show b. talent c. sailor d. express
15. The audience stood up to ----- loudly after the performance.
 a. clap b. manage c. sail d. dangers
16. His best friend is also his ----- in the dance competition.
 a. partner b. encouragement c. talent d. choice
17. The ----- roared loudly in the forest.
 a. lion b. mouse c. sailor d. partner
18. A small ----- ran across the kitchen floor.
 a. action b. mouse c. talent d. clap
19. Making the right ----- can affect your future.
 a. voyage b. success c. choice d. dangers
20. The ----- prepared the ship for a long journey.
 a. sailor b. lion c. partner d. mouse
21. The captain warned about the ----- at sea.
 a. dangers b. show c. talent d. clap
22. She can ----- her ideas clearly in front of the class.
 a. express b. manage c. summarize d. sail
23. The teacher asked the student to ----- the story in a few sentences.
 a. summarize b. action c. clap d. encouragement

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dangers - expression - success- face - details

Climbing a high mountain requires courage because it can be risky. Climbers must be aware of all the possible ① and prepare carefully. It is important to ② each challenge carefully. When they reach the top, the ③ of completing the climb is unforgettable. They also notice the small ④ of the path, which helped them stay safe.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Cinderella is a beloved fairy tale about a gentle, kind-hearted girl who lives unhappily with her cruel stepmother and unkind stepsisters. After her father's death, she works as a servant, completing every task in the house while her stepsisters live comfortably. One day, the king announces a royal party for the prince to choose a bride. Cinderella dreams of going, but her stepmother forbids it. Just then, her kind fairy appears, giving her a dazzling dress and glass slippers. A pumpkin becomes a golden carriage, and mice turn into horses. At the party, the prince admires her kindness and beauty. At midnight, she runs away, leaving one slipper behind. The prince searches for her until he finds the only girl whose foot fits the shoe, and they marry happily.

A. Answer the following questions:

- The word 'dazzling' in the text most likely means.....
a. ordinary b. very bright and attractive c. small d. dull
- Who helps Cinderella go to the party?
a. Her stepsisters b. Her father c. Her kind fairy d. The prince

B. Answer the following

- What is the main idea of the story?

.....

- What tasks does Cinderella do after her father's death?

.....

- Why does the prince search for Cinderella after the party?

.....

4 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A moral you have learnt from reading a story"

.....
.....

Review on Unit 10

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

treasure (n)	كنز	courage (n)	شجاعة
fade (v.d)	ييهت - يزيل	details (n)	تفاصيل
courage (n)	الشجاعة	shock (n)	صدمة
folktales (n)	قصص شعبية	talent (n)	موهبة
promise (n)	وعد	encouragement (n)	تشجيع
decades (n)	عقود	mouse (n)	فأر
precious (adj)	ثمين	voyage (n)	رحلة
generations (n)	اجيال	action (n)	فعل - حركة
gratitude (n)	العرفان بالجميل	dangers (n)	اخطار
curiosity (n)	فضول	success (n)	النجاح
stepsisters (n)	اخوات غير شقيقات	expression (n)	تعبير
servant (n)	خادم	sadness (n)	حزن
party (n)	حفلة	show (n)	عرض
midnight (n)	منتصف الليل	partner (n)	شريك
cruel (n)	قاسي	manage (v.d)	يتحكم
kind fairy (n)	جنية لطيفة	face (v.d.)	لة معني
slippers (n)	حذاء منزلي	clap (v.ped)	يصفق
Fairy Tale (n)	حكاية خيالية	summarize (v.d)	يلخص
lion (n)	اسد	express (v.ed)	يعبر عن
choice (n)	اختيار	trust (v.ed)	يثق
sailor (n)	بحار		



Language

قواعد لغوية

The Past Perfect Tense

زمن الماضي التام

Form التكوين

had + past participle (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

Ex. had finished - had gone - had eaten .

Usage الاستخدام

1 before (الماضي التام) ، (الماضي البسيط)

Ex. She had read the questions well before she answered them.

2 After (الماضي البسيط) ، (الماضي التام)

Ex. After she had done the housework, she cooked the food.

3 because (الآن)

(الماضي التام) because (الماضي البسيط)

Ex. Ola was exhausted **because** she **had stayed** up all the night.

4 By the time (بحلول الوقت الذي)

(الماضي التام) ، (الماضي البسيط) By the time

Ex. **By the time** he reached the school, the lesson **had started**.

5 As soon as (بمجرد ان)

(ماضي تام) ، (ماضي بسيط) As soon as

Ex. **As soon as he had** met Ali, He gave him the book. بمجرد ان قابل علي اعطاة الكتاب.

6 (ماضي بسيط) so (ماضي تام)

Ex. He had played well **so** he won the game. لقد لعب جيدا لذلك فاز بالمباراة.

7 When + ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام

Ex. When Dad **arrived**, we **had finished** our lunch. عندما وصل الوالد كنا قد انهينا الغداء.

8 When + ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام

Ex. When he **had finished** his studies, he **travelled** abroad. عندما أنهى دراسته ، سافر للخارج.

Imagine you found an letter or object from your family:

Student A

1. What did you find? ماذا وجدت ؟

2. Where did you find it? أين وجدتتها ؟

3. What does it look like? كيف تبدو ؟

4. Whom does it belong to? لمن تعود ؟

5. How do you feel about it? ما هو شعورك تجاهها ؟

Student B

I found an old letter. وجدت رسالة قديمة.

I found it in the attic. وجدتتها في العلية.

It is yellowed and torn, with a faint smell of old paper. إنها مصفرة وممزقة، وتفوح منها رائحة خفيفة للورق القديم.

It belongs to my grandmother. إنها تعود لجديتي.

I feel curious and emotional because it tells stories about her life when she was young. أشعر بالفضول والتأثر لأنها تحكي قصصا عن حياتها في صغرها.

Tell your partner:

1. What it looks like.
2. Whom it belongs to.
3. How you feel about it.

Student A

1. What did you find in the attic?

ماذا وجدت في المخزن أعلى المنزل

2. I found an old letter in the attic.

وجدت رسالة قديمة في المخزن أعلى المنزل.

3. What does the letter look like.

كيف تبدو الرسالة.

4. It is yellowed and torn with a faint smell of old paper.

كانت صفراء اللون وممزقة ولها رائحة خفيفة لورق قديم.

5. Who does the letter belong to.

لمن تخص الرسالة.

6. It belongs to my grandmother

إنها تخص جدتي

7. How do you feel about the letter

كيف تشعر تجاه الرسالة

8. I feel curious and emotional because it tells stories about her life when she was young

أشعر بالفضول والتأثر لأنها تحكي قصصاً عن حياتها عندما كانت صغيرة

Student B

What did you find in your drawer.

ماذا وجدت في درج مكتبك.

I found a small silver locket in my drawer

وجدت قلادة فضية صغيرة في درج مكتبي

Who does it belong to

لمن تخص

It belongs to my great-aunt

إنها تخص عمتي الكبرى

How do you feel about it

كيف تشعر تجاهها

I feel excited and amazed because it has a tiny picture of my family inside

أشعر بالحماس والدهشة لأنها تحتوي على صورة صغيرة لعائلتي بداخلها

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل البريد الإلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

I once read a story called Oliver Twist, and I really loved it. It is about a poor orphan boy who lives in a workhouse and suffers from hunger and cruelty. Oliver runs away to London, where he meets bad people, but he remains kind and honest. I liked the story because it shows how goodness can survive even in difficult situations. The events are emotional and sometimes sad, but they teach us to care about others. This story helped me understand the value of kindness, hope, and helping the weak in society.

Lessons 3

I read the story of Cinderella, and I loved it very much. Cinderella is a kind and hardworking girl who lives with her cruel stepmother and stepsisters. They treat her badly and make her do all the housework. One day, she is helped by her fairy godmother and goes to the royal ball. The prince falls in love with her, but she leaves at midnight and loses her glass slipper. In the end, the prince finds her, and they get married. I liked this story because it teaches us that kindness and patience are always rewarded.

Lessons 5 & 6

One moral I have learnt from reading a story is that ****kindness is always rewarded****. In many stories, the kind and honest characters suffer at first, but they never give up or become cruel. In the end, they achieve happiness because of their good behavior. This moral taught me that treating others with respect is very important, even in difficult situations. It also showed me that patience and hope can help us overcome problems. Reading such stories made me believe that doing the right thing is more important than gaining quick success.

Al-Azhar Test

I like reading stories because it is fun to get away to different places. I can meet people in books and feel like I know them. It helps me see how other people live and think. I also love the excitement of not knowing what will happen next.

Test on Unit 10

Reading stories is important because it teaches us about life. We learn how people feel and solve problems. Stories show us different places and ways of living, which makes us understand the world better. They help our brains grow by making us imagine characters and places. This makes us smarter and better at thinking. Stories also help us with our own feelings. When we read about someone who is sad or brave, we learn about our own hearts. They are a fun way to learn new words and how to use them. Most of all, stories connect us. They help us share ideas and feelings with everyone, everywhere.

Al Azhar

Test

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where is Minya?
2. What is Minya famous for?

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Mona and Farida are speaking about El Almein City.

Mona : Did you visit El Almein City Before?

Farida : ①

Mona : ②?

Farida : I went there last summer.

Mona : Did you enjoy your visit?

Farida : ③

Mona : Thank you.

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Most women like gold because it is.....
a. wooden b. brave c. precious d. ordinary
2. Most doors are made of materials.
a. precious b. wooden c. brave d. kind
3. he visited this friend, he had phoned him .
a. So b. After c. Before d. While
4. After he the visa, he travelled.
a. get b. getting c. gets d. had got

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. He got the job before he had met the manager. (.....)
2. After he answered the question, he had read it well. (.....)
3. He had gone to Sharm so he wanted to spend the summer there. (.....)
4. By the time he sleep, he had done his homework. (.....)

D. Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Salma says her school project this week is to think about rubbish at school. In her school, they have a rubbish bin in every room. The students are very good and they always put their rubbish in the bins. The rubbish is collected every week and goes to a special place in the city. But when they look inside the bins, they can see that most of the rubbish is made of paper or plastic. They can recycle a lot of this rubbish. So now, before students put things in the rubbish bins, the teachers ask them to think, "Can we recycle that?" If the answer is yes, they can put it in a special bin so it can be used again.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
2. Do you think students can recycle rubbish?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. The school project this week is about
 a. sport b. rubbish c. money d. football
4. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to
 a. things b. papers c. plastic d. students

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

"Why you like reading stories "

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Test on Unit 10

A. Listening

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Why does Cinderella suffer at home?
 - a. She is very lazy
 - b. Her father is alive
 - c. Her stepmother treats her badly
 - d. She refuses to work
2. Who helps Cinderella go to the royal party?
 - a. Her stepsister
 - b. The prince
 - c. Her fairy
 - d. The king

2 B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. What happens to Cinderella after her father's death?

4. Why does the king organize the royal party?

5. How is Cinderella rewarded at the end of the story?

B. Reading

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Cinderella showed great _____ when she stayed kind despite her suffering.
 - a. servant
 - b. courage
 - c. party
 - d. stepsisters
2. The antonym of 'excited' is _____.
 - a. happy
 - b. bored
 - c. calm
 - d. interested
3. We add the suffix _____ to form an adverb from the word "sad"
 - a. -ness
 - b. -ful
 - c. -ly
 - d. -ion
4. He was _____ clever. He gets high marks.
 - a. quit
 - b. quite
 - c. quiet
 - d. quietly

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

death - dazzling - hate - bride - patience

Cinderella was a gentle girl by nature, known for her ① _____ even after the ② _____ of her father. She never lost hope despite her hard life. One night, she appeared in a ③ _____ dress at the royal party. The prince chose her as his future ④ _____, rewarding her kindness.

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

When Salma opened the old wooden box, she felt curious and surprised. From the outside, the box looked simple and ordinary, but it seemed precious in her hands. Inside, she found a **yellowed** letter folded carefully. Although the ink had faded over time, the words were still clear. The letter had been written decades earlier by her grandfather to her mother. In it, he wished her a life full of courage, kindness, and hope. As Salma read the letter, she felt deeply connected to her family's past. She imagined her grandfather patiently choosing his words with love. Salma realized that it was not just paper, but a family treasure passed through generations, and now she was part of its story.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

- The word "**yellowed**" in the passage means
 a. new b. bright c. old d. torn
- The letter made Salma feel
 a. angry b. bored
 c. frightened d. connected to her family

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

- What did Salma find inside the wooden box?

.....

- What does the word "it" refer to ?

.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Shere Khan planned to kill Mowgli by using a herd of cattle.	☐	☐
2. The wolves all welcomed Mowgli back after the fight.	☐	☐
3. Bagheera reminded Mowgli that he belonged only to the jungle.	☐	☐
4. In the end, Mowgli chose to leave the wolf pack.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What marked the end of Mowgli's childhood?

.....

6. What lesson can we learn from Mowgli's actions in this story.

.....

C. Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. After he had read the story, he summarised it.

(before)

.....

2. He had been ill, so he didn't go to school.

(Because)

.....

3. Before he ate his lunch, he had washed his hands.

(after)

.....

4. Before he came home ,he had phoned his wife.

(By the time)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Sara and Mona are talking about reading stories at school.

Sara : Hi, Mona! Do you like reading stories?

Mona : ① ,I do.

Sara : What kind of stories do you like?

Mona : I like ② stories.

Sara : I enjoy reading stories before bed.

Mona : ③ too

Sara : Reading stories helps us relax.

Mona : I ④ with you.

Sara : Let's read a story together tomorrow.

Mona : Okay

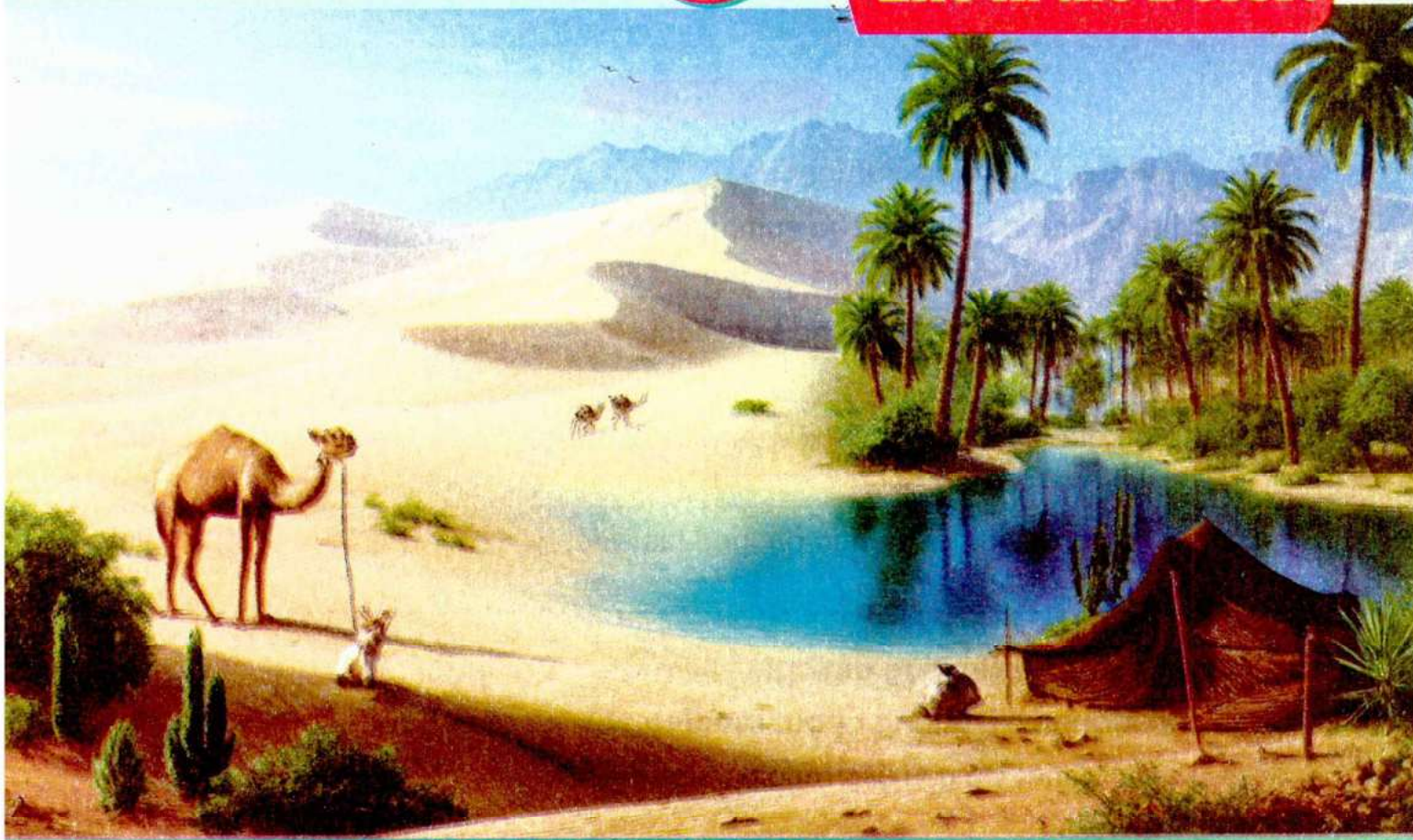
8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Why reading stories is important"

.....

.....



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify the main idea in a text about job profiles
- Analyze a job profile
- Determine the meaning of unknown words based on context

Listening:

- Identify the gist in a text about workers' stories
- Identify key details about workers' jobs, feelings, and main responsibilities
- Recognize the meanings of new words related to job experiences based on context

Language:

- The Past Simple and Past Continuous Tense

Writing:

- Write a paragraph about a future job, including interests, skills, why chosen, and future goals

Speaking:

- Discuss and present ideas about a dream job, including required skills and responsibilities
- Role-play a job interview, asking and answering questions about skills and values
- Discuss the importance of different jobs



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

grazing land (n)	أرض الرعي	nomadic (adj)	بدوي / رُحَال
sandstorms (n)	عواصف رملية	solar (adj)	شمسي / متعلق بالشمس
tribes (n)	قبائل	adapt to (v)	يتكيف مع
irrigation (n)	ري	conserve (v) (d)	يحافظ على / يوفر

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

desert communities (n)	المجتمعات الصحراوية	peaceful (adj)	هادئ / سلمي
environment (n)	بيئة	burning (adj)	حارق / مشتعل
Bedouin people (n)	البدو	native (adj)	أصلي
the Arabian Desert (n)	الصحراء العربية	similar (adj)	متشابه
lifestyle (n)	أسلوب حياة	dry (adj)	جاف
sand dunes (n)	كثبان رملية	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
systems (n)	أنظمة	protect (v) (ed)	يحمي
regions (n)	مناطق / أقاليم	reflect (v) (ed)	يعكس
protection (n)	حماية	store (v) (d)	يخزن
rainfalls (n)	أمطار / هطول الأمطار	develop (v) (ed)	يطور / ينشئ
modern (adj)	حديث / عصري	signal (v) (ed)	يرسل إشارة



Definitions

nomadic (adj)	بدوي	moving from place to place, not staying in one home	١. المحاصيل
irrigation (n)	الري	bringing water to land or crops ⁽¹⁾ to help them grow	٢. منطقة
adapt to (v)	يتأقلم على	to change to fit new environment	٣. غابات
grazing land (n)	أرض للرعي	area ⁽²⁾ of land, including grasslands and forests ⁽³⁾ , used by animals to eat plants	٤. مشترك
tribes (n)	قبائل	groups of people living together with shared ⁽⁴⁾ culture	٥. يحمي
conserve (v)	يحافظ على	to save or protect ⁽⁵⁾ something, especially nature or resources ⁽⁶⁾	٦. الموارد

Expressions & Prepositions

live in	يعيش في	face challenges	يواجه تحديات
learn to	يتعلم أن	break down	يتعطل
to stay cool	للحفاظ على البرودة	power their homes	يزود منازلهم بالطاقة
signal for help	يرسل إشارة طلبا للمساعدة	desert safety	السلامة في الصحراء
travel across	يسافر عبر	get lost	يضل الطريق
searching for	يبحث عن	make a small fire	يشعل نار صغيرة
protect from	يحمي من	famous for	مشهور بـ



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
extreme	شديد	severe		mild	خفيف / لطيف
adapt	يتأقلم / يتغير	adjust / change		resist	يقاوم
peaceful	هادئ / سلمي	calm		violent	عنيف
gather	يجمع	collect		scatter	يبعث / ينثر
famous	مشهور	well-known		unknown	غير معروف
dry	جاف	arid		wet	رطب
shelter	ملجأ / حماية	protection		danger	خطر

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Word	Use	Prefix / Suffix
-ion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	irrigat ion
-al	تحول الاسم الى صفة	tradit ional
-ful	تحول الاسم الى صفة	peace ful
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	saf ely
-ty	تحول الصفة الى اسم	saf ety

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
take	يأخذ	took	taken
become	يصبح	became	become
find	يجد	found	found
build	يبني	built	built
grow	يزرع	grew	grown

teach	يأخذ	taught	taught
break down	يصبح	broke down	broken down
hit	يجد	hit	hit

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 much + صفة في صيغة المقارنة

• إذا جاءت كلمة (**much**) متبوعة بصفة، فإن هذه الصفة تكون في صيغة المقارنة:

Ex. In summer, temperatures are **much higher** than normal.

Ex. Water is **much more important** than oil.

2 despite + noun

• تأتي كلمة (**despite**) متبوعة باسم، أو (**V+ ing**)، ومعناها (بالرغم من)، وهي رابط يدل على التناقض في المعنى بين جزئي الجملة، ويمكن استخدامها كبديل لرابط يدل على التناقض مثل (**however / but / although**):

Ex. She is poor, **but** she is happy. (Despite)

Ex. **Although** she is poor, she is happy. (Despite)

Ex. She is poor. **However**, she is happy. (Despite)

• كل هذه الأمثلة الثلاثة السابقة يمكن إعادة كتابتها باستخدام (**Despite**) بالشكل التالي دون أن يتغير المعنى:

= **Despite her poverty**, she is happy.

= **Despite being poor**, she is happy.

3 during + noun / while + v. - ing أو جملة كاملة

• تأتي كلمة (**during**) متبوعة باسم، ومعناها (أثناء)، ويمكن استخدامها كبديل لكلمة (**while**) التي تأتي متبوعة إما بفعل منتهي بـ (**ing**) أو بجملة كاملة - لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Ex. **While** watching the film, I fell asleep. (during)

Ex. **While** I was watching the film, I fell asleep. (during)

• يمكن إعادة كتابة المثالين السابقين باستخدام (**during**) بالشكل التالي دون أن يتغير المعنى:

= I fell asleep **during the film**. / **During the film**, I fell asleep.

4 similar / the same

• تستخدم كلمة (**similar**) بمعنى (متشابه مع وجود بعض الاختلافات)، وغالباً ما يستخدم بعدها حرف الجر (**to**):

Ex. Your shirt looks **similar to** mine, but mine is larger in size.

• بينما تستخدم كلمة (**the same**) بمعنى (متطابق تماماً دون أي اختلاف)، وغالباً ما يستخدم بعدها حرف الجر (**as**):

Ex. This phone is **the same as** mine.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My sister is _____ younger than me.
a. more b. much c. most d. little
2. This white phone is _____ cheaper than the red one.
a. more b. most c. few d. much
3. _____ her tiredness, she finished her homework.
a. However b. Despite c. But d. Although
4. _____ it was raining, we played the match.
a. However b. Despite c. But d. Although
5. Ahmed listened to music _____ he was travelling to Alexandria.
a. during b. but c. just d. while

Reading

SB Page (70)

SB Page (70)

استمع إلى النص



Desert **communities**⁽¹⁾ around the world have learned to **survive**⁽²⁾ in **extreme**⁽³⁾ conditions. These **amazing**⁽⁴⁾ people live in some of the driest places, where **temperatures**⁽⁵⁾ are much higher during the day and much lower at night. The Bedouin people of the Arabian Desert are **famous for**⁽⁶⁾ traveling across large **areas**⁽⁷⁾ of sand dunes with their animals, searching for ⁽⁸⁾ grazing land. Their **traditional**⁽⁹⁾ tents **protect**⁽¹⁰⁾ them from the **burning**⁽¹¹⁾



sun and **sandstorms**⁽¹²⁾.

In the American **Southwest**⁽¹³⁾, Native American tribes live in **desert**⁽¹⁴⁾ regions. They developed clever **irrigation**⁽¹⁵⁾ systems to grow crops in the dry soil. These communities learned to store water during rainfalls.

١. مجتمعات
٢. ينجو / يبقى حياً
٣. شديد / قاسي
٤. مذهل / راذع
٥. درجات الحرارة
٦. مشهور
٧. مناطق
٨. مرعى / رعى
٩. تقليدي
١٠. يحمي
١١. جارق / مشتعل
١٢. عواصف رملية
١٣. الجنوب الغربي
١٤. صحراء
١٥. ري / نظام ري

Modern desert towns face similar **challenges**⁽¹⁶⁾. People use wells and **solar**⁽¹⁷⁾ energy to power their homes. **Despite**⁽¹⁸⁾ the difficulties, some people choose desert life because they love the **peaceful**⁽¹⁹⁾ **environment**⁽²⁰⁾.

١٦. تحديات
١٧. شمسي
١٨. رغم / بالرغم من
١٩. هادئ / سلمي
٢٠. بيئة

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. How do desert temperatures change during the day and at night?
2. How do Bedouin people travel in the desert?
3. What crops do the Hopi people grow in desert regions?
4. Why do some modern people choose to live in the desert?

1. Desert temperatures are very high during the day and much lower at night.
2. Bedouin people travel across large areas of sand dunes with their animals.
3. They grow crops using irrigation systems in the dry soil.
4. They choose desert life because they love the peaceful environment.

Answers:



Audio Script

SB Page (72)

Story 1 Sarah (Explorer):

I was hiking in the Sahara Desert when I got lost for two days. The most important thing was finding **shade**⁽¹⁾ during the day. I used my jacket to create **shelter**⁽²⁾ under a rock. At night, it became freezing cold, so I gathered dry **branches**⁽³⁾ to make a small fire. I **conserved**⁽⁴⁾ my water by taking tiny sips every hour.

Story 2 Ahmed (Desert Guide):

As a **guide**⁽⁵⁾, I teach tourists about desert **safety**⁽⁶⁾. Last month, our jeep broke down 50 miles from town. We stayed calm and signaled for help using mirrors to reflect sun light. We shared our water **equally**⁽⁷⁾ among the group and covered ourselves with light-colored clothing to **stay cool**⁽⁸⁾.

Story 3 Mariam (Researcher):

While studying desert plants, a **sandstorm**⁽⁹⁾ suddenly hit our camp. We **immediately**⁽¹⁰⁾ went inside our tent and waited for six hours until it passed.

The sand was everywhere! We used wet cloth over our faces to **breathe**⁽¹¹⁾ correctly and check our **equipment**⁽¹²⁾ for damage afterward.

١. الظل
٢. مأوى
٣. فروع
٤. حافظ على / وفر
٥. دليل / مرشد
٦. سلامة / أمان
٧. بالتساوي
٨. بارد / يبرد
٩. عاصفة رملية
١٠. فور / على الفور
١١. يتنفس
١٢. معدات

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. To _____ is to change to fit new environment.
a. adapt b. breather c. graze d. protect
2. _____ are groups of people living together with shared culture.
a. Areas b. Dunes c. Tribes d. Soils
3. The word "_____", means bringing water to crops to help them grow.
a. region b. irrigation c. development d. environment
4. To _____ is to save or protect something, especially nature or resources.
a. store b. graze c. power d. conserve
5. _____ land is an area of land, used by animals to eat plants.
a. Travelling b. Living c. Grazing d. Facing
6. _____ tribes move from place to place, not staying in one home.
a. Nomadic b. Peaceful c. Extreme d. Violent

Synonyms & Antonyms

7. "Extreme" and "severe" are _____.
a. suffixes b. synonyms c. prefixes d. antonyms
8. The opposite of the word "peaceful" is _____.
a. light b. calm c. gentle d. violent
9. "Gather" and "collect" are _____.
a. antonyms b. prefixes c. suffixes d. synonyms
10. The antonym of "famous" is _____.
a. smart b. incorrect c. unknown d. impolite
11. Dry and wet are _____.
a. verbs b. antonyms c. synonyms d. suffixes
12. They tried to find shelter from the rain. "Shelter" means _____.
a. danger b. water c. food d. protection

Suffixes and prefixes

13. To get the noun from the verb "irrigate", we add the suffix "_____".
a. -ed b. -al c. -ion d. -ful
14. To get the adjective from the noun "tradition", we add the suffix "_____".
a. ry b. al c. ed d. ing

15. To get the noun from the adjective "safe", we add the suffix "_____".

- a. ty b. al c. or d. er

Guess the meaning & collocations

16. Passing the exam was a big _____ for the child.

- a. challenge b. shelter c. equipment d. landscape

17. We use large solar panels to _____ the lights in our small house.

- a. gather b. break c. power d. signal

18. The artist loves to paint beautiful _____, like green hills and blue lakes.

- a. branches b. landscapes c. wells d. rainfalls

19. Desert communities live in _____ conditions, with very high heat and no water.

- a. light b. fresh c. easy d. extreme

20. It is very difficult to travel across the _____ Desert, because it is so hot and dry.

- a. Pacific b. North c. Sahara d. Amazon

21. It was a very hot day, so we sat in the _____ of a big tree.

- a. shade b. well c. fire d. branch

22. When it started to rain, the travelers built a small _____ using wood.

- a. challenge b. power c. signal d. shelter

23. The bird built its nest high on one of the _____ of the tree in our garden.

- a. wells b. branches c. landscapes d. deserts

24. First, we need to _____ some dry wood to make a small fire.

- a. gather b. power c. break d. lose

25. She divided the cake _____ between her two children so they were both happy.

- a. sadly b. badly c. loudly d. equally

26. Always take a map with you so you do not _____ in the big city.

- a. get well b. get hot c. get lost d. get fire

27. When he fell into the river, he waved his arms to _____ for help.

- a. signal b. dance c. say d. play



Language

قواعد لغوية

The past simple and the past continuous الماضي البسيط والماضي المستمر

Past simple tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form

التكوين

التصريف الثاني للفعل + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

• يتكون الماضي البسيط من الفاعل (مفرد أو جمع) متبوعاً بالتصريف الثاني للفعل. وتنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة.

أولاً : الأفعال المنتظمة وهل الأفعال التي يضاف إليها d / ed / ied في التصريف الثاني للفعل كما يلي:

visit → visited talk → talked start → started

١. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) يضاف لها (d) فقط، وليس (ed):

move → moved like → liked

٢. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبقاً بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير في الفعل ثم نضيف له (ed):

stop → stopped plan → planned

٣. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y) مسبقاً بحرف ساكن نقوم بتحويل حرف ال (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف له (ed):

study → studied copy → copied

• أما الأفعال المنتهية بحرف (y) مسبقاً بحرف متحرك فنضيف لها فقط (ed) دون تغيير حرف ال (y):

play → played enjoy → enjoyed

• أما بالنسبة للأفعال غير المنتظمة فيُحفظ تصريفها الثاني لاستخدامه في الماضي البسيط، لأنها لا تخضع لقاعدة.

grow → grew buy → bought

Negative

النفي

• عند نفي الجملة في الماضي البسيط نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

الفعل في المصدر + **did not / didn't** + فاعل

Ex. I **did not / didn't meet** Ali at the club yesterday.

• لاحظ يمكن أن ننفي الجملة في الماضي ب **never** قبل الفعل ولكن يبقى الفعل في التصريف الثاني:

Ex. I **never** met Ali at the club.

Question

السؤال

• عند تكوين سؤال في الماضي البسيط نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

? **تكملة الجملة + الفعل في المصدر + الفاعل + did + (أداة الاستفهام)**

Ex. Where **did you meet** Ali yesterday?

• يمكن أن نبدأ السؤال ب **Did** كما يلي

Ex. Did you go to the park last Friday?

- Yes, I did. اجابة في الاثبات

- No, I didn't. اجابة في النفي

الاستخدام

١. يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث وقع وانتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي:

Ex. My father **bought** a new car last week.

٢. يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث كانت متكررة الحدوث في الماضي:

Ex. When I was young, I **visited** my grandparents every weekend.

٣. يستخدم الماضي البسيط عند وجود تعبير زمني أو أي إشارة زمنية تدل على الماضي، مثل:

التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضي

- تستخدم التعبيرات الزمنية التالية مع زمن الماضي البسيط لتحديد زمن حدوث الفعل:

yesterday	أمس	once	ذات مرة
in the past	في الماضي	...ago	منذ (يأتي قبلها فترة زمنية)
in (2010)	في عام (٢٠١٠)	this morning	هذا الصباح
last...	... السابق		

Ex. I **visited** the museum **last** night.

Ex. We **bought** a car four years **ago**.

زمن الماضي المستمر

Form

التكوين

- يتكون الماضي المستمر من:

I / He / She / It + **was + v -ing** فاعل مفرد

We / You / They + **were + v -ing** فاعل جمع

Ex. She **was reading** an interesting story the whole night.

Ex. We **were playing** football when it started to rain.

• إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **e** غير منطوق يحذف عند اضافة **ing** :

make → making take → taking

• أما إذا كان حرف **e** منطوق لا يحذف:

see → seeing agree → agreeing

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **ie** تحذف وتحول إلى **y** :

lie → lying die → dying

Unit 11 Life in the Desert

Negative النفي

• عند نفي جملة في الماضي المستمر نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

+ was not / wasn't + v -ing فاعل مفرد

+ were not / weren't + v -ing فاعل جمع

Ex. I **was not / wasn't sleeping** at 4 pm.

Ex. The children **were not / weren't watching** TV at 5.

Question السؤال

• عند تكوين سؤال في الماضي المستمر نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

+? + v -ing + فاعل مفرد + was + (أداة الاستفهام)

+? + v -ing + فاعل جمع + were + (أداة الاستفهام)

Ex. What **was your father doing** when you arrived?

Ex. **Were you sleeping** when I called?

الاستخدام

١. يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الحدوث أثناء توقيت محدد في الماضي:

Ex. At 7 pm yesterday, the children **were doing** their homework.

٢. يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث طويل (يستغرق وقتا) كان مستمرا في الحدوث عندما قطعه أو وقع أثناءه حدث آخر قصير (لا يستغرق وقتا)، وللتعبير عن هذه الفكرة نستخدم (while أثناء) أو (when عندما) طبقا للصيغة التالية:

الماضي البسيط (الحدث القصير القاطع) **+, +** الماضي المستمر (الحدث الطويل) **While +**

الماضي المستمر (الحدث الطويل) **+, +** الماضي البسيط (الحدث القصير القاطع) **When +**

وإذا جاء الرابط **when / while** في منتصف الجملة، لانستخدم فاصلة بين الجملتين

Ex. The phone **rang** while we **were studying**.

Ex. She **was driving** when I **called** her.

Notes

١. نستخدم الماضي البسيط وليس الماضي المستمر، مع الأفعال التي لا تستخدم في الاستمرار،

وهي الأفعال التي تعبر عن حالة أو شعور وليس عن حدث، ومن امثلة هذه الأفعال:

want / like / hate / need / see

Ex. When I was young, I **liked** milk. (~~NOT: I was liking~~)

٢. يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع الأفعال التي استغرقت وقتا في حدوثها، أما الأفعال اللحظية التي لا تستغرق وقتا في حدوثها فنستخدم معها الماضي البسيط:

Ex. While he **was running** after the bus, he **dropped** his pen.

Ex. While the children **were playing** with the ball, they **smashed** my window.

Past simple	Past continuous
يصف فعل بدأ وانتهى في الماضي	يصف فعل في منتصف الحدث في الماضي
عند وجود فعلين في الماضي فان الفعل الرئيسي يكون في الماضي البسيط	والفعل الآخر ماضي مستمر
On Saturday, we woke up really early.	The sun was shining.
يستخدم مع أفعال الشعور والتفكير والاحساس like, need, hate, see	لا يستخدم مع هذه الأفعال
يستخدم ليعبر عن العادات والأفعال المتكررة في الماضي حدث قصير	لا يستخدم للتعبير عن العادات والأفعال المتكررة حدث طويل

بدائل يمكن استخدامها لإعادة كتابة الجمل في زمن الماضي البسيط وزمن الماضي المستمر:

1 when ↔ while / as / just as

• يمكن استخدام (when) متبوعة بجملته في الماضي البسيط بدلا من (while) متبوعة بجملته في الماضي المستمر، والعكس صحيح:

Ex. While she was sleeping, her telephone rang. (When)

= When her telephone rang, she was sleeping.

Ex. When it started to rain, I was going to the club. (While)

= While I was going to school, it started to rain.

2 while / as / just as ↔ during

• يمكن استخدام (during) متبوعة باسم بدلا من (while / as / just as) متبوعة بجملته في زمن الماضي المستمر، والعكس صحيح:

Ex. Just as I was walking in the park, I met Ahmed. (During)

= During my walk in the park, I met Ahmed.

Ex. During the match, he fell down. (As)

= As he was playing the match, he fell down.

3 تاريخ في الماضي + ago ↔ in + مدة زمنية

• يمكن استخدام (مدة زمنية + ago) كبديل لـ (تاريخ في الماضي + in)، والعكس صحيح:

Ex. I last saw Ahmed two years ago. (in)

= I last saw Ahmed in 2024.

Ex. We bought this house in 2020. (ago)

= We bought this house five years ago.

Exercises on Language

1 Rewrite the sentences correctly using the words between brackets.

Set Book Exercises

1. I was watching TV when my mother came home. (While)

2. While they were playing football, it started to rain. (When)

3. Seleem was chatting with Yahia when the light went out. (While)

4. I saw Rodyna while she was going to school. (When)

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. My father started work in the bank in 2015. (ago)

6. While we were having lunch, my father arrived home. (When)

7. My uncle started his job as a teacher in 2000. (ago)

8. During my sleep, the cat jumped on the bed. (While)

9. The students were talking. The teacher walked into the classroom. (when)

10. My visit to London was in 2024. (visited)

11. I watched the movie from 7:00 to 9:00 last night. (at 8:00)

12. Ali was fixing his bike. During that time, it started to snow. (as)

13. During the match, it began to rain heavily. (while)

14. I finished the book the day before yesterday. (ago)

15. While he was painting the wall, he fell off the ladder. (When.....)

16. He broke the window while he was playing football. (when)

17. I was walking home when I saw an accident. (while)

18. We were watching a movie from 9 pm to 11 pm last night. (At 10 pm)

19. During his drive to the farm, he had an accident. (while)

20. I slipped while I was getting out of the bus. (when)

21. She was listening to music when her mother came in. (while)

22. The lights went out while they were having a meeting. (during)

23. We were waiting for the bus when it started to snow. (while)

24. She studied English from 7 pm to 10 pm last night. (At 8 pm last night,)

25. I last met my friend Ali two weeks ago. (When did you?)

26. He saw a famous actor while he was walking in the city. (when)



Speaking skills

Asking and answering questions about "How living things adapt to desert life":

السؤال عن كيف تتأقلم الكائنات الحية مع الحياة بالصحراء:

Question

1. How do animals survive in the desert?

كيف تعيش الحيوانات في الصحراء؟

2. What special features do plants have that help them live in hot, dry places?

ما هي الخصائص المميزة للنباتات التي تساعد على العيش في الأماكن الحارة والجافة؟

3. How do people adapt their homes, clothes, and lifestyle to desert conditions?

كيف يُكيّف الناس منازلهم وملابسهم وأسلوب حياتهم مع ظروف الصحراء؟

4. How do modern technologies help humans live more comfortably in deserts today?

ما هي التقنيات الحديثة التي تُساعد الإنسان على العيش براحة أكبر في الصحاري اليوم؟

5. Do you think it's possible to make deserts more suitable for living in the future? How?

هل تعتقد أنه من الممكن جعل الصحاري أكثر ملاءمة للعيش في المستقبل؟

Answer

1. Animals rest in the shade and come out at night. They save water and stay cool.

تستريح الحيوانات في الظل وتخرج ليلاً، فتحافظ على الماء وتتجنب الحر.

2. Desert plants have thick leaves and long roots. They keep water inside.

تتميز نباتات الصحراء بأوراقها السميكة وجذورها الطويلة، فتحتفظ بالماء داخلها.

3. People build thick walls, wear light clothes, and stay inside in the hot day.

يبنى الناس حوائط سميكة، ويرتدون ملابس خفيفة، ويقضون النهار الحار بالداخل.

4. Air conditioners, wells, and solar power help people live in deserts.

تساعد مكيفات الهواء والآبار والطاقة الشمسية الناس على العيش في الصحاري.

5. Yes, it is possible. People can use water projects, trees, and new technology.

نعم، هذا ممكن. يمكن للناس الاستفادة من مشاريع المياه والأشجار والتقنيات الحديثة.

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Bedouin live in small _____ in the desert.

a. communities b. dunes c. counties d. mountains

2. Nomadic people sleep in large _____ at night.

a. crops b. tents c. rocks d. dunes

3. Farmers need modern systems to water their crops.
 a. irrigation b. sandstorm c. rainfall d. region
4. A sudden destroyed the tents.
 a. homework b. sandstorm c. sunlight d. soil
5. In the desert, you see many sand
 a. towns b. tents c. systems d. dunes
6. Farmers grow, like wheat, near the river.
 a. rocks b. tribes c. crops d. towns
7. The desert is dry and sandy.
 a. system b. temperature c. soil d. community
8. Water is rare in these desert
 a. dunes b. towns c. regions d. crops
9. Native American live in Southwest America.
 a. tribes b. schools c. crops d. dunes
10. Modern often have electricity and roads.
 a. towns b. deserts c. tents d. crops

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

remembered - returned - problem - dried - alone

Last week , my brother Khaled was ① at home. Khaled was busy doing the homework when he had a ② He saw water coming into the living room. At that time, he ③ that the water tap was on when the telephone rang two hours ago. Mother ④ home after he dried all the water on the floor.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. During the party, the bride fainted. (while)

2. She cut her finger. She was making salad. (when)

3. I met my old friend. I was walking to school. (while)

4. The lights went out. We were watching TV. (when)

Unit 11 Life in the Desert

5. She saw a car accident. She was crossing the street. (while)

6. He was working when the manager called him. (During)

7. While I was waiting for the bus, it started to rain. (When)

8. I was riding my bike when a bird flew in front of me. (Just as....)

9. While we were talking, our teacher entered the classroom. (during)

10. He was cooking pasta when he dropped the plate. (While)

11. While I was taking a shower, I heard a loud noise. (During)

12. As she was cleaning her room, she found an old letter. (When....)

13. While I was working in the garden, a bird landed on my head. (During)

14. The baby was sleeping when the doorbell rang. (While)

15. I was doing my homework when my mom called me for dinner. (while)

4 Finish the following dialog:

Manar is asking Dina about a film she watched.

Manar : Did you watch last night's film on TV?

Dina : No, I didn't. What was it about?

Manar : It was about ① -----

Dina : Did you ② ----- watching it?

Manar : Of course, it was very interesting.

Dina : ③ ----- did you watch it with?

Manar : All my ④ -----

Dina : I'll try to watch it online.



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

adaptations (n)	تكييفات/تعديلات	unique (adj)	فريد/مميز
harsh (adj)	قاس/شديد	balance (n/v)	توازن
amazing (adj)	رائع/مذهل		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

stem (n)	ساق	ecosystem (n)	النظام البيئي
leaves (n)	أوراق خضراء	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
insect (n)	حشرة	heat (n)	الحرارة
journey (n)	رحلة	empty (adj)	خالي/فارغ
behaviors (n)	سلوكيات	thick (adj)	سميك
dryness (n)	جفاف	waxy (adj)	شمعي
fat (n)	دهون	strong (adj)	قوي
hump (n)	سنام الجمل	creative (adj)	مبدع
behavior (n)	سلوك	active (adj)	نشط
stem (n)	ساق النبات	rare (adj)	نادر/شحيح
date palm (n.)	النخل	survive (v) (d)	يحيى/يبقى
root (n)	جذر	release (v) (d)	يطلق/ينبعث منه
insects (n)	حشرات	harm (v) (ed)	يؤذي/يضر
living things (n)	الكائنات الحية	hunt (v) (ed)	يصاد
nature (n)	الطبيعة		



Definitions

amazing (adj)	مذهل/رائع	very surprising or wonderful
adaptations (n)	تكييفات	changes that help living things survive ⁽¹⁾
unique (adj)	فريد/مميز	one of a kind; special ⁽²⁾
balance (n)	توازن	an equal ⁽³⁾ or fair situation
harsh (adj)	قاس/صعب	difficult and tough ⁽⁴⁾

١. تعيش/تبقى
٢. مميز
٣. متساوي
٤. قاس

Expressions & Prepositions

survive in	يحيا في	plays an important role in	يلعب دورًا مهمًا في
extreme heat	حرارة شديدة	live in balance with	يعيش في توازن مع
active only at night	نشط فقط أثناء الليل	hide under	يختبئ تحت
store fat in	يخزن الدهون في	deep roots	جذور عميقة
give food or shade	تعطي طعامًا أو ظلًا	work together	تعمل معًا



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
rare	نادر / شحيح	scarce		common	شائع
harsh	قاس / شديد	tough		mild / gentle	لطيف / رقيق
thick	سميك	large		thin	نحيف
creative	مبدع / مبتكر	imaginative		unimaginative	غير مبدع
balance	توازن	harmony		imbalance	اختلال / فقدان التوازن
unique	فريد / مميز	special		ordinary	عادي / مألوف

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ation	فعل يصبح اسم	adaptation
-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	dryness
-ive	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	creative
eco-	بادئة توضع قبل الاسم لتحوله إلى اسم آخر متعلق بالبيئة	ecosystem

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
hide	hid	hidden
keep	kept	kept
have	had	had
eat	ate	eaten
teach	taught	taught



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 While + v -ing: جملة

• تأتي كلمة (**while**) بمعنى (أثناء)، ويليهما إما فعل منتهي بـ (**ing**) أو جملة كاملة:

Ex. While playing, he fell and broke his leg.

Ex. While he was playing, he fell and broke his leg.

2 another / other / others

• another

• آخر يليها أسم مفرد

Ex. He wants another book

• other

• يليها أسم جمع

Ex. They will buy other books.

• others

• تأتي كفاعل قبل الفعل أو مفعول بعد الفعل

Ex. Some students study hard others don't.

3 thick / fat

• thick

• سميك (صفة) تصف الشيء في حجمه أو كثافته

Ex. This book is thick.

هذا الكتاب سميك

• fat

• سمين أو دهون (صفة/اسم) تصف الدهون أو السمنة

Ex. The cat is fat.

القط سميك

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't like this pen. Can I have one?

- a. other b. another c. others d. rather

2. This bag is expensive, but the one is cheap.

- a. another b. others c. other d. rather

3. Some students are inside. The are waiting outside.

- a. another b. other c. others d. the other

4. The wall is very and strong.

- a. fat b. thick c. heavy d. young

Reading

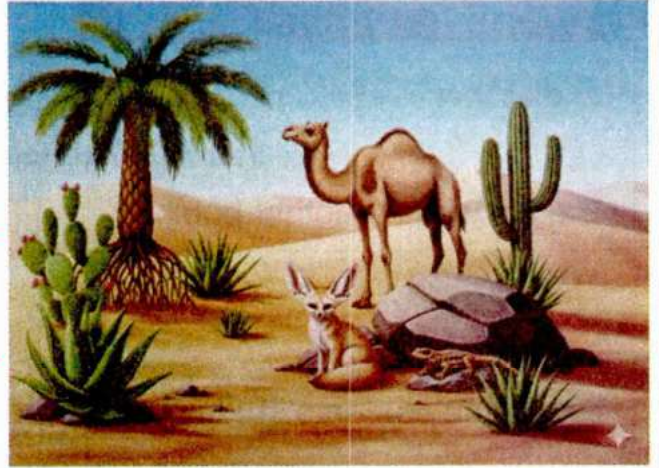
SB Page (75)

استمع إلى النص



SB Page (75)

Deserts may look empty, but they are full of amazing life. Animals and plants here⁽¹⁾ **survive** in⁽²⁾ **extreme** heat and⁽³⁾ **dryness**. Each creature has special⁽⁴⁾ **adaptations** to help it live where water is rare and the sun is strong. Desert⁽⁵⁾ **wildlife** shows how nature can be both tough and⁽⁶⁾ **beautiful**. Many desert animals are⁽⁷⁾ **active** only at night. The⁽⁸⁾ **fennecfox**, with its large ears, keeps cool while hunting in the dark because its large ears⁽⁹⁾ **release** heat from the fox's body.



Camels store fat in their humps for long journeys, while⁽¹⁰⁾ **lizards** hide under rocks during the day. These⁽¹¹⁾ **unique**⁽¹²⁾ **behaviors** help them survive in harsh⁽¹³⁾ **conditions**. Plants in the desert have⁽¹⁴⁾ **special** ways to live with little water. Some, like the⁽¹⁵⁾ **cactus** and aloe vera, have⁽¹⁶⁾ **thick** stems that store water. Others, like the date palm, have deep roots or small waxy leaves to stop water from drying up in the hot sun. Plants and animals also work⁽¹⁷⁾ **together** in the desert. Some birds eat⁽¹⁸⁾ **insects** that harm plants, and some plants give animals food or shade. Every living thing plays an important role in this⁽¹⁹⁾ **ecosystem**. Desert **wildlife**⁽²⁰⁾ teaches us to be strong,⁽²¹⁾ **creative**, and to live in⁽²²⁾ **balance** with nature.

١. ينجو/يعيش
٢. شديد/قاس
٣. الجفاف
٤. تكيفات/خصائص
٥. الحياة البرية
٦. جميل
٧. نشيط
٨. ثعلب الفنك
٩. يطلق/يحرر
١٠. السحالي
١١. فريد
١٢. سلوكيات
١٣. ظروف
١٤. خاص/مميزة
١٥. ضئيل
١٦. سميك
١٧. مغا
١٨. الحشرات
١٩. النظام البيئي
٢٠. يُعَلِّم
٢١. مبتكر/مبدع
٢٢. توازن

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- Changes to help living things survive are called
 a. behaviors b. adaptations c. ecosystems d. creative
- If something is the only one of its kind, it's
 a. unique b. creative c. extreme d. dry
- The word ".....", means an equal or fair situation.
 a. balance b. dryness c. adaptation d. wildlife
- If something is very surprising or wonderful, it's
 a. boring b. amazing c. clever d. deep
- To be is to be difficult and tough.
 a. kind b. happy c. sad d. harsh

Synonyms and antonyms

- "Unique" is similar in meaning to
 a. harsh b. special c. ordinary d. thin
- "Harsh" is similar in meaning to
 a. thick b. tough c. unique d. mild
- The opposite of "thick" is
 a. dense b. thin c. creative d. unique
- It is rare to see rain in the desert. The opposite of "rare" is
 a. common b. scarce c. smart d. high
- She is very creative and loves drawing pictures.
 "Creative" is an antonym for
 a. imaginative b. interesting c. generous d. unimaginative

Prefixes and Suffixes

- To get the noun from the verb "adapt", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -ation b. -ful c. -ed d. -able

Unit 11 Life in the Desert

12. To get the adjective from the verb "create", we add the suffix "_____".

- a. -ful b. -tion c. -ive d. -ly

13. To get the noun from the adjective "dry", we add the suffix "_____".

- a. -ship b. -ness c. -ful d. -ly

Guess the meaning & collocations

14. The Sahara Desert is full of _____ animals that can live in heat.

- a. lazy b. amazing c. weak d. boring

SB

15. Desert plants have special _____ to store water.

- a. problems b. mistakes c. adaptations d. accidents

SB

16. The fennec fox is _____ because of its large ears.

- a. unique b. active c. thick d. fat

SB

17. Life in the desert might be _____, but is still very special.

- a. kind b. clever c. thin d. harsh

SB

18. Nature always tries to stay in _____.

- a. balance b. desert c. behavior d. root

SB

19. The _____ of the palm tree are very deep in the ground

- a. roots b. leaves c. stems d. flowers

20. The bottle is _____. There is no water in it.

- a. full b. heavy c. empty d. thick

21. Plants need water and good soil to _____.

- a. survive b. stop c. break d. fall

22. Some desert plants have leaves with a _____ surface to hold the rain.

- a. salty b. noisy c. spicy d. waxy

23. The _____ of the lizard helps it survive in harsh conditions.

- a. insect b. behavior c. cactus d. leaf

24. The fennec fox's large ears _____ heat from its body.

- a. release b. stop c. provide d. protect

25. Ants, bees, and butterflies are types of _____.

- a. pets b. birds c. insects d. flowers

26. In a healthy _____, all the plants and animals work together to stay alive.

- a. economy b. ecosystem c. education d. electricity



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الإضافية

Vocabulary



desert life (n)	الحياة في الصحراء	opening (n)	افتتاحية
city life (n)	الحياة في المدينة	closing (n)	ختام
advantages (n)	مزايا	feeling (n)	شعور
traffic (n)	الممرور	vacation (n)	عطلة
pollution (n)	التلوث	footsteps (n)	خطوات
entertainment (n)	تسليّة	lonely (adj)	وحيد / منعزل
options (n)	خيارات	incredible (adj)	رائع
job opportunities (n.)	فرص العمل	practical (adj)	عملي
supplies (n)	مؤن / لوازم	challenging (adj)	صعب
comfort (n)	راحة	freezing (adj)	شديد البرودة
camping (n)	التخييم	windy (adj)	عاصف
resident (n)	مقيم	dusty (adj)	مترب
oasis (n)	واحة	peaceful (adj.)	هادئ
sunrise (n)	شروق الشمس	noisy (adj)	صاخب
sunset (n)	غروب الشمس	consider (v) (ed)	يفكر في
diary (n)	مفكرة يومية	miss (v) (ed)	يفتقد
greeting (n)	تحية	vary (v) (ied)	يتنوع/ يختلف

Expressions & Prepositions

I prefer because ...	أنا أفضّل ... لأن	One problem with... is ..	أحد المشاكل هي
I'd rather live in than	أفضل أن أعيش في ...	The best thing about... is	أفضل شيء بخصوص ... هو
I think is better because ..	أعتقد أن ... أفضل لأن	I don't like because	لا أحب ... لأن
in my opinion	في رأيي	dear diary	مفكرتي العزيزة
the main advantage is	الميزة الرئيسية هي	in conclusion	في الختام



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
incredible	رائع	amazing		normal	عادي
practical	عملي	useful		useless	غير مفيد
consider	يفكر في	think about		ignore	يتجاهل
peaceful	هادئ	quiet		noisy	صاخب
advantages	مزايا	benefits		disadvantages	عيوب

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	pollution
-ful	تحول الاسم الى صفة	peaceful
-ment	تحول الفعل الى اسم	entertainment
-ing	تحول الاسم الى صفة	challenging

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
read	يقرأ	read	read
wake	يستيقظ	woke	woken
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
feel	يشعر بـ	felt	felt
rise	يرتفع / تشرق	rose	risen

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1) near / nearby

- تستخدم كلمة (near) كحرف جر أو ظرف، ويليه اسم مكان إذا استخدمت كحرف جر، ويمكن أن يأتي بعدها حرف الجر (to) ثم اسم المكان:

Ex. My house is near (to) my school.

Ex. Don't come any nearer.

- بينما تستخدم كلمة (nearby) كظرف، وفي هذه الحالة لا يليها اسم المكان، أو كصفة، وفي هذه الحالة تسبقها أداة النكرة (a) ثم اسم المكان:

Ex. I live nearby, so I come to school on foot.

Ex. There is a nearby restaurant. Let's have lunch.

2 alone / lonely

• تستخدم كلمة (**alone**) بمعنى (بمفرده، دون وجود احد معه، وهي تصف الحالة وليس الشعور، ولا يأتي بعدها اسم:

Ex. I am **alone** at home now.

Ex. She likes to study **alone**.

• بينما تستخدم كلمة (**lonely**) لتصف شعور سلبي بالحزن بسبب الوحدة والعزلة حتى في وجود حشد من الناس، ويمكن أن يأتي بعدها اسم:

Ex. She was **lonely** after her son's death.

Ex. Our next door neighbor is **a lonely old man**.

3 maybe / may be

• تستخدم كلمة (**maybe**)، كلمة واحدة متصلة، كظرف بمعنى (ربما **perhaps** -)، وغالبا ما تأتي في بداية الجملة، ويليهما جملة كاملة:

Ex. **Maybe** it will rain today.

Ex. **Maybe** we can meet tomorrow.

• بينما تستخدم (**may be**)، كلمتين منفصلتين، كفعل بمعنى (ربما يكون)، وتأتي بعد الفاعل، وغالبا ما يليها صفة:

Ex. She **may be late** today.

Ex. This answer **may be correct**.

4 miss / lose

• يستخدم الفعل (**miss**) بمعنى (يفتقد شيئاً أو شخصا ويشعر بالحزن بسبب عدم وجوده)، كذلك يستخدم بمعنى (تفوته فرصة أو موعد أو وسيلة مواصلات):

Ex. She **misses her friends** so much.

Ex. I **missed the school bus** yesterday.

• بينما يستخدم الفعل (**lose**) بمعنى (يفقد شيئاً - يضع منه)، كذلك يستخدم بمعنى (يخسر مباراة أو أموال):

Ex. She **lost** her new phone.

Ex. Our team **lost** the match.

5 consider + v-ing:

• يأتي الفعل (**consider**) بمعنى (يفكر في)، ويليه فعل منهى بـ (**ing**):

Ex. I **considered asking** my teacher for help.

Ex. Why don't you **consider buying** a new car?

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My house is _____ the park, so I walk there every day.
a. nearby b. near c. nearly d. close
- She feels _____ because she has no friends in the new school.
a. happy b. lonely c. nearby d. single
- She _____ late today because of traffic.
a. maybe b. may be c. may d. be
- I ran fast, but I _____ the bus.
a. lost b. miss c. missed d. losing
- Please consider _____ earlier tomorrow.
a. come b. coming c. to come d. came

Reading

SB Page (79)

SB Page (79)

استمع إلى النصوص

Desert Life

Nora : Hi Soha! , I just read about people who left the city to live in the **desert**⁽¹⁾.

Have you ever done that?

Soha : That **sounds**⁽²⁾ interesting, but I'm not sure. What are the advantages of desert life?

Nora : Well, it's much **quieter**⁽³⁾ than city life. There's no traffic noise or **pollution**⁽⁴⁾. People say the air is cleaner and you can see **amazing**⁽⁵⁾ stars at night.

Soha : That sounds **peaceful**⁽⁶⁾, but isn't it lonely? In the city, I have many friends nearby and there are lots of **entertainment**⁽⁷⁾ options.

Nora : True, but desert communities are often very close. **Neighbors**⁽⁸⁾ help each other more than in big cities. Plus, you're **surrounded by**⁽⁹⁾ incredible nature:

Soha : I see your point, but what about **practical**⁽¹⁰⁾ things? Cities have better hospitals, schools, and job **opportunities**⁽¹¹⁾.

Nora : You're right about that. Desert life is definitely more **challenging**⁽¹²⁾. You need everything carefully, especially water and supplies.

Soha : I think I prefer city life because I like **comfort**⁽¹³⁾ and being around many people. I'd love to visit the desert for a vacation!

Nora : That's great! Maybe we could plan a desert **camping**⁽¹⁴⁾ trip together.

١. صحراء
٢. يبدو/ يبدو أن
٣. أكثر هدوءًا
٤. التلوث
٥. مذهلة
٦. هادئ/ سلمي
٧. الترفيه
٨. الجيران
٩. محاط بـ
١٠. عملي
١١. فرص
١٢. صعب/ يتطلب
١٣. تحديًا
١٤. الراحة
١٥. رحلة تخييم



SB Page (81)

Dear Diary

Today was my first day living with a **Bedouin**⁽¹⁾ family in Saudi Arabia.

It was **absolutely**⁽²⁾ amazing! I **woke up**⁽³⁾ at 5:30 a.m. when the sun was **rising**⁽⁴⁾ over the sand **dunes**⁽⁵⁾. The air was **surprisingly**⁽⁶⁾ cool and fresh.

After a breakfast of dates and camel milk, we packed our bags and set off across the desert. The sand felt **warm**⁽⁷⁾ under my feet, and we could only hear the soft sound of the wind and our camels' **footsteps**⁽⁸⁾.

The sun became **intense**⁽⁹⁾, so we rested in the shade of our tent. In the evening, we watched the most beautiful **sunset**⁽¹⁰⁾ I have ever seen. The sky was orange, pink, and purple while the temperature dropped quickly.

We sat around a **campfire**⁽¹¹⁾, eating **traditional**⁽¹²⁾ bread and listening to folk songs. Without city lights, the stars **were incredible**⁽¹³⁾. I felt tired but happy when I went to sleep on a soft carpet. I hope we'll reach the **oasis**⁽¹⁴⁾ soon. I can't wait to see what **adventures**⁽¹⁵⁾ tomorrow will bring.

Good night!

١. بدوي / عائلة بدوية
٢. تماما
٣. استيقظت
٤. يشرق / صاعد
٥. كثبان رملية
٦. بشكل مفاجئ
٧. دافئ
٨. خطوات
٩. شديد / قوى
١٠. غروب الشمس
١١. نار المخيم / موقد
١٢. تقليدي
١٣. رائع / لا يصدق
١٤. واحة
١٥. مغامرات

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms and antonyms

1. The view from the mountain was incredible. "Incredible" means
a. boring b. tired c. amazing d. normal
2. This bag is very practical for school. "Practical" is similar in meaning to
a. useful b. useless c. clever d. challenging
3. Please consider my idea before you decide. "Consider" is opposite in meaning to
a. think b. decide c. travel d. ignore
4. The village is very peaceful at night. "Peaceful" is an antonym for
a. calm b. noisy c. useful d. harmful
5. Living near school has many advantages. The synonym of "advantages" is
a. benefits b. disadvantages c. vacations d. supplies

Prefixes and Suffixes

6. To get the noun from the verb "pollute", we add the suffix "_____".
a. ed b. ing c. ion d. or
7. To get the adjective from the noun "peace", we add the suffix _____.
a. ful b. ion c. able d. ng
8. To get the noun from the verb "entertain", we add the suffix _____.
a. our b. sion c. able d. ment
9. To get the adjective from the noun "challenge", we add the prefix _____.
a. ful b. ing c. our d. ion

Guess the meaning & collocations

10. In _____ life, people and animals must learn how to survive in the extreme heat.
a. city b. desert c. school d. park
11. _____ is often fast and exciting, with many people and tall buildings.
a. Desert life b. Ancient life c. Sea life d. City life
12. Riding bikes has many _____. It's cheap and good for your health.
a. advantages b. problems c. questions d. mistakes
13. We were late for the meeting because there was too much _____ on the road.
a. people b. weather c. traffic d. noise
14. Factories make the air dirty. We need to reduce _____ in our town.
a. energy b. travel c. power d. pollution
15. When all my friends went on holiday, I felt a bit _____.
a. noisy b. lonely c. crowded d. popular
16. On a long trip, we need some _____ like music and games.
a. entertainment b. homework c. work d. food
17. The menu has many _____ for lunch, like pasta, salad, or soup.
a. colors b. prices c. pictures d. options
18. You did a/an _____ job on the presentation today. I really like it.
a. terrible b. boring c. incredible d. freezing
19. Buying a big car is not _____ if you live in a city with very small streets.
a. practical b. musical c. chemical d. physical
20. I want to move to the city to find a better job _____.
a. community b. opportunity c. entertainment d. vacation
21. We bought food and water _____ before the trip.
a. places b. tools c. supplies d. clothes

22. After a long walk, she enjoyed the _____ of her soft armchair.
a. comfort b. pollution c. opening d. sunset
23. Learning a new language is _____, but it is also very rewarding.
a. peaceful b. challenging c. windy d. dusty
24. During the summer, our favorite activity is _____ in the forest.
a. vacation b. sunrise c. traffic d. camping
25. Please _____ coming with us to the club, Dad! I'm sure you will enjoy it.
a. consider b. collect c. greet d. vary
26. Every _____ in this apartment building must have a key for the front door.
a. president b. accident c. resident d. instrument
27. When I travelled to London, I _____ my family and friends so much.
a. lost b. missed c. enjoyed d. found

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

entertainment - activity - footsteps - traffic - advantage

I'd like to live in a city. City life is exciting and full of ① _____. The main ② _____ is that there are many jobs and good schools. There are also shops, hospitals, and places for ③ _____. I don't like the ④ _____ because it is noisy and slow. speak English can't travel to many countries. So, all of us must Learn and improve it well.



Writing Skills

Writing a diary كتابة مفكرة

خطوات كتابة المفكرة

- Greeting** : Dear Diary,
Opening : Today was... {introduce the experience}
Morning : I woke up... {describe morning activities}
Daytime : After... By noon ... {describe main events}
Evening : In the evening, {describe evening activities}
Feelings : I felt ... {express emotions and thoughts}
Closing : Tomorrow, Good night! {end with future plans}



Writing Task

- Write your own diary entry (90-100) words about spending a day in the desert.

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

General Exercises**on Lessons 5&6****1 Complete the following dialog:**

Sara and Omar are talking about a picnic in the desert.

Sara : I am so happy. The desert is incredible!

Omar : Yes, but it is very hot. Let's sit in the ① of that tree.

Sara : I'm getting hungry. ② do we have to eat?

Omar : We have some sandwiches and some cold apple juice.

Sara : That sounds perfect! Thank you.

Omar : Look at the sand. It looks like gold.

Sara : It's ③ Do you like it here?

Omar : Yes, I do. I love how ④ it is.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

stores - hot - amazing - desert - survive

The camel is a famous desert animal. It lives in very ① places. It has special adaptations to ② It ③ water and fat in its body. This helps it travel long distances without food or water in the dry ④ This also makes it strong and useful for people in the desert

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Remember to take your coat; it's outside today!

a. noisy b. dusty c. freezing d. peaceful

2. It was so at the beach that my hat flew off my head and into the sea.

a. windy b. rainy c. cloudy d. foggy

3. The old books on the shelf were very and made me sneeze.

a. windy b. freezing c. peaceful d. dusty

4. After walking in the hot desert, we were happy to find a green with water and trees.

a. diary b. oasis c. sunset d. sunrise

5. I love the countryside because it is very ----- and quiet compared to the city.
a. peaceful b. crowded c. dangerous d. difficult
6. We woke up at 5:00 AM so we could watch the beautiful ----- over the hills.
a. midnight b. sunset c. sunrise d. afternoon
7. The sky turned orange during the -----, just before it got dark.
a. sunrise b. sunset c. midday d. morning
8. Car prices ----- a lot; some are cheap and some are very expensive.
a. greet b. miss c. consider d. vary
9. I couldn't sleep last night because the neighbors were having a very ----- party.
a. quiet b. peaceful c. noisy d. lonely
10. Every night, she writes about her day in her personal ----- .
a. diary b. oasis c. vacation d. comfort

4 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A day in the desert"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What is the desert?
- What do people do during a day in the desert?
- What difficulties do people face in the desert?
- How do people survive in the desert?

Review on Unit 11

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

grazing land (n)	أرض الرعي	nomadic (adj)	بدوي / رحال
sandstorms (n)	عواصف رملية	solar (adj)	شمسي / متعلق بالشمس
tribes (n)	قبائل	adapt to (v)	يتكيف مع
irrigation (n)	ري	conserve (v) (d)	يحافظ على / يوفر
adaptations (n)	تكيفات / تعديلات	unique (adj)	فريد / مميز
harsh (adj)	قاس / شديد	balance (n/v)	توازن
amazing (adj)	رائع / مذهل		



Language

قواعد لغوية

The past simple and the past continuous الماضي البسيط والماضي المستمر

Past simple tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form

التكوين

التصريف الثاني للفعل + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

• يتكون الماضي البسيط من الفاعل (مفرد أو جمع) متبوعاً بالتصريف الثاني للفعل. وتنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة.

أولاً : الأفعال المنتظمة وهل الأفعال التي يضاف إليها d / ed / ied في التصريف الثاني للفعل كما يلي:

visit → visited move → moved study → studied

• أما بالنسبة للأفعال غير المنتظمة فيُحفظ تصريفها الثاني لاستخدامه في الماضي البسيط، لأنها لا تخضع لقاعدة.

grow → grew buy → bought

Negative

النفي

• عند نفي الجملة في الماضي البسيط نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

الفعل في المصدر + **did not / didn't** + فاعل

Ex. I **did not / didn't** meet Ali at the club yesterday.

• لاحظ يمكن أن ننفي الجملة في الماضي ب **never** قبل الفعل ولكن يبقى الفعل في التصريف الثاني:

Ex. I **never** met Ali at the club.

Question

السؤال

• عند تكوين سؤال في الماضي البسيط نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

? **تكملة الجملة + الفعل في المصدر + الفاعل + did + (أداة الاستفهام)**

Ex. Where **did you** meet Ali yesterday?

• يمكن أن نبدا السؤال ب **Did** كما يلي

Ex. **Did you** go to the park last Friday?

- Yes, I did. اجابة في الاثبات

- No, I didn't. اجابة في النفي

الاستخدام

١. يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث وقع وانتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي:

Ex. My father **bought** a new car last week.

٢. يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث كانت متكررة الحدوث في الماضي:

Ex. When I was young, I **visited** my grandparents every weekend.

٣. يستخدم الماضي البسيط عند وجود تعبير زمني أو أي إشارة زمنية تدل على الماضي، مثل:

التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضي Past time expressions

- تستخدم التعبيرات الزمنية التالية مع زمن الماضي البسيط لتحديد زمن حدوث الفعل:

yesterday	أمس	once	ذات مرة
in the past	في الماضي	...ago	منذ (يأتي قبلها فترة زمنية)
in (2010)	في عام (٢٠١٠)	this morning	هذا الصباح
last...	... السابق		

Ex. I **visited** the museum **last** night.

Ex. We **bought** a car four years **ago**.

زمن الماضي المستمر Past continuous tense

Form

التكوين

- يتكون الماضي المستمر من:

I / He / She / It + **was + v -ing** فاعل مفرد

We / You / They + **were + v -ing** فاعل جمع

Ex. She **was reading** an interesting story the whole night.

Ex. We **were playing** football when it started to rain.

• إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **e** غير منطوق يحذف عند اضافة **ing**:

make → making take → taking

• أما إذا كان حرف **e** منطوق لا يحذف:

see → seeing agree → agreeing

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **ie** تحذف وتحول إلى **y**:

lie → lying die → dying

Negative

النفي

• عند نفي جملة في الماضي المستمر نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

I / He / She / It + **was not / wasn't + v -ing** فاعل مفرد

We / You / They + **were not / weren't + v -ing** فاعل جمع

Ex. I **was not / wasn't sleeping** at 4 pm.

Ex. The children **were not / weren't watching** TV at 5.

Question

السؤال

• عند تكوين سؤال في الماضي المستمر نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Was / Were + v -ing + فاعل مفرد + was + (أداة الاستفهام)

Were / Was + v -ing + فاعل جمع + were + (أداة الاستفهام)

Ex. What **was your father doing** when you arrived?

Ex. **Were you sleeping** when I called?

١. يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الحدوث اثناء توقيت محدد في الماضي:

Ex. At 7 pm yesterday, the children **were doing** their homework.

٢. يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث طويل (يستغرق وقتا) كان مستمرا في الحدوث عندما قطعه أو وقع اثناءه حدث آخر قصير (لا يستغرق وقتا)، وللتعبير عن هذه الفكرة نستخدم (while اثناء) أو (when عندما) طبقا للصيغة التالية:

While + الماضي البسيط (الحدث القصير القاطع) , + الماضي المستمر (الحدث الطويل)

When + الماضي المستمر (الحدث الطويل) , + الماضي البسيط (الحدث القصير القاطع)

وإذا جاء الرابط **when / while** في منتصف الجملة، لانستخدم فاصلة بين الجملتين

Ex. The phone **rang** while we **were studying**.

Ex. She **was driving** when I **called** her.

Past simple	Past continuous
يصف فعل بدأ وانتهى في الماضي	يصف فعل في منتصف الحدوث في الماضي
عند وجود فعلين في الماضي فان الفعل الرئيسي يكون في الماضي البسيط	والفعل الاخر ماضي مستمر
On Saturday, we woke up really early.	The sun was shining.
يستخدم مع افعال الشعور والتفكير والاحساس like, need, hate, see	لا يستخدم مع هذه الافعال
يستخدم ليعبر عن العادات والافعال المتكررة في الماضي حدث قصير	لا يستخدم للتعبير عن العادات والافعال المتكررة حدث طويل

بدائل يمكن استخدامها لإعادة كتابة الجمل في زمن الماضي البسيط وزمن الماضي المستمر:

1 when ↔ while / as / just as

• يمكن استخدام (**when**) متبوعة بجملة في الماضي البسيط بدلا من (**while**) متبوعة بجملة في الماضي المستمر، والعكس صحيح:

Ex. While she was sleeping, her telephone rang. (When)

= When her telephone rang, she was sleeping.

2 while / as / just as ↔ during

• يمكن استخدام (**during**) متبوعة باسم بدلا من (**while / as / just as**) متبوعة بجملة في زمن الماضي المستمر، والعكس صحيح:

Ex. Just as I was walking in the park, I met Ahmed. (During)

= During my walk in the park, I met Ahmed.

3 تاريخ في الماضي + in ← → ago + مدة زمنية

• يمكن استخدام (مدة زمنية + ago) كبديل لـ (تاريخ في الماضي + in)، والعكس صحيح:

Ex. I last saw Ahmed **two years ago**.

(in)

= I last saw Ahmed **in 2024**.



Speaking skills

Asking and answering questions about "How living things adapt to desert life":

• السؤال عن كيف تتأقلم الكائنات الحية مع الحياة بالصحراء:

Question

1. How do animals survive in the desert?

كيف تعيش الحيوانات في الصحراء؟

2. What special features do plants have that help them live in hot, dry places?

ما هي الخصائص المميزة للنباتات التي تساعد على العيش في الأماكن الحارة والجافة؟

3. How do people adapt their homes, clothes, and lifestyle to desert conditions?

كيف يُكيّف الناس منازلهم وملابسهم وأسلوب حياتهم مع ظروف الصحراء؟

4. How do modern technologies help humans live more comfortably in deserts today?

ما هي التقنيات الحديثة التي تُساعد الإنسان على العيش براحة أكبر في الصحاري اليوم؟

5. Do you think it's possible to make deserts more suitable for living in the future? How?

هل تعتقد أنه من الممكن جعل الصحاري أكثر ملائمة للعيش في المستقبل؟

Answer

1. Animals rest in the shade and come out at night. They save water and stay cool.

تستريح الحيوانات في الظل وتخرج ليلاً، فتحافظ على الماء وتتجنب الحر.

2. Desert plants have thick leaves and long roots. They keep water inside.

تتميز نباتات الصحراء بأوراقها السميكة وجذورها الطويلة، فتحتفظ بالماء داخلها.

3. People build thick walls, wear light clothes, and stay inside in the hot day.

يبنى الناس حوائط سميكة، ويرتدون ملابس خفيفة، ويقضون النهار الحار بالداخل.

4. Air conditioners, wells, and solar power help people live in deserts.

تساعد مكيفات الهواء والآبار والطاقة الشمسية الناس على العيش في الصحاري.

5. Yes, it is possible. People can use water projects, trees, and new technology.

نعم، هذا ممكن. يمكن للناس الاستفادة من مشاريع المياه والأشجار والتقنيات الحديثة.

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

I will never forget the day I won my first school competition because it changed my confidence forever. I woke up early feeling nervous, but my family encouraged me with kind words and smiles. At school, the hall was crowded, and my heart beat quickly while I waited. When my name was called, I took a deep breath and spoke clearly. The applause surprised me and removed my fear completely. Later, the teacher praised my effort, not only the result. That day taught me courage, preparation, and belief in myself, and it still motivates me whenever I face challenges.

Lesson 3

Desert wildlife includes animals and plants that live in hot, dry regions with little water. They survive extreme conditions by saving energy, avoiding heat, and using water carefully. Many animals are active at night or early morning, when temperatures are lower. Special adaptations include thick skin, light colors, long legs, and sharp senses. Plants store water in thick stems or deep roots and reduce water loss with small leaves. Animals and plants help each other through shelter, food, and seed spreading. From desert wildlife, we learn patience, balance, cooperation, and smart adaptation to harsh environments that inspire humans to respect nature and protect fragile ecosystems for future generations everywhere today.

Lessons 5 & 6

The desert is a wide, dry land with sand, rocks, and very little rain. It is located in many countries, especially in Africa, Asia, and the Middle East. During a day in the desert, people wake up early, travel carefully, and rest at noon to avoid heat. They ride camels, set tents, and search for water and shade. People face difficulties like high temperatures, sandstorms, and long distances. However, the desert teaches patience, cooperation, and respect for nature, making every day there challenging but meaningful for travelers, workers, and explorers who learn survival skills and appreciate silence, beauty, and simple life lessons deeply over time together calmly daily always there.

Al-Azhar Test

I learned an important lesson about personal identity. I realized that personal identity is about knowing who you are and being proud of yourself. I understood that I should accept my strengths and weaknesses without comparing myself to others. This lesson taught me to be confident, respect myself, and stay true to my values in every situation.

Test on Unit 11

Visiting the Grand Egyptian Museum was an amazing experience. The museum is very large and modern, with many halls full of ancient artifacts. I was surprised to see the huge collection of statues, mummies, and jewelry. The guide explained the history of the Pharaohs and the stories behind each piece, which made the visit more interesting. I also enjoyed the interactive displays and the special section about Tutankhamun. Walking through the museum, I felt as if I had traveled back in time. The museum shows the rich culture and achievements of ancient Egypt. I hope to visit it again soon.

Al Azhar

Test

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where is Adel from?
2. What does Adel do after dinner?

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Basant is asking Salma about desert animals

Basant : Hello Salma! Can I ask you some questions?

Salma : Sure, go ahead.

Basant : ①

Salma : Desert animals are animals that live in hot and dry areas with little water.

Basant : How do they survive in such extreme conditions?

Salma : ②

Basant : Do they have special adaptations?

Salma : ③

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. To form an adverb from "peace", we add the suffix
 a. -er b. -ing c. -ly d. -ful
2. The synonym of "beautiful" is
 a. ugly b. attractive / lovely c. inactive d. harsh
3. While the guide about survival, I took notes.
 a. talked b. was talking c. talk d. am talking
4. I'd rather he with us today.
 a. come b. came c. comes d. coming

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. I missed the bus so I was sleeping. (.....)
2. While the party, the bride fainted. (.....)
3. I don't had a mobile. (.....)
4. Salim hasn't call us for a week. (.....)

D. Reading Comprehension**5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:**

Omar was a quiet boy who loved reading. Every week, he went to the school library to borrow new books. His favorite stories were about famous inventors and explorers. They inspired him to dream and work hard. However, his friends didn't understand why he spent so much time reading. They preferred to play games after school.

One day, the school announced a reading challenge. Students had to read five books in one month and write short summaries. Omar felt excited and joined immediately. At first, it was difficult, but he stayed patient and organized his time. When the month ended, Omar had read eight books instead of five. His summaries were full of interesting ideas and strong vocabulary. The teachers praised his effort, and his friends were surprised by his success. From that day, Omar became a role model in his class. He learned that dedication and love for learning always lead to great achievements.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The best title for this story is -----
 - a. The Reading Challenge
 - b. How to Play Games
 - c. The Library Rules
 - d. A Lazy Student
2. Omar's favorite stories were about -----
 - a. sports players
 - b. famous inventors and explorers
 - c. school teachers
 - d. his friends

B. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Omar's friends not understand him at first?

2. What was the goal of the reading challenge?

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

"An important lesson you learned about personal identity."

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Test on Unit 11

A. Listening

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Osama was born in
 a. 1994 b. 1949 c. 2002 d. 1990
2. He an accident
 a. have b. had c. has d. having

2 B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. What did Osama lose?

.....

4. Where did he travel?

.....

5. What is he now?

.....

B. Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "Clever" and "smart" are
 a. synonyms b. verbs c. nouns d. antonyms
2. Farmers grow crops in fertile that is enriched for planting.
 a. soil b. floor c. dunes d. ground
3. A /An is a green, fertile area in the desert with water.
 a. town b. region c. oasis d. soil
4. Modern often have electricity and roads.
 a. towns c. deserts c. tents d. crops

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

world - trading - Treasury - special - noise

Petra is an ancient city carved into red rocks. It is over 2,000 years old and was once a rich ① city. The most famous building is the ② which you may know from movies. Petra is very ③ and is one of the New Seven Wonders of the ④

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Artificial intelligence, or AI, is changing the world in many ways. It helps people solve problems more quickly and perform tasks that used to take hours. For example, AI can translate languages, recognize faces, and predict weather conditions. Many students use AI-powered apps to check their homework or learn new skills. Although AI makes life easier, it must be used wisely. Some people worry that depending too much on AI might make humans less creative. Others fear that machines could replace jobs in the future. However, experts believe that AI will create new opportunities and help people work more efficiently. AI is not meant to replace humans; instead, it supports them by handling difficult or repetitive tasks. When used responsibly, it can improve education, healthcare, and communication. Understanding AI is important for young people today because it will play a big role in the jobs of tomorrow.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What is the main idea of the text?
 - AI is dangerous for students
 - AI is changing life and helping people
 - Machines will replace humans completely
 - People don't need AI
- The underlined word "it" refers to
 - education
 - AI
 - homework
 - weather

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why do some people worry about AI?

.....

- How does AI help students?

.....

- Why should young people understand AI?

.....

Story
5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Mowgli entered the nearby human city.	☐	☐
2. The people gave him food, clothing, and a place to stay.	☐	☐
3. He discovered some values in human life.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli's greatest challenge was Shere Khan.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What did people give Mowgli?
6. What lesson did they learn at the end?

C. Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. Hamdy played rugby yesterday afternoon. (playing)
2. They didn't play tennis in the morning. (weren't)
3. She never studied hard. (didn't)
4. During the party, he fell down. (while)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Khaled is asking Ahmed about water.

Khaled : What are you doing?

Ahmed : I am reading a book about ①

Khaled : A book about water ! ② does it contain?

Ahmed : It contains facts about water.

Khaled : ③ our bodies have water inside them?

Ahmed : Yes, our bodies have water inside them.

Khaled : What does water do in our bodies?

Ahmed : It helps move blood and keep our ④ cool.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

"Visiting the Grand Egyptian Museum"

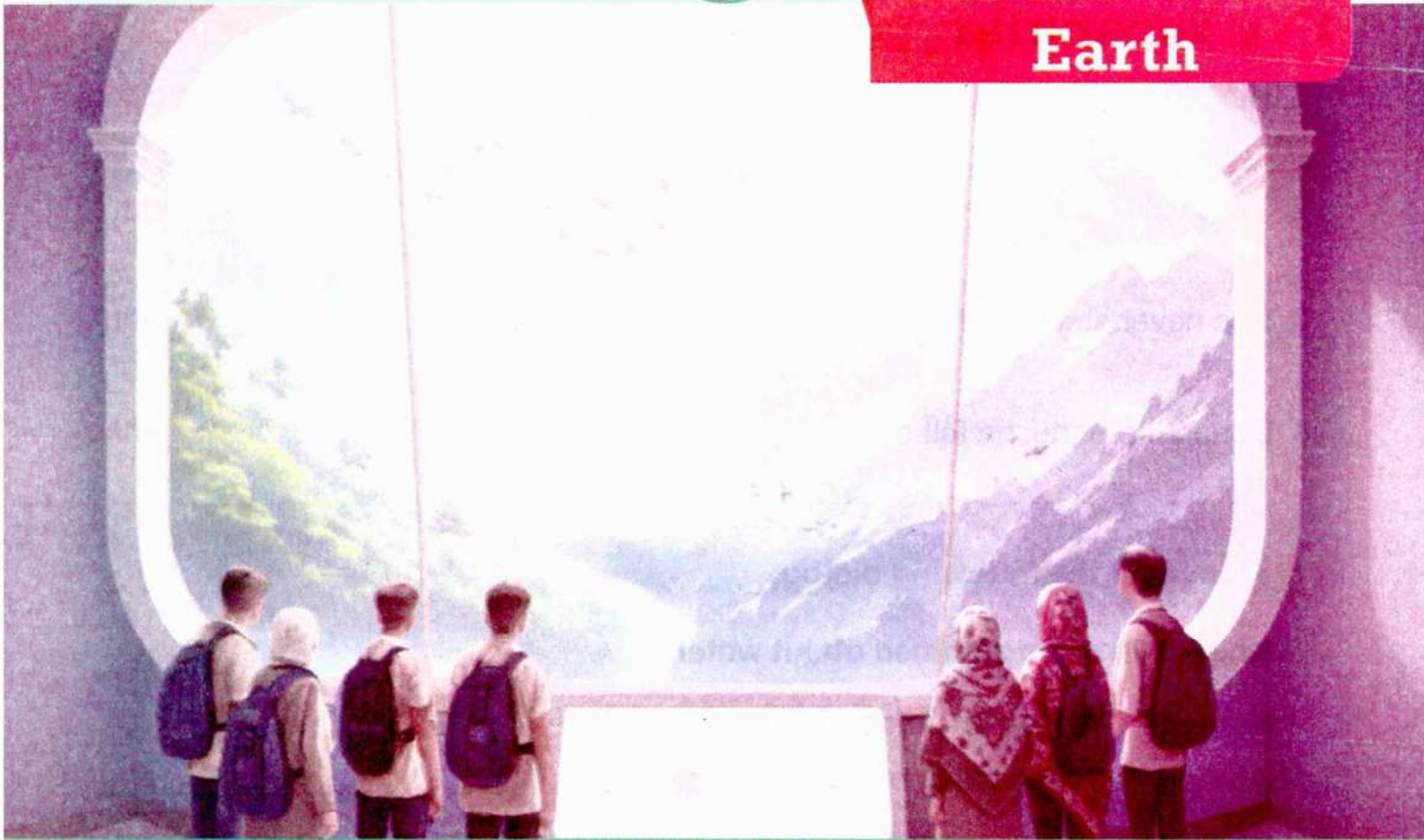
.....

.....

.....

.....

Our Incredible Earth



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Recognize facts about the Earth, and the importance of the Amazon rainforest and Mount Everest
- Identify the causes and results of environmental problems and positive actions taken

Listening:

- Identify the gist of a short listening text about natural wonders
- Identify key facts and features of natural wonders

Speaking:

- Discuss and present information about

favorite natural wonders using the Present Perfect tense

- Role-play an interview about the Earth's challenges and simple actions people can take to help the environment

Language:

- Use the Present Perfect tense correctly to talk about life experiences and actions continuing to the present

Writing:

- Create a "Save the Earth" poster that includes a clear slogan, action points, and persuasive language



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

mountains (n)	جبال	rainforest (n)	غابة مطيرة
wonders (n)	عجائب	gravity (n)	الجاذبية
incredible (adj)	مدهش / لا يُصدق	atmosphere (n)	الغلاف الجوي
landscapes (n)	مناظر طبيعية	radiation (n)	إشعاع

المفردات الإضافية

Vocabulary

amazing (adj)	مدهش	frozen (adj)	متجمد
billion	مليار	natural (adj)	طبيعي
space (n)	الفضاء	unique (adj)	فريد
adventure (n)	مغامرة	astronauts (n)	رواد فضاء
oxygen (n)	الأكسجين	oceans (n)	محيطات
environment (n)	البيئة	discover (v) (ed)	يكتشف
record (n)	رقم قياسي	support (v) (ed)	يدعم
humans (n)	البشر	explore (v) (d)	يستكشف
challenges (n)	تحديات	develop (v) (ed)	يطوّر
percent (n)	نسبة مئوية	produce (v) (d)	يُنتج
planet (n)	كوكب	breathe (v) (d)	يتنفس
harmful (adj)	ضار	place (v) (d)	يضع
highest (adj)	الأعلى	protect (v) (ed)	يحمي
mysterious (adj)	غامض	remain (v) (ed)	يبقى/ يظل
unimaginable (adj)	لا يمكن تصوره	encourage (v) (d)	يشجّع
explorer (n)	مستكشف		



Definitions

incredible (adj) مذهل / لا يُصدَّق	extremely surprising, or amazing	١. منحدر
landscapes (n) مناظر طبيعية	the view of the land around us including trees, mountains, rivers or fields	٢. قوة طبيعية
mountain (n) جبل	a very high and steep ⁽¹⁾ land that rises above the land around it	٣. موجات (الصوت أو الضوء)
rainforest (n) غابة مطيرة	a place with many trees and heavy rain	٤. جزيئات / جسيمات صغيرة
gravity (n) الجاذبية	natural force ⁽²⁾ that pulls objects downwards	
radiation (n) الإشعاع	energy that travels in waves ⁽³⁾ or tiny particles ⁽⁴⁾ .	

Expressions & Prepositions

full of wonders	مليء بالعجائب	hold ... in place	يحافظ على في مكانه
around 4.5 billion years old	عمره حوالي ٤,٥ مليار سنة	such as	مثل / على سبيل المثال
on the other side of the world	على الجانب الآخر من العالم	face challenges	يواجه تحديات



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
strong	قوي	powerful		weak	ضعيف
deep	عميق	profound		shallow	ضحل
unique	فريد	special		common	شائع
harmful	ضار	dangerous		safe	آمن
natural	طبيعي	normal		artificial	اصطناعي
mysterious	غامض	strange		obvious / clear	واضح
brave	شجاع	courageous		fearful / coward	خائف / جبان
huge	ضخم	enormous / very big		tiny / small	صغير جدًا
incredible	مذهل	surprising / amazing		ordinary / common	عادي / شائع

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
dis-	تعطي معنى العكس	discover
un-	تعطي معنى النفي أو العكس	unimaginable
-scape	تحول الكلمة إلى اسم يدل على منظر	landscape
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم فاعل	climber / explorer
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	gravity
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	radiation
-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	wonderful / harmful
-ous	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	dangerous

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
get	يحصل على	got	got
find	يجد	found	found
become	يصبح	became	become
think	يفكر	thought	thought
hold	يمسك/يحافظ على	held	held



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1) desert - dessert

• **desert** (صحراء): منطقة جافة وقليلة المطر

Ex. Camels live in the **desert**.

• **dessert** (حلوى): شيء يؤكل بعد الطعام

Ex. I had ice cream for **dessert**.

2) astronauts - astronomer - astrologer

• **astronauts** رواد فضاء يسافرون إلى الفضاء

Ex. **Astronauts** train for years before going to space.

• **astronomer** عالم يدرس النجوم والكواكب

Ex. The **astronomer** discovered a new planet.

• **astrologer** عالم التنجيم، يقرأ الأبراج

Ex. The **astrologer** predicted my future.

Unit 12 Our Incredible Earth

3 breathe - breath

• **breathe (v)** يتنفس

Ex. You should **breathe** deeply.

• **breath (n)** النفس أو شهيق/زفير

Ex. Take a deep **breath**.

4 little - a little

• **little** قليل جدًا ولا يكفي

Ex. There is **little** water in the bottle.

• **a little** قليل لكن إيجابي أو كافٍ

Ex. I have **a little** money to buy snacks.

5 discover - invent

• **discover** يكتشف
شيئًا موجودًا مسبقًا ولم يكن معروفًا

Ex. Columbus **discovered** America.

• **invent** يخترع
شيئًا جديدًا لم يكن موجودًا

Ex. Thomas Edison **invented** the light bulb.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Camels can live for days in the hot _____ without water.
a. dessert b. desert c. ocean d. rainforest
- I have _____ time today, so I can help you with your homework.
a. little b. a little c. few d. many
- Columbus wanted to _____ new lands across the ocean.
a. invent b. build c. discover d. create
- _____ travel into space to explore other planets.
a. Astronomers b. Astrologers c. Astronauts d. Scientists
- You must _____ deeply before diving into the water.
a. breath b. breathe c. breeze d. bathe

Reading

SB Page (85)

SB Page (85)

استمع إلى النصوص



Our planet Earth is full of wonders, and some of them are truly **incredible**!⁽¹⁾ Do you know that Earth is around 4.5 billion years old? That's an **unimaginable**⁽²⁾ amount of time for life and **landscapes**⁽³⁾ to develop.

The Sahara Desert is so huge that astronauts can actually see it from **space**!⁽⁴⁾ On the other side of the world, the Amazon **rainforest**⁽⁵⁾ is often called the "lungs of the Earth" because it produces a huge amount of the oxygen we breathe every day.

When it comes to **mountains**⁽⁶⁾, Mount Everest holds the record as the highest on Earth. Many brave climbers have reached its frozen top, facing incredible challenges along the way.

Earth's **gravity**⁽⁷⁾ is strong enough to hold its atmosphere in place. This atmosphere protects us from harmful **radiation**⁽⁸⁾ and keeps the planet warm enough to support life. Without **gravity**⁽⁹⁾, Earth would lose the air we **breathe**⁽¹⁰⁾.

And here's a fact that shows how little we know: humans have **explored**⁽¹¹⁾ only about 5% of the oceans. The rest **remains**⁽¹²⁾ a deep, mysterious world waiting to be **discovered**⁽¹³⁾.

١. لا يُصدق / مذهل
٢. لا يُتخيل / غير قابل للتصور
٣. مناظر طبيعية / تضاريس
٤. الفضاء
٥. غابة مطيرة
٦. جبال
٧. الجاذبية
٨. إشعاع
٩. الجاذبية
١٠. يتنفس
١١. استكشف
١٢. يبقى / يظل
١٣. اكتشف



Audio Script

SB Page (88)

Our **planet**⁽¹⁾ is full of natural **wonders**⁽²⁾ that have **amazed**⁽³⁾ people for thousands of years. Scientists and explorers have discovered **incredible**⁽⁴⁾ places that show the true power and beauty of nature. For example, travelers have visited the Grand Canyon in the U.S.A, the Amazon **Rainforest**⁽⁵⁾ in South America, and the Sahara Desert in North Africa, and each place has offered a different kind of **adventure**⁽⁶⁾. Over time, **researchers**⁽⁷⁾ have found unusual plants and animals living in deep oceans like the Pacific Ocean, high **mountains**⁽⁸⁾ such as the Himalayas in Asia, and hidden caves like those in Vietnam's Son Doong Cave.

١. كوكب
٢. عجائب / روائع
٣. أذهلت
٤. لا يُصدق / مذهل
٥. غابة الأمازون
٦. المغامرة
٧. باحثون / علماء
٨. جبال

Nature has also created **brehtaking**⁽⁹⁾ sights such as **bioluminescent**⁽¹⁰⁾ glowing beaches in the Maldives, active volcanoes in Iceland, and giant **icebergs**⁽¹¹⁾ in **Antarctica**⁽¹²⁾ that have shaped the way people understand the world. Many **photographers**⁽¹³⁾ have captured these wonders to share their beauty with others. These natural wonders remind us that Earth is full of **secrets**⁽¹⁴⁾, and humans have only seen a small part of its **magic**⁽¹⁵⁾. They also encourage us to protect our **environment**⁽¹⁶⁾, because nature has given us **extraordinary**⁽¹⁷⁾ places that **deserve**⁽¹⁸⁾ to be cared for.

٩. خلّاب / يخطف الأنفاس
١٠. مضيء حيويًا / يضيء طبيعيًا
١١. جبال جليدية
١٢. القارة القطبية الجنوبية
١٣. مصورون
١٤. أسرار
١٥. سحر / عجائب
١٦. البيئة
١٧. استثنائي / رائع
١٨. يستحق

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. Something that is extremely surprising or amazing is called SB
 a. incredible b. ordinary c. simple d. common
2. The view of the land around us including trees, mountains, rivers or fields is called SB
 a. desert b. landscape c. city d. street
3. A is a place with many trees and heavy rain. SB
 a. rainforest b. desert c. mountain d. village
4. The natural force that pulls objects downwards is called SB
 a. gravity b. radiation c. energy d. magnetism
5. "....." means energy that travels in waves or tiny particles. SB
 a. Radiation b. Gravity
 c. Sunlight d. Landscape

Synonyms and antonyms

6. The opposite of "strong" is
 a. powerful b. weak c. courageous d. safe
7. A synonym for "deep" is
 a. shallow b. special c. profound d. normal
8. The opposite of "unique" is
 a. special b. common c. dangerous d. courageous

9. A synonym for "harmful" is
 a. dangerous b. safe c. obvious d. normal
10. The opposite of "natural" is
 a. normal b. special c. strange d. artificial
11. A synonym for "mysterious" is
 a. obvious b. weak c. strange d. shallow
12. The opposite of "brave" is
 a. courageous b. fearful c. powerful d. special

Prefixes and Suffixes

13. To get the noun from the word "grave", we add the suffix
 a. -ity b. -ty c. -ion d. -ment
14. The antonym of the word "imaginable" can be formed by adding the prefix
 a. in- b. un- c. dis- d. ir-
15. To form an adjective from the noun "danger", we add the suffix
 a. -ing b. -y c. -ous d. -ment
16. To get the noun for a person from the verb "climb", we add the suffix
 a. -ist b. -ar c. -er d. -ian
17. The suffix "-ful" is used to change a noun into a/ an
 a. verb b. adjective c. adverb d. conjunction

Guess the meaning & collocations

18. often travel around the world to discover new places.
 a. Explore b. Exploring c. Explored d. Explorers
19. Many tourists enjoy climbing the in the Himalayas.
 a. mountains b. oceans c. astronauts d. atmosphere
20. Earth is the only known to support life.
 a. mountain b. rainforest c. planet d. wonder
21. Climbers dream of reaching the top of Everest .
 a. Mount b. Rainforest c. Ocean d. Space
22. The Amazon is a large tropical full of rare plants and animals.
 a. desert b. rainforest c. mountain d. ocean

Unit 12 Our Incredible Earth

23. The force of _____ keeps everything on Earth.
 a. gravity b. oxygen c. radiation d. atmosphere
24. The atmosphere protects us from harmful _____.
 a. radiation b. landscapes c. oxygen d. mountains
25. The Great Wall of China is full _____ wonders.
 a. of b. on c. with d. by
26. Earth is _____ 4.5 billion years old.
 a. in b. full of c. to be d. around
27. Australia is located on the _____ side of the world.
 a. other b. another c. others d. other's
28. Engineers often _____ challenges when designing new bridges.
 a. face b. remind c. wait d. hold
29. I love tropical fruits, _____ mangoes and pineapples.
 a. such as b. as c. as if d. as though



Language

قواعد لغوية

The present perfect tense زمن المضارع التام

Form التكوين

• يتكون زمن المضارع التام من:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	+ have ('ve)	+	p.p. التصريف الثالث للفعل
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ has ('s)	+	p.p. التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. They **have ('ve) ridden** a horse.

- He **has ('s) travelled by** plane.

Negative النفي

• نفي زمن المضارع التام كالآتي:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	+ have not (haven't) + p.p.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ has not (hasn't) + p.p.

Ex. I **have not (haven't) played** a musical instrument.

- He **has not (hasn't) driven** a car.

Question السؤال

• السؤال بـ «هل» :

Have + (you / they / we / اسم جمع) + p.p. ...?

Has + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + p.p. ...?

Ex. Have you ever been to a football match?

- Has she ever ridden a horse?

- No, she hasn't.

- Yes, she has.

للإجابة عن السؤال بـ «هل» تقول:

• السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

+ have + (you / they / we / اسم جمع) + p.p. ...? كلمة استفهام

+ has + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + p.p. ...? كلمة استفهام

Ex. A: What have you read?

B: I've read a story.

Usage الاستخدام

• يستخدم زمن المضارع التام في الحالات الآتية:

١- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثه (تجارب حياتية Experiences in life):

Ex. I have visited the Grand Canyon.

٢- لوصف حدث بدأ في الماضي و مازال مستمرًا حتى الآن :

Ex. Egyptians have depended on the Nile for thousands of years.

Ex. I have just finished my homework.

٣- لوصف حدث تم حديثًا «أى قبل قليل»

• تأتي الكلمات الآتية عادة مع زمن المضارع التام:

- just	حاليًا / تَوًّا	- recently	حديثًا
- already	بالفعل	- lately	مؤخرًا
- yet	حتى الآن	- ever	سابقًا / من قبل
- since	منذ	- never	أبداً
- for	لمدة		

just تَوًّا

• تدل (**just**) على أن الحدث وقع منذ فترة قصيرة - وتستخدم مع الجمل المثبتة - وتوضع بالجملة بعد

الفعل المساعد **have / has** وقبل التصريف الثالث:

Subject + has/ have + just + p.p.

Ex. I have just met Ali at the supermarket.

- My mum has just made a cake.

بالفعل already

- تدل (**already**) على أن الحدث تم مسبقاً (قبل الوقت المتوقع) و تستخدم مع الجملة المثبتة إما في آخرها أو بعد **has/ have** وقبل التصريف الثالث للفعل.

Subject + **has/ have** + p.p. + **already**.

Subject + **has/ have** + **already** + p.p.

Ex. She **has played** in two concerts **already**.

- She **has already written** a book of stories.

بعد/ حتى الان yet

- تستخدم "**yet**" مع زمن المضارع التام في آخر الجملة المنفية:

Subject + **hasn't/ haven't** + p.p. + **yet**.

Ex. She **hasn't** been to another country **yet**.

- تستخدم ايضا في نهاية السؤال.

Has/ Have + subject + p.p. + **yet?**

Ex. **Has** she **learnt** a musical instrument **yet?**

أبداً / مطلقاً never

- تستخدم للنفي و توضع بدلاً من **not**:

Subject + **has/ have** + **never** + p.p.

Ex. I **have never spoken** Spanish.

- My father **has never smoked**.

لمدة / منذ since

- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام مع **since** (ويأتي بعدها تعبير زمني يدل على توقيت بداية الحدث)

Ex. I **have lived** in Tanta **since 2010**.

- وكذلك يستخدم مع **for** (ويأتي بعدها المدة الزمنية التي استغرقها الحدث حتى وقت الكلام):

Ex. I **have lived** in Tanta **for 16 years**.

توقيت بداية الحدث + since		مدة زمنية + for
Friday - yesterday	الأيام - أمس	a day - two days - a week - 3 weeks
August - 2010	الشهور - السنين	a month - two months - a year - 2 years
2 o'clock	الساعات	an hour - four hours..... etc.
last (week - month - year...)	... السابق	the last (week - month - year.....)
		a short time - a long time

Rewrite tips

ا. إذا وضع بين الأقواس كلمة دالة على المضارع التام عليك تحديد الفعل الاساسي للجملة و حذف اي كلمة اخرى دالة على زمن اخر ثم تحديد متى و أين تستخدم الكلمة و تحول الجملة إلى المضارع التام

Examples:

A. Adel watched this movie last month. (already)

- **watch** الفعل الاساسي للجملة
- **last month** دالة على زمن اخر يتم حذفها
- **already** تستخدم اخر الجملة المثبتة أو قبل التصريف الثالث للفعل

Answer:

Adel **has watched** this movie **already**.

or: Adel **has already watched** this movie.

B. Laila finished her homework a moment ago.

- **finish** الفعل الاساسي للجملة
- **a moment ago** دالة على زمن اخر يتم حذفها
- **just** تستخدم مع الجملة المثبتة قبل التصريف الثالث للفعل

Answer: Laila **has just finished** her homework.

لاحظ إذا وضع (yet) بين الأقواس عليك نفي الجملة في زمن المضارع التام ووضعها اخر الجملة.

since / for

إذا طلب منك التحويل من (since) إلى (for) أو العكس عليك اتباع الخطوات الموضحة بالامثلة.

Examples

A. I have taught English since 1992. (for)

يتبع (for) مدة زمنية فعليك حسابها كالتالي $2026 - 1992 = 34$ وتكون الاجابة كالتالي:

- I have taught English **for 34 years**.

B. She has travelled for ten years.

يتبع (since) توقيت محدد فعليك فعل التالي $2026 - 10 = 2016$ وتكون الاجابة كالتالي:

- She has travelled **since 2016**.

لاحظ : يمكن أن تكون المدة الزمنية أيام أو شهور

Exercises on Language**1 Rewrite the following sentences:**

1. Millions of tourists visit the Grand Canyon.

(already)

.....

2. I have seen the pyramids at night.

(never)

.....

3. Hani has watched a nice movie. (not)
.....
4. My friends saw this movie. (have)
.....
5. I have already studied for the exam. (yet)
.....
6. Shahenda wrote three stories last month. (already)
.....
7. We cleaned the classroom a short time ago. (just)
.....
8. They have lived in Alexandria for ten years. (since)
.....
9. Anas has never ridden a horse. (not)
.....
10. Nada hasn't come to the party yet. (already)
.....
11. I have just had my lunch. (yet)
.....
12. The teacher explained the lesson a short time ago. (just)
.....
13. I have learned English for seven years. (since)
.....
14. Samira has worked as a teacher for 10 years. (since)
.....
15. The train reached the station a short time ago. (just)
.....
16. They have lived in Cairo for five years. (since)
.....
17. Fatma phoned us a minute ago. (just)
.....
18. Marwa watched that film on TV this evening. (already)
.....

19. We haven't visited the museum since 1998.

(for)

20. We visited the Pyramids in 2018.

(since)



Speaking

Ask and answer about our planet Earth and its wonders

Question

1. What is incredible about our planet Earth?

ما المذهل في كوكبنا الأرض؟

2. How old is Earth?

كم عمر الأرض؟

3. Why is the Amazon rainforest called the "lungs of the Earth"?

لماذا يُسمَّى غابة الأمازون المطيرة "رئتا الأرض"؟

4. What record does Mount Everest hold?

ما الرقم القياسي الذي تحمله قمة إيفرست؟

5. How does Earth's atmosphere help us?

كيف يساعدنا الغلاف الجوي للأرض؟

6. How much of the oceans have humans explored?

كم نسبة المحيطات التي استكشفها البشر؟

7. What's the most amazing natural wonder you have visited?

ماهي أذهل أعجوبة طبيعية قمت بزيارتها؟

8. Why do you like visiting it?

لماذا تحب زيارتها؟

Answer

Earth is full of wonders and some of them are truly incredible.

الأرض مليئة بالعجائب وبعضها مذهل حقاً.

Earth is around 4.5 billion years old.

يبلغ عمر الأرض حوالي ٤,٥ مليار سنة.

Because it produces a huge amount of the oxygen we breathe every day.

لأنها تنتج كمية كبيرة من الأكسجين الذي نتنفسه يومياً.

It is the highest mountain on Earth.

إنها أعلى جبل على الأرض.

It protects us from harmful radiation and keeps the planet warm enough to support life.

يحمينا من الإشعاعات الضارة ويحافظ على حرارة الأرض بما يكفي لدعم الحياة.

Humans have explored only about 5% of the oceans.

لقد استكشف البشر حوالي ٥% فقط من المحيطات.

The Great Barrier Reef.

الحاجز المرجاني العظيم.

Because it's like a magical underwater city.

لأنها تشبه مدينة سحرية تحت الماء.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2
1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Earth is the third in the solar system.
 a. space b. planet c. ocean d. gravity
2. Scientists were by the beauty of the stars in space.
 a. amazed b. frozen c. harmful d. percent
3. "....." means extremely surprising or amazing.
 a. Incredible b. Mysterious c. Harmful d. Unique
4. The Sahara Desert is one of the most places on Earth.
 a. frozen b. incredible c. harmful d. percent
5. The view from the top of the mountains was
 a. mysterious b. breathtaking c. harmful d. ordinary
6. To get the adjective from the word "harm", we add the suffix
 a. -able b. -ive c. -ful d. -ian
7. The antonym of "mysterious" is
 a. obvious b. weak c. artificial d. courageous
8. Plants produce oxygen that humans need to
 a. hold b. breathe c. explore d. develop
9. Scientists try to the environment from pollution.
 a. discover b. protect c. record d. produce
10. To form the noun from the word "radiate", we add the suffix
 a. -ation b. -ition c. -tion d. -ion

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
radiation - natural - produces - artificial - holds

Our planet Earth is full of wonders and amazing landscapes. It is around 4.5 billion years old. It has ❶ places such as mountains, rainforests, and oceans. The Amazon rainforest ❷ oxygen that humans breathe every day. Gravity is a strong force that ❸ the atmosphere in place. This atmosphere protects the planet from harmful ❹ and supports life on Earth.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I have written my report. (not)

2. He finished his homework earlier. (already)

3. Yara didn't visit the museum. (yet)

4. They haven't traveled to Alex since 2022. (for)

5. We finished lunch a moment ago (just)

4 Complete the following dialog:

Youssef is telling Omar about the documentary he has watched.

Omar : Have you watched the documentary about the Earth's wonders?

Youssef : Yes, I have ① it.

Omar : ② did it talk about?

Youssef : It talked about the Amazon rainforest.

Omar : Why is it important?

Youssef : Because it ③ a lot of oxygen.

Omar : ④ it talk about the oceans too?

Youssef : Yes, humans have explored only a small part.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"An amazing place on Earth"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. What is special about this place?
2. Why do you like it?
3. What have you learned about it?



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

species (n)	أنواع / فصائل	recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير
endangered (adj)	مهدد بالانقراض	extreme (adj)	شديد / قاسٍ

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير	waste (n)	نفايات
serious (adj)	خطير / جاد	weather (n)	الطقس
wisely (adv)	بحكمة	temperatures (n)	درجات الحرارة
nuclear (adj)	نووي	organizations (n)	منظمات / مؤسسات
technology (n)	التكنولوجيا	floods (n)	فيضانات
environmental (adj)	بيئي	storms (n)	عواصف
millions	ملايين	climate change (n)	تغير المناخ
solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	introduce (v) (d)	يقدم
forest (n)	غابة	increase (v) (d)	يزداد
droughts (n)	جفاف	warn (v) (ed)	يحذّر
air pollution (n)	تلوث الهواء	destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر
plastic (n)	بلاستيك	establish (v) (ed)	تنشئ

Definitions

extreme (adj)	شديد / قاسٍ	very strong, serious, or unusual	١. خطر
species (n)	أنواع / فصائل	a group of animals or plants that are the same	٢. اختفاء / انقراض
recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير	using old materials again to make new things	
endangered (adj)	مهدد بالانقراض	in danger or at risk ⁽¹⁾ of disappearing ⁽²⁾	

Expressions & Prepositions

solve problems	يحل المشكلات	depend on	يعتمد على
around the world	حول العالم	take action	يتخذ إجراءات
cut down	يقطع	use for	يستخدم لـ
in the last years	في السنوات الأخيرة	make positive changes	يجري تغييرات إيجابية
as a result	ونتيجة لذلك	in addition	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
produce electricity	ينتج الكهرباء	achieve goals	يحقق أهداف



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
problems	مشكلات	difficulties		solutions	حلول
endangered	مهدد بالانقراض	threatened		safe / protected	آمن / محمي
extreme	شديد / قاسي	severe		mild	لطيف / معتدل
positive	إيجابي	effective/ good		negative	سلبي
wisely	بحكمة	carefully		foolishly	بحماقة
better	أفضل	improved		worse	أسوأ

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	wisely
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	action
-ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	endangered
re-	تدل على التكرار أو العودة	recycling
un-	تعطي معنى النفي أو العكس	unusual
-al	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	environmental

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
cut	يقطع	cut	cut
lose	يفقد	lost	lost
rise	يرتفع	rose	risen
take	يأخذ	took	taken
make	يصنع / يقوم	made	made



weather / climate

• weather (n)

الطقس

- حالة الجو في مكان ما خلال فترة زمنية قصيرة (ساعات أو أيام قليلة)

Ex. The **weather** is sunny today.

• climate (n)

المناخ

- هو متوسط حالة الجو في منطقة معينة لفترة طويلة جداً (سنوات، عقود، أو حتى قرون)

Ex. The Sahara Desert has a very hot and dry **climate**.

Reading

SB Page (91)



استمع إلى النص

SB Page (91)

Do you think technology⁽¹⁾ can help solve environmental⁽²⁾ problems? How?

In the last 50 years, humans have cut down millions of trees and **destroyed**⁽³⁾ large areas of forest. **As a result**⁽⁴⁾, many animals have lost their natural homes, and some **species**⁽⁵⁾ have become **endangered**⁽⁶⁾. Scientists around the world have **warned**⁽⁷⁾ that **air pollution**⁽⁸⁾, **plastic waste**⁽⁹⁾, and **climate change**⁽¹⁰⁾ have **increased**⁽¹¹⁾ very quickly. Temperatures in many countries have risen, and the weather has become more **extreme**⁽¹²⁾, with **floods**⁽¹³⁾, **storms**⁽¹⁴⁾, and **droughts**⁽¹⁵⁾.

However, there is also good news. People around the world have started to **take action**⁽¹⁶⁾. Many countries have introduced **recycling**⁽¹⁷⁾ programs, and more families have used **solar panels**⁽¹⁸⁾ for clean energy. In addition, **organizations**⁽¹⁹⁾ have protected endangered animals, such as pandas, sea turtles, and elephants. Although the problems are serious, humans have made positive changes to protect the planet. And if we use modern technology **wisely**⁽²⁰⁾ to protect our environment, we will achieve our **goals**⁽²¹⁾ and make the Earth a better place to live in. The future **depends on**⁽²²⁾ what we do today.



١. التكنولوجيا
٢. بيئي
٣. دمرت
٤. ونتيجة لذلك
٥. فضائل / أنواع
٦. مهدد بالانقراض
٧. حذروا
٨. تلوث الهواء
٩. نفايات البلاستيك
١٠. التغير المناخي
١١. ارتفعت / زادت
١٢. قاس / شديد
١٣. فيضانات
١٤. عواصف
١٥. جفاف
١٦. يتخذ إجراءات
١٧. إعادة التدوير
١٨. ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
١٩. المنظمات
٢٠. بحكمة
٢١. أهداف
٢٢. يعتمد على

General Exercises



on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. _____ means very strong, serious, or unusual.
a. Extreme b. Natural c. Nuclear d. Environmental
2. _____ is a group of animals or plants that are the same.
a. Forest b. Species c. Floods d. Storm
3. _____ means using old materials again to make new things.
a. Recycling b. Disappearing c. Destroying d. Warning
4. To be _____ means to be in danger or at risk of disappearing.
a. protected b. safe c. improved d. endangered

Synonyms & Antonyms

5. Wisely" and "sensibly" are _____.
a. synonyms b. verbs c. nouns d. antonyms
6. "Better" and "worse" are _____.
a. verbs b. antonyms c. synonyms d. adjectives
7. "Protected" and "endangered" are _____.
a. verbs b. synonyms c. adjectives d. antonyms
8. The opposite of "problems" is _____.
a. difficulties b. solutions c. storms d. options
9. The desert has extreme heat. The word "_____" is similar in meaning to "extreme".
a. mild b. normal c. severe d. usual
10. The news brought a positive result. "_____" is opposite in meaning to "positive".
a. Negative b. Safe c. Dangerous d. Wise

Prefixes and suffixes

11. To get the noun of "act", we add the suffix "_____".
a. -ition b. -ion c. -ation d. -tion
12. The prefix "re-" in "recycling" means _____.
a. second b. not c. opposite d. again
13. To get the opposite of "usual", we add the prefix "_____".
a. in- b. un- c. ir- d. dis-
14. The suffix "-ed" changes the verb "endanger" into a/an _____.
a. noun b. adverb c. adjective d. preposition
15. To get the adverb of "wise", we add the suffix "_____".
a. -er b. -ly c. -ity d. -ful

Guess the meaning & collocations

16. Many people enjoy walking through the _____ to see tall trees and wild animals. SB
a. drought b. forest c. storm d. flood
17. We must _____ our rivers and seas from plastic pollution. SB
a. cut down b. lose c. protect d. destroy
18. Egypt is establishing new projects that use _____ energy to produce electricity. SB
a. plastic b. solar c. dangerous d. endangered
19. Pandas are _____ animals. SB
a. extreme b. endangered c. destroyed d. weak
20. A/An _____ can make farmers lose their crops and animals. SB
a. drought b. solar panel c. forest d. environment
21. The weather has become more _____, with strong storms and high temperatures in summer. SB
a. protected b. extreme c. saved d. mild
22. Zoos protect rare _____.
a. temperatures b. species c. floods d. storms
23. _____ have risen in many countries.
a. Temperatures b. Species c. Panels d. Organizations

24. We must work hard to _____ our goals.
 a. ignore b. fail c. achieve d. worsen
25. Trees _____ the environment from harmful pollution.
 a. protect b. harm c. destroy d. ignore
26. Technology must be used _____ to save time and energy.
 a. foolishly b. wisely c. negatively d. mildly
27. Humans have _____ positive changes to protect the planet in many ways.
 a. made b. got c. done d. taken
28. The future depends _____ what we do today.
 a. in b. on c. at d. with
29. Climate change is a _____ problem.
 a. positive b. wise c. serious d. safe

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

solar - do - climate change - solve - take

Many species of animals are endangered because humans destroy forests and pollute the environment. Scientists warn that extreme temperatures and ① _____ can cause floods, droughts, and storms. People can ② _____ action to protect nature by recycling and using ③ _____ energy. If we act wisely, we can ④ _____ problems and make the Earth a better place to live in.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

One summer, extreme rains caused a big flood in a small village. The water rose quickly and destroyed many houses, roads, and forests nearby. Villagers were scared and had to move to safer places. Humans worked together to protect children, animals, and their belongings. Scientists warned that climate change made weather more extreme. The villagers decided to take action. **They** built stronger walls, planted trees near the river, and started recycling. They also used solar energy to help the environment. Slowly, the village became safe again, and people promised to act wisely to prevent future floods.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The villagers were _____ when extreme rains caused a big flood in their village.
 a. happy b. scared c. cheerful d. amazed

2. The word "wisely" means

- a. carelessly b. foolishly c. carefully d. negatively

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage?

.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

.....

5. What else can villagers do to help the environment?

.....



Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED (100) words:

to your friend Adam to tell him how to protect our planet. Your name is Youssef and your email address is youssef2008@student.com. Your friend's email is adam16@student.com.

 **New Message** Close Print Close

To

From

Subject

.....

.....

.....

Cc Bcc

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Send

 |     

 | 



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

expert (n)	خبير	environment (n)	البيئة
suffer from (v)	يعاني من	reuse (v) (d)	يعيد استخدام
reduce pollution	يقلل التلوث		

المفردات الإضافية

Vocabulary

issue (n)	قضية/مسألة	rubbish (n)	نفايات/قمامة
living things (n)	الكائنات الحية	besides (adv)	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
materials (n)	مواد	exactly (adv)	بالضبط/تمامًا
topic (n)	موضوع	affect (v) (ed)	يؤثر على
oxygen (n)	أكسجين	recycle (v) (d)	يعيد تدوير
cloth bags (n)	حقائب قماشية	create (v) (d)	ينشئ/يخلق
future generations (n)	أجيال المستقبل	harm (v) (ed)	يؤذي/يضر
responsibility (n)	مسئولية	conserve (v) (d)	يحافظ على



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
difference	فرق / اختلاف	change		similarity	تشابه
provide	يوفر	give		take away	يسحب
ordinary	عادي	normal		extraordinary	غير عادي/خارق
reduce	يقلل/يخفض	decrease		increase	يزيد
turn off	يطفى/يغلق	switch off		turn on/ switch on	يفتح
likely	محتمل	probable/ possible		unlikely	غير محتمل

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
re-	تعني مرة أخرى / إعادة	reuse
-ence	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	difference
-al	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	environmental
-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	pollution / generation

Expressions & Prepositions

seem to	يبدو أن	stay clean	يبقى نظيفًا
make a difference	يحدث تغييرًا	think about	يفكر في
save energy	يوفر الطاقة	throw away	يرمي/يتخلص من
important for	مهم لـ/ضروري لـ	on the ground	على الأرض
learn about	يتعلم عن	instead of	بدلاً من

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
drive	يسوق	drove	driven
throw	يرمي/يلقي	threw	thrown

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 instead of / instead

• **instead of** + noun / gerund بمعنى بدلاً من

Ex. She walked to school **instead of** taking the bus.

• **instead** تأتي عادة في نهاية الجملة بمعنى "بدلاً من ذلك"

Ex. I didn't take the bus. I walked **instead**.

2 seem to be + (adj. صفة / noun اسم / v.ing يبدو وكأنه)

Ex. The problem **seems to be** serious.

- Our planet **seems to be** facing many challenges.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We decided to walk taking the bus.

a. instead of b. instead c. rather d. alternatively

2. Ali can't speak. He seems to be

a. illness b. sickness c. ill d. disease

Reading

SB Page (95)

SB Page (95)

استمع إلى النصوص



- Read the following dialog.

Reporter: Our planet seems to be facing many challenges. Could you tell us what the biggest problems are?

Environmental Expert: Yes, Earth is **suffering from**⁽¹⁾ pollution, cutting down **forests**⁽²⁾, and **climate change**⁽³⁾. These are **serious**⁽⁴⁾ issues that **affect**⁽⁵⁾ all living things.

Reporter: What simple actions can ordinary people take to help?

Environmental Expert: People can **reduce**⁽⁶⁾ waste, **reuse**⁽⁷⁾ **materials**⁽⁸⁾, and recycle old things. Even small actions can make a big difference when many people do them.

Reporter: **Energy**⁽⁹⁾ use is also a big **topic**⁽¹⁰⁾. What can we do to **save**⁽¹¹⁾ energy?

Environmental Expert: Turning off lights when they are not needed, using less water, and choosing to walk or cycle **instead of**⁽¹²⁾ driving are all great ways to reduce **pollution**⁽¹³⁾.

Reporter: Trees seem very important for the Earth. Why is that?

Environmental Expert: Trees clean the air, give us oxygen, and **provide**⁽¹⁴⁾ homes for animals and birds.

Reporter: Finally, do you think it is important for people to learn about the environment?

Environmental Expert: Sure. When people learn about the environment, they are more likely to protect it. Small actions, if done by millions, can create a huge positive change for the Earth's future.

١. تعاني من
٢. غابات
٣. التغير المناخي
٤. خطيرة
٥. تؤثر على
٦. يقلل
٧. يعيد استخدام
٨. مواد
٩. الطاقة
١٠. موضوع
١١. يوفر
١٢. بدلا من
١٣. تلوث
١٤. يوفر

SB Page (96)

Read and identify the following dialog:

Aya : What problems is our Earth facing today?

Nour : I think pollution and cutting down trees are the most important.

Aya : Yes, that's true. Why is pollution dangerous?

Nour : Because it makes the air and water dirty besides it can **harm**⁽¹⁾ animals.

Aya : Also we should recycle materials to help our environment stay clean.

Nour : Let's also walk to school instead of using cars.

Aya : Together, we can make a big difference.

١. يؤذي



SB Page (96)

- Complete the dialog:

Bassem : Hi, Maged. I've been thinking about the environmental **challenges**.

Hany : That's a great topic! we need to take actions to protect our environment.

Bassem : Yes, I know. **Let's** recycle old things instead of throwing them away.

Hany : Exactly! Recycling helps **reduce** pollution.

Bassem : **That's smart**. Let's use cloth bags instead of plastic.

Hany : Good idea! **How about** planting more trees in our gardens?

Bassem : I love that! Trees clean the air. We can make a difference if we work together.



SB Page (97)

SAVE THE EARTH!

"Small actions make a big difference"

Why should we save the Earth?

- Because our planet gives us air, water and life.
- Pollution and wastes are harming animals and people.
- We must protect it for **future generations**⁽¹⁾.

١. أجيال المستقبل.
٢. يعيد تدوير

What can we do?

- **Recycle**⁽²⁾ plastic, paper, and glass.
- Reduce waste-don't throw rubbish on the ground.
- Reduce using plastic bags and plastic bottles.
- Plant trees and save energy.
- Protect animals and clean your area.
- Join your school "Green Team".
- Let's work together to keep our planet clean and green!

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms & Antonyms

- It is an ordinary day. "Ordinary" is similar in meaning to
a. abnormal b. extraordinary c. normal d. unusual
- We should reduce waste. "....." is the opposite of "reduce".
a. Increase b. Provide c. Decrease d. Prevent
- The synonym of "turn off" is
a. switch on b. turn on c. switch off d. turn down

6. The antonym of "difference" is
 a. similarity b. change c. giving d. bridge
7. The synonym of "provide" is
 a. withhold b. give c. take d. send

Prefixes & Suffixes

8. To form a noun from the verb "differ", we add the suffix
 a. -ment b. -ness c. -ence d. -ion
9. We can add the prefix to the word "use" to mean use again.
 a. dis- b. un- c. in- d. re-
10. The noun from the verb "generate" can be formed by adding the suffix
 a. -ation b. -ion c. -ition d. -tion

Guess the meaning & collocations

11. Our planet is many challenges because of pollution.
 a. facing b. telling c. providing d. learning about
12. Could you us the main causes of pollution?
 a. face b. tell c. take action d. provide homes
13. Many rivers are chemical waste from factories.
 a. learning about b. facing c. suffering from d. providing
14. People should to reduce pollution.
 a. take action b. tell us c. learn about d. provide
15. People should walk or cycle instead driving short distances.
 a. off b. with c. from d. of
16. The city suffers from severe
 a. oxygen b. pollution c. forest d. environment
17. Water is for all living creatures to survive.
 a. avoided b. needed c. refused d. agreed
18. Trees give us, which is important for breathing.
 a. oxygen b. climate c. environment d. actions
19. Protecting the is important for the future of the planet.
 a. forest b. oxygen c. pollution d. environment
20. - Pollution can the health of living things.
 a. create b. conserve c. affect d. reuse
21. People are suffering from the effects of
 a. happiness b. climate change c. toys d. music
22. We must the forests to keep the air clean.
 a. ignore b. destroy c. protect d. hide

Unit 12 Our Incredible Earth

23. Solar panels provide a clean source of
 a. story b. oxygen c. loyalty d. energy
24. We should always turn off the lights to energy.
 a. save b. reduce c. provide d. reuse
25. Cleaning rivers helps to pollution.
 a. provide b. recycle c. reduce d. reuse
26. Learning about the environment helps future
 a. generations b. hunters c. humans d. oxygen
27. Trees homes for birds and animals.
 a. welcome b. protect c. take d. provide
28. Small actions, if done by millions, can create a huge
 a. positive change b. negative effect c. law d. balance

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

SB

conserve - recycle - harm - reduce - save

Our planet needs our help! We can ① old materials like paper and plastic. We should ② the things we throw away and use again. Let's ③ nature and keep animals safe. Stop pollution by keeping the air and water clean. We must ④ energy and protect our beautiful planet every day!



Speaking skills

1 Asking and answering questions about How to protect the environment in daily life:

Questions

1. What are the biggest problems our planet is facing?

ما هي أكبر المشاكل التي يواجهها كوكبنا؟

2. What simple actions can ordinary people take to help?

ما هي الإجراءات البسيطة التي يمكن للأشخاص العاديين القيام بها للمساعدة؟

Answers

The biggest problems are pollution, cutting down forests, and climate change.

أكبر المشاكل هي التلوث، قطع الغابات، وتغير المناخ.

People can reduce waste, reuse materials, and recycle old things. Turning off lights when not needed and walking instead of driving can also help.

يمكن للناس تقليل النفايات، إعادة استخدام المواد، وإعادة تدوير الأشياء القديمة. إطفاء الأنوار عند عدم الحاجة والمشى بدل القيادة يمكن أن يساعد أيضًا.

Questions

3. Why are trees important for the Earth?

لماذا تعتبر الأشجار مهمة للأرض؟

4. Is it important for people to learn about the environment?

هل من المهم أن يتعلم الناس عن البيئة؟

Answers

Trees clean the air, give us oxygen, and provide homes for animals and birds.

تنظف الأشجار الهواء، تعطينا الأكسجين، وتوفر مساكن للحيوانات والطيور.

Yes. When people learn about the environment, they are more likely to protect it. Small actions by millions of people can create a huge positive change.

نعم. عندما يتعلم الناس عن البيئة، يكونون أكثر احتمالاً لحمايتها. الإجراءات الصغيرة التي يقوم بها الملايين يمكن أن تحدث تغييرًا إيجابيًا كبيرًا

2 When you speak about environmental problems and solutions, organize your ideas

• عندما نتحدث عن المشاكل البيئية والحلول، نظم أفكارك

1. State the problem حدد المشكلة

Ex: Our planet is facing

2. Suggest solutions: اقترح حلول

Ex: We can recycle and

3. Explain the reason اشرح السبب

Ex: This helps reduce

4. End with a positive message انهي برسالة إيجابية

Ex: Together, we can make

3 Useful Expressions

تعبيرات هامة

A) تعبيرات تستخدم لتقديم الاقتراح

- Let's + inf. هيا بنا

- How about + v.ing? و ماذا عنك؟

Ex: Let's use cloth bags instead of plastic.

- How about planting more trees in our gardens?

B) تعبيرات تستخدم للإعجاب أو الموافقة

Exactly.

Yes, I know.

That's smart.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Cutting down too many trees can many animal species.
a. save b. harm c. improve d. train
- helps protect the environment and reduces waste.
a. Traveling b. Building c. Recycling d. Cooking
- The antonym of "provide" is
a. give b. take away c. protect d. welcome
- To get the adjective from the noun "environent", we add the suffix
a. -ful b. -ed c. -al d. -ing
- We turn off lights to energy daily.
a. protect b. save c. prevent d. reuse

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

off - affect - from - generations - reuse

Many people think about the environment today. Pollution is a big issue that can ❶ living things. Some animals suffer ❷ dirty air and water. Experts say we must reduce pollution and save energy. We should ❸ materials, recycle rubbish, and use cloth bags. Besides, we must keep places clean. This is our responsibility to protect future ❹

3 Complete the following dialog:

Layla and Omar are talking about the importance of plants to our environment.

Layla : What are you doing?

Omar : I am reading a book about ❶

Layla : A book about plants! ❷ does it contain?

Omar : It contains information about different types of plants.

Layla : ❸ plants important for the environment?

Omar : Yes, plants are important for the environment.

Layla : What do plants give us?

Omar : They provide oxygen and keep the air ❹

Review on Unit 12

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

mountains (n)	جبال	rainforest (n)	غابة مطيرة
wonders (n)	عجائب	gravity (n)	الجاذبية
incredible (adj)	مدهش / لا يُصدق	atmosphere (n)	الغلاف الجوي
landscapes (n)	مناظر طبيعية	radiation (n)	إشعاع
species (n)	أنواع / فصائل	recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير
endangered (adj)	مهدد بالانقراض	natural (adj)	طبيعي
extreme (adj)	شديد / قاسٍ	climate (n)	المناخ
expert (n)	خبير	environment (n)	البيئة
suffer from (v)	يعاني من	reuse (v) (d)	يعيد استخدام
reduce pollution	يقلل التلوث		

Form التكوين

• يتكون زمن المضارع التام من:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + have ('ve) + p.p. التصريف الثالث للفعل
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + has ('s) + p.p. التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. They have ('ve) ridden a horse.
- He has ('s) travelled by plane.

Negative النفي

• نفي زمن المضارع التام كالآتي:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + have not (haven't) + p.p.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + has not (hasn't) + p.p.

Ex. I have not (haven't) played a musical instrument.
- He has not (hasn't) driven a car.

Question السؤال

• السؤال بـ «هل» :

Have + (you / they / we / اسم جمع) + p.p. ...?

Has + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + p.p. ...?

Ex. Have you ever been to a football match?

- Has she ever ridden a horse?

- No, she hasn't.

- Yes, she has.

للإجابة عن السؤال بـ «هل» تقول:

• السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

have + (you / they / we / اسم جمع) + p.p. ...? كلمة استفهام

has + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + p.p. ...? كلمة استفهام

Ex. A: What have you read?

B: I've read a story.

Usage الاستخدام

• يستخدم زمن المضارع التام في الحالات الآتية:

١- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثه (تجارب حياتية Experiences in life):

Ex. I have visited the Grand Canyon.

٢- لوصف حدث بدأ في الماضي و مازال مستمرًا حتى الآن :

Ex. Egyptians have depended on the Nile for thousands of years.

Ex. I have just finished my homework.

٣- لوصف حدث تم حديثًا «أى قبل قليل»

• تأتي الكلمات الآتية عادة مع زمن المضارع التام:

- just	حاليًا / تَوًّا	- recently	حديثًا
- already	بالفعل	- lately	مؤخرًا
- yet	حتى الآن	- ever	سابقًا / من قبل
- since	منذ	- never	أبداً
- for	لمدة		

just تَوًّا

• تدل (**just**) على أن الحدث وقع منذ فترة قصيرة - وتستخدم مع الجمل المثبتة - وتوضع بالجملة بعد

الفعل المساعد **have / has** وقبل التصريف الثالث:

Subject + has/ have + just + p.p.

Ex. I have just met Ali at the supermarket.

Ex. My mum has just made a cake.

بالفعل already

- تدل (already) على أن الحدث تم مسبقاً (قبل الوقت المتوقع) و تستخدم مع الجملة المثبتة إما في آخرها أو بعد **has/ have** وقبل التصريف الثالث للفعل.

Subject + **has/ have** + **p.p.** + **already.**
 Subject + **has/ have** + **already** + **p.p.**

- Ex. She **has played** in two concerts **already.**
 - She **has already written** a book of stories.

بعد/ حتى الان yet

- تستخدم "yet" مع زمن المضارع التام في آخر الجملة المنفية:

Subject + **hasn't/ haven't** + **p.p.** + **yet.**

- Ex. She **hasn't** been to another country **yet.**

- تستخدم ايضا في نهاية السؤال.

Has/ Have + **subject** + **p.p.** + **yet?**

- Ex. **Has** she **learnt** a musical instrument **yet?**

أبداً / مطلقاً never

- تستخدم للنفي و توضع بدلاً من **not**:

Subject + **has/ have** + **never** + **p.p.**

- Ex. I **have never spoken** Spanish.
 - My father **has never smoked.**

لمدة / منذ since

- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام مع **since** (ويأتي بعدها تعبير زمني يدل على توقيت بداية الحدث)

- Ex. I **have lived** in Tanta **since 2010.**

- وكذلك يستخدم مع **for** (ويأتي بعدها المدة الزمنية التي استغرقها الحدث حتى وقت الكلام):

- Ex. I **have lived** in Tanta **for 16 years.**

توقيت بداية الحدث + since		مدة زمنية + for
Friday - yesterday	الأيام - أمس	a day - two days - a week - 3 weeks
August - 2010	الشهور - السنين	a month - two months - a year - 2 years
2 o'clock	الساعات	an hour - four hours..... etc.
last (week - month - year...)	... السابق	the last (week - month - year.....)
		a short time - a long time

Ask and answer about our planet Earth and its wonders

Question

1. What is incredible about our planet Earth?

ما المذهل في كوكبنا الأرض؟

2. How old is Earth?

كم عمر الأرض؟

3. Why is the Amazon rainforest called the "lungs of the Earth"?

لماذا يُسمَّى غابة الأمازون المطيرة "رئتا الأرض"؟

4. What record does Mount Everest hold?

ما الرقم القياسي الذي تحمله قمة إيفرست؟

5. How does Earth's atmosphere help us?

كيف يساعدنا الغلاف الجوي للأرض؟

6. How much of the oceans have humans explored?

كم نسبة المحيطات التي استكشفها البشر؟

7. What's the most amazing natural wonder you have visited?

ماهي أذهل أعجوبة طبيعية قمت بزيارتها؟

8. Why do you like visiting it?

لماذا تحب زيارتها؟

Answer

Earth is full of wonders and some of them are truly incredible.

الأرض مليئة بالعجائب وبعضها مذهل حقاً.

Earth is around 4.5 billion years old.

يبلغ عمر الأرض حوالي ٤,٥ مليار سنة.

Because it produces a huge amount of the oxygen we breathe every day.

لأنها تنتج كمية كبيرة من الأكسجين الذي نتنفسه يومياً.

It is the highest mountain on Earth.

إنها أعلى جبل على الأرض.

It protects us from harmful radiation and keeps the planet warm enough to support life.

يحمينا من الإشعاعات الضارة ويحافظ على حرارة الأرض بما يكفي لدعم الحياة.

Humans have explored only about 5% of the oceans.

لقد استكشف البشر حوالي ٥% فقط من المحيطات.

The Great Barrier Reef.

الحاجز المرجاني العظيم.

Because it's like a magical underwater city.

لأنها تشبه مدينة سحرية تحت الماء.

1 Asking and answering questions about How to protect the environment in daily life:

Questions

1. What are the biggest problems our planet is facing?

ما هي أكبر المشاكل التي يواجهها كوكبنا؟

2. What simple actions can ordinary people take to help?

ما هي الإجراءات البسيطة التي يمكن للأشخاص العاديين القيام بها للمساعدة؟

3. Why are trees important for the Earth?

لماذا تعتبر الأشجار مهمة للأرض؟

4. Is it important for people to learn about the environment?

هل من المهم أن يتعلم الناس عن البيئة؟

Answers

The biggest problems are pollution, cutting down forests, and climate change.

أكبر المشاكل هي التلوث، قطع الغابات، وتغير المناخ.

People can reduce waste, reuse materials, and recycle old things.

يمكن للناس تقليل النفايات، إعادة استخدام المواد، وإعادة تدوير الأشياء القديمة. إطفاء الأنوار

Trees clean the air, give us oxygen, and provide homes for animals and birds.

تنظف الأشجار الهواء، تعطينا الأكسجين، وتوفر مساكن للحيوانات والطيور.

Yes. When people learn about the environment, they are more likely to protect it.

نعم. عندما يتعلم الناس عن البيئة، يكونون أكثر احتمالاً لحمايتها.

2 When you speak about environmental problems and solutions, organize your ideas

• عندما تتحدث عن المشاكل البيئية والحلول، نظم أفكارك

1. State the problem حدد المشكلة

Ex: Our planet is facing

3. Explain the reason اشرح السبب

Ex: This helps reduce

2. Suggest solutions: اقترح حلول

Ex: We can recycle and

4. End with a positive message

انهي برسالة إيجابية

Ex: Together, we can make

3 Useful Expressions

تعبيرات هامة

A) تعبيرات تستخدم لتقديم الاقتراح

- Let's + inf. هيا بنا

- How about + v.ing? وماذا عنك؟

Ex: Let's use cloth bags instead of plastic.

- How about planting more trees in our gardens?

B) تعبيرات تستخدم للاعجاب أو الموافقة

Exactly.

Yes, I know.

That's smart.

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وزدت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

The Amazon Rainforest is one of the most amazing places on Earth. It is special because it is very large and full of living things. Many plants, animals, and insects live there, and some cannot be found anywhere else. I like the Amazon Rainforest because it is green, beautiful, and full of life. I have learned that it is called the lungs of the Earth because it produces a lot of oxygen for people and animals. It also helps control the climate and rain. We must protect the Amazon Rainforest because it is important for the environment and future generations.

Lesson 3


New Message

To : adam16@student.com. Cc Bcc
From : youssef2008@student.com.
Subject : How We Can Protect Our Planet

Hi Adam,

I hope you are doing well. I want to tell you about some ways we can protect our planet. We should recycle our paper, plastic, and cans. Using solar energy and saving electricity can also help. Planting trees is very important. We should take care of animals and avoid polluting rivers and oceans. If everyone acts wisely, we can make the Earth a better place for humans, animals, and plants. Take care and try to help the environment!

Yours,
Youssef

Send









Al-Azhar Test

My favorite story is "The lions and the Mouse". I like it because it teaches us that even small creatures can help others. In the story, a little mouse helps a big lion by freeing him from a trap. This shows that kindness and helping others are very important. I also enjoy the adventure and excitement in the story. I always feel happy when I read it because it has a good lesson for everyone.

Test on Unit 12

Saving energy is very important for our Earth. Our planet gives us air, water, and life, so we must protect it. Using too much energy causes pollution and harms people and animals. Small actions make a big difference. We can save energy by turning off lights when we do not need them. We should unplug devices and use less water. Walking or riding a bike instead of using cars also helps save energy. Planting trees is good for the air. When we save energy, we help future generations. If we work together, we can keep our Earth clean and green.

Al Azhar

Test

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What is good for our health?
2. What does exercise do to our heart?

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

SB

- Aya** : What problems is our Earth facing today?
- Nour** : I think pollution and ① _____ down trees are the most important.
- Aya** : Yes, that's true. ② _____ is pollution dangerous?
- Nour** : Because it makes the air and water dirty besides it can harm animals.
- Aya** : Also we should ③ _____ materials to help our environment stay clean.

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Positive actions today can benefit future _____.
a. generations b. stories c. hunters d. signs
2. Columbus _____ America in 1492.
a. invented b. discovered c. breathed d. arrived
3. I _____ my homework already.
a. finish b. finished c. have finished d. finishes
4. She _____ the Grand Egyptian Museum twice this year.
a. has visited b. visited c. visit d. visiting

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. She has already wrote three stories (.....)
2. We has just clean the classroom. (.....)
3. I not have studied for the exam yet. (.....)
4. My friends have saw the new movie. (.....)

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

My name is Judy. I have a pen friend from England. Her name is Rebecca, I'm from EI Fayoum. It is a large city, with beautiful nature reserves nearby. I live with my parents and my brother in a flat. My grandparents live in a flat downstairs. On Saturdays, I usually get up early and help my grandmother with her shopping, then I read or do my homework. In the afternoon, I visit my friends or play computer games with my brother. My favourite subjects are maths and English. I'm happy to have a pen friend because I'm able to practise my English.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think it's a good idea to have pen friends? why?

2. How does Judy describe her city?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ----- .

- a. Giza b. Alexandria c. Cairo d. EI Fayoum

4. Judy plays computer games with her ----- .

- a. brother b. friends c. parents d. pen friend

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

"Your favourite story"

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

Test on Unit 12

A. Listening

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- The first city is famous for its
a. beaches b. colorful festivals c. mountains d. deserts
- Tourists go to the second city to
a. enjoy festivals b. climb mountains
c. visit museums d. swim and relax

B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. What makes the first city famous?

.....

4. Why do tourists like the second city?

.....

5. How are the two cities connected geographically?

.....

B. Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A place with many trees and heavy rain is called a
a. rainforest b. desert c. mountain d. village
- The prefix "re-" in "reuse" means
a. again b. not c. no d. second
- The Nile Valley has one of the most beautiful in the world.
a. landscapes b. lessons c. lakes d. languages
- The synonym of "brave" is
a. frightened b. coward c. fearful d. courageous

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

unique - lungs - home - gravity - normal

Our planet Earth is a truly incredible place, around 4.5 billion years old. It is ① to landscapes like the Sahara Desert. It is so huge that astronauts can actually see it from space. The Amazon rainforest acts as the " ② of the Earth," producing the oxygen we breathe. Although

we have only explored 5% of the oceans, Earth's ③ _____ and atmosphere protect us daily, making it a ④ _____ home for all living things.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

One day, an old man came to our village to visit a friend. His friend was a poor farmer. When the old man saw the farmer, he became very **pleased**. But he found that his friend was poor and sad, so he decided to help him and make him happy. The old man put his finger on a small piece of rock which suddenly turned into a piece of gold. He gave **it** to the poor farmer. But the old man saw that his friend was still unhappy, so he did the same thing again, but this time with a bigger piece of rock. However, the farmer was still sad. The old man became amazed and asked his friend "How can I make you happy my friend?" His friend replied, "I want you to give me your finger."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The farmer was still sad because he
 a. wanted more gold
 b. lost his farm
 c. wanted the old man's finger
 d. did not like gold
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to.....
 a. the piece of rock
 b. the piece of gold
 c. the farmer
 d. the old man

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage?
-
4. What does the underlined word "pleased" mean?
-
5. What does the farmer's final request show about his character?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Mowgli cut all his ties with the jungle and stayed only in the village.	☐	☐
2. Baloo, Bagheera, and the wolf brothers welcomed Mowgli as family.	☐	☐
3. Mowgli helped humans protect their cattle and crops.	☐	☐
4. The story shows that Mowgli achieved balance between humans and nature.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What did Mowgli do to keep his connection with the jungle?

.....

6. How did Mowgli create balance between humans and nature?

.....

C. Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. She moved to Cairo in 2020. (since)

.....

2. We have learned about solar energy. (yet)

.....

3. I have never visited Luxor. (not)

.....

4. No, I haven't read this book. (Have)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Bassem and Hany are talking about environmental challenges.

SB

Bassem : Hi, Maged. I've been thinking about the environmental challenges .

Hany : That's a great topic! We need to take actions to ①
our environment.

Bassem : Yes, I know. Let's recycle old things instead of ②
them away.

Hany : Exactly! Recycling helps reduce pollution.

Bassem : That's ③ Let's use cloth bags instead of plastic.

Hany : Good idea! ④ about planting more trees
in our gardens?

Bassem : I love that! Trees clean the air. We can make a difference if we work
together.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Saving energy"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....
.....
.....

Review (4)

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

planet (n)	كوكب الأرض	generations (n)	أجيال
pollution (n)	التلوث	protect (v)	يحمي
deforestation (n)	إزالة الغابات	harm (v)	يضر
climate change (n)	تغير المناخ	take care of	يرعى
environment (n)	البيئة	instead of	بدلاً من
recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير	make a difference	يحدث فرق
cycling (n)	ركوب الدراجة	work together	نعمل معاً
energy (n)	الطاقة		



Audio Script SB Page (100)

Our planet⁽¹⁾ is important, and we all need to⁽²⁾ take care of it. Pollution⁽³⁾, deforestation⁽⁴⁾, and climate change⁽⁵⁾ are harming the environment⁽⁶⁾. We can help by recycling⁽⁷⁾, saving energy⁽⁸⁾, and planting trees. Using less plastic and walking or cycling⁽⁹⁾ instead of driving can also make a difference⁽¹⁰⁾. Everyone can do small things to protect the Earth. If we all work together, we can make the planet cleaner and healthier for future generations⁽¹¹⁾.

١. كوكب
٢. نحتاج أن
٣. التلوث
٤. التصحر (إزالة الغابات)
٥. تغير المناخ
٦. البيئة
٧. إعادة التدوير
٨. توفير الطاقة
٩. ركوب الدراجة
١٠. يحدث فرق
١١. أجيال

Lesson 1

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We can help the Earth by _____ trees.
a. planting b. cutting c. burning d. ignoring
2. Walking or cycling instead of driving can help reduce _____.
a. energy b. pollution c. recycling d. trees

B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. What are two ways we can use protect the Earth in our daily life?
.....
4. Why is it important for everyone to work together to protect the environment?
.....

2 Complete the following dialog:

Tom and James are talking about fairy tales.

Tom : I like reading fairy tales. They are fun!

James : Me too! I like the magical places and exciting stories.

Tom : ①

James : Yes! The characters, like heroes and princesses, are interesting.

Tom : ②

James : Right! They teach us important values in a fun way.

Tom : ③ ?

James : I like "Cinderella" because it shows that being kind can bring happiness.

Tom : ④ ?

James : Yes! I think fairy tales are always special because they make people imagine and dream.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

irrigation - precious - radiation - slippers - harsh

1. The desert has a very climate with little rain.
2. Sunscreen can protect your skin from harmful
3. Water is a resource that we should not waste.
4. She wore comfortable around the house.
5. Farmers use systems to supply water to their crops.

4 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Healthy Habits"

.....

.....

Lesson 2

1 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The desert is a dry and hot place with very little water. People and animals living there must adapt to survive. Camels, for example, can go a long time without water, and many desert animals are active at night when it is cooler. People in the desert often wear light clothing to stay cool and use special methods to find and save water. Life in the desert can be difficult, but it is also unique and full of interesting plants and animals.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. People and animals living in the desert must to survive.

a. adapt

b. stay

c. plant

d. water

Review 4

2. Many desert animals are active at _____ when it is cooler.
a. night b. morning c. noon d. evening
3. People in the desert wear _____ clothing to stay cool.
a. heavy b. dark c. light d. warm

B. Answer the following questions:

4. How do camels and other desert animals survive without much water?

5. Why is life in the desert difficult, but also interesting?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Objects fall to the ground because of _____.
a. wind b. friction c. gravity d. electricity
2. Many animals have special _____ to survive in their environment.
a. attraction b. invention c. decoration d. adaptation
3. We took many photos of the beautiful _____ during our trip to the mountains.
a. landscape b. classroom c. vehicle d. building
4. A decade is a period of _____ years.
a. one b. five c. ten d. twenty
5. Many different _____ live in the Amazon rainforest, each with its own culture and traditions.
a. mountains b. cities c. schools d. tribes
6. She _____ already finished her homework.
a. have b. is c. has d. was
7. She _____ TV when her friend called.
a. watched b. watches c. is watching d. was watching
8. By the time we arrived, the movie _____ already started.
a. is b. has c. had d. was
9. I _____ my homework yesterday.
a. do b. did c. doing d. does
10. I _____ TV when my friend called me last night.
a. watched b. was watching c. watch d. am watching

3 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. She was reading a book when the phone rang. (While)

2. They have studied English since 2012. (for)

3. The train had left before I arrived at the station. (After)

The Story

4 Answer the following questions :

1. How did Mowgli feel after defeating Shere Khan, and why was it a mix of victory and sadness?

2. Why did Mowgli decide to leave the wolf pack and join the human village?

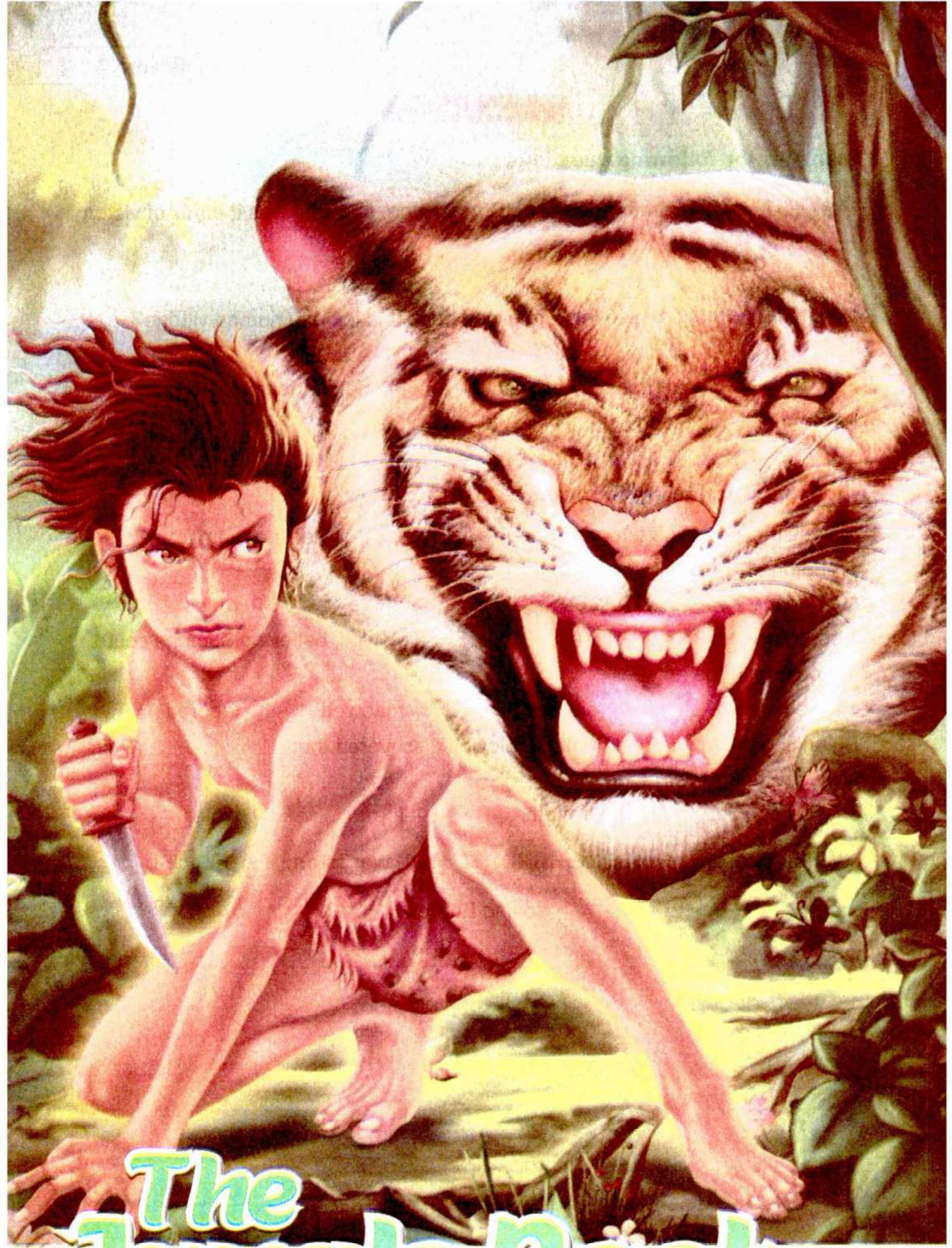
3. How did Mowgli balance life between the jungle and the human village, and what lesson does this teach?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Mowgli learned to care for the village's -----, protecting them from predators.
a. houses b. crops c. cattle d. roads
5. After the battle, many wolves ----- Mowgli, believing humans could not belong in the jungle.
a. welcomed b. rejected c. followed d. ignored
6. By uniting the jungle and humans, Mowgli discovered that ----- was stronger than either alone.
a. courage b. strength c. fire d. water

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Saving Energy"



The Jungle Book

Introduction to the Story مقدمة القصة

The Jungle Book by Rudyard Kipling

كتاب الأدغال للكاتب روديارد كبلينج

Introduction about the author

Rudyard Kipling (1865-1936) was a British writer, poet, and journalist. Born in India, he grew up surrounded by its culture and landscapes, which later inspired many of his stories.

Kipling's most famous work, "The Jungle Book" (1894), is a collection of tales that mix adventure with moral lessons. It explores themes of identity, loyalty, courage, and the relationship between humans and nature. In 1907, Kipling became the first English writer to win the Nobel Prize in literature.

مقدمة عن المؤلف

كان روديارد كبلينج (1865-1936) كاتباً وشاعراً وصحفيّاً بريطانيّاً. ولد في الهند، ونشأ محاطاً بثقافتها ومناظرها الطبيعية، والتي كانت لاحقاً مصدر إلهام للكثير من قصصه. أشهر أعمال كبلينج هو "كتاب الأدغال" (1894)، وهو مجموعة من الحكايات التي تمزج بين المغامرة والدروس الأخلاقية. يستكشف الكتاب موضوعات الهوية، والولاء، والشجاعة، والعلاقة بين البشر والطبيعة. وفي عام 1907، أصبح كبلينج أول كاتب إنجليزي يفوز بجائزة نوبل في الأدب.

مكان القصة Settings

In the heart of the Indian jungle.

في قلب الأدغال الهندية

Characters of the Story

شخصيات القصة

Mowgli: A human boy raised by wolves. He is brave and wise.

ماوگلی : ولد بشري تربي وسط الذئاب. هو شجاع وحكيم.



Mother Wolf: She saved Mowgli and raised him as her own son.

الذئبة الام : أنقذت ماوگلي وربته كأنه ابنها تماماً.



Shere Khan: A wild and cruel tiger. He is Mowgli's main enemy.

شيرخان : نمر بري وقاس. هو عدو ماوگلي الأساسي.



Baloo: A friendly bear who teaches Mowgli the Law of the Jungle.

بالو : دب ودود يعلم ماوگلي قانون الغابة.



Bagheera: A black panther who protects and advises Mowgli.

باغيرا : فهد أسود يحمي ماوكلي ويقدم له النصيحة.



Kaa: A giant python who helped save Mowgli from the monkeys..

كا: ثعبان ضخم ساعد في إنقاذ ماوكلي من القرود.



Bandar-log: Naughty monkeys who kidnapped Mowgli. They have no rules.

باندل لوج: قرود مشاكسة اختطفت ماوكلي. ليس لديهم قوانين.



Story Summary (ملخص القصة)

A baby boy named Mowgli gets lost in the jungle. A wolf family adopts him. Baloo the bear and Bagheera the panther teach him how to live in the forest. However, Shere Khan the tiger hates Mowgli and wants to kill him. Mowgli uses fire to fight the tiger and later defeats him in a big battle. Mowgli also lives in a human village for a while. In the end, Mowgli finds balance and belongs to both the jungle and the human world. He becomes a bridge between nature and people.

ملخص القصة:

يضيع طفل رضيع يدعى ماوكلي في الغابة، فتقوم عائلة من الذئاب بتبنيه. يعلمه الدب "بالو" والفهد "باغيرا" كيف يعيش في الغابة. ومع ذلك، يكره النمر "شيرخان" ماوكلي ويريد قتله. يستخدم ماوكلي النار لمحاربة النمر ثم يهزمه لاحقاً في معركة كبيرة. يعيش ماوكلي أيضاً في قرية بشرية لفترة من الوقت. في النهاية، يجد ماوكلي التوازن وينتمي إلى الغابة وعالم البشر معاً، ويصبح جسراً يربط بين الطبيعة والناس.

Story Time

The Jungle Book by Rudyard Kipling

Chapter One

Founding in the Jungle

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

jungle (n)	غابة/ أدغال	belong to (v. ed)	ينتمي إلى
astonished (adj)	مذهول/ مندهش	stood firmly (v)	وقف بثبات
human child (n)	طفل بشري	freshly killed ox	ثور مقتول حديثاً
cave (n)	كهف	the wolf pack (n)	قطيع الذئاب
tiger (n)	نمر	little frog (n)	ضفدع صغير
wild (adj)	بري	wander (v) (ed)	يتجول
The wild (n)	البرية	appear (v) (ed)	يظهر
bear (n)	الدب	demand (v) (ed)	يطالب
panther (n)	الفهد	support (v) (ed)	يدعم
law (n)	قانون	promise (v) (d)	يعد
price (n)	ثمن	train (v) (ed)	يدرّب
grow up (v) (grew)	نشأ	offer (v) (ed)	يعرض
the cubs (n)	الأشبال	accept (v) (ed)	يقبل
ways (n)	طرق	raise (v) (d)	يربي
forest (n)	غابة	remain (v) (ed)	يبقي
shadow (n)	ظل	destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر
swear (v) (swore)	يُقسم (يحلف)		



Definitions

wandered	تجول	moved or walked in a relaxed way
wild	بري	violent and aggressive
supported	دعم	gave help and encouragement
pack	قطيع	a group of animals
cubs	اشبال	babies of certain animals such as lion

- Read the following text.

In the heart of the Indian **jungle**⁽¹⁾, a baby boy **wandered**⁽²⁾ away from his village and **was discovered**⁽³⁾ by Father Wolf and Mother Wolf. At first, the animals were **astonished**⁽⁴⁾. Why should a human child **appear**⁽⁵⁾ in the wolves' cave? Shere Khan, the **wild tiger**⁽⁶⁾, **demanded**⁽⁷⁾ the child for himself, saying that humans **did not belong to**⁽⁸⁾ the wild. But Mother Wolf stood **firmly**⁽⁹⁾ against him, saying the boy was hers now. Baloo **the bear**⁽¹⁰⁾ and Bagheera **the black panther**⁽¹¹⁾ supported her. Baloo, who taught the Law of the Jungle to all young animals, promised to **train**⁽¹²⁾ the child. Bagheera offered the price of a freshly killed **ox**⁽¹³⁾ to **the wolf pack**⁽¹⁴⁾



so they would accept the boy. So the child, named Mowgli "**little frog**⁽¹⁵⁾", became part of the **Seeonee* wolf pack**⁽¹⁶⁾.

Mowgli grew up running with the **cubs**⁽¹⁷⁾, learning the ways of the forest. Though human in body, he was **raised**⁽¹⁸⁾ by the **laws**⁽¹⁹⁾ of the jungle. Yet the **shadow**⁽²⁰⁾ of Shere Khan **remained**⁽²¹⁾, for the tiger **swore**⁽²²⁾ he would one day destroy the man-cub.

في قلب غابات الهند، تاه طفل رضيع بعيداً عن قريته، فعثر عليه الذئبان. في البداية، اندهشت الحيوانات. لماذا يظهر طفل

بشري في كهف الذئاب؟ شير خان، النمر البري، طالب بالطفل لنفسه، قائلاً إن البشر لا ينتمون إلى البرية. لكن الذئبة الأم وقفت في وجهه بحزم، وأكدت أن الصبي أصبح ملكها.

دعمها بالو الدب وبغيرا النمر الأسود. وعد بالو، الذي كان يُعلّم قانون الغابة لجميع الحيوانات الصغيرة، بتدريب الطفل. وعرض بغيرا على قطيع الذئاب ثمنًا باهظًا، وهو ثور مذبوح حديثًا، ليقبلوا بالصبي. وهكذا أصبح الطفل، الذي سُمّي ماوكلّي "الضفدع الصغير"، جزءًا من قطيع ذئاب سيوني.

نشأ ماوكلّي يركض مع الأشبال، ويتعلم أساليب الغابة. ورغم أنه كان بشريًا في جسده، إلا أنه تربى وفقًا لقوانين الغابة. لكن ظلّ شبح شير خان يخيم على المكان، فقد أقسم النمر أنه سيقضي على ماوكلّي يومًا ما.

١. الغابة
٢. تجول
٣. اكتشف (وجد)
٤. مندهشين
٥. يظهر
٦. النمر البري
٧. طلب
٨. لا ينتمون إلى
٩. بثبات
١٠. الدب
١١. النمر الأسود
١٢. يدرّب
١٣. ثور
١٤. قطيع الذئاب
١٥. الضفدع الصغير
١٦. قطيع ذئاب تلال سيوني
١٧. الأشبال
١٨. تربى
١٩. قوانين
٢٠. طيف/تهديد
٢١. بقي
٢٢. أقسم

*هي تلال في الهند Seeonee

Exercises on Chapter 1

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

	T	F
1. The story takes place in the heart of the Indian jungle.	☐	☐
2. Father Wolf and Mother Wolf found a baby boy in their cave.	☐	☐
3. Shere Khan wanted to protect the human child.	☐	☐
4. Mother Wolf was afraid of Shere Khan and gave him the baby.	☐	☐
5. Baloo the bear promised to teach Mowgli the Law of the Jungle.	☐	☐
6. Bagheera is a black panther.	☐	☐
7. The wolf pack accepted Mowgli after Bagheera offered them an ox.	☐	☐
8. The name 'Mowgli' means 'strong tiger'.	☐	☐
9. Mowgli grew up learning the ways of the forest.	☐	☐
10. Shere Khan became Mowgli's best friend.	☐	☐

B Answer the following questions:

SB Questions

1. Based on the title, where do you think the story takes place?

تبعاً لعنوان القصة، أين دارت أحداث القصة في رأيك؟

- In the heart of the Indian Jungle.

- في قلب الأدغال في الهند.

2. Who discovered the baby boy in the jungle?

من اكتشف الولد الرضيع في الأدغال؟

- Father Wolf and Mother Wolf.

- الأب والأم الذئبة.

3. What did Shere Khan want to do with the child?

ماذا أراد شير خان أن يفعل بالطفل؟

- Shere Khan wanted to take the child for himself to kill him.

- أراد شير خان أن يأخذ الطفل لنفسه ليقتله.

4. What did Baloo, the bear, promise to do?

ماذا وعد بالو الدب أن يفعل؟

- Baloo, the bear, promised to train the child by teaching him the Law of the Jungle.

- وعد بالو الدب بتدريب الطفل بتعليمه قانون الغابة.

5. Who supported Mother Wolf?

من كان يدعم الذئبة الأم؟

- Mother Wolf was supported by Baloo the bear and Bagheera the black panther.

- كان الدب بالو والفهد الأسود باغيرا يدعمان الذئبة الأم.

6. What did Bagheera offer to the wolf pack?

ماذا قدم باغيرا لقطيع الذئاب

- A freshly killed ox.

- "ثورٌ قُتِلَ حديثاً".

Bit by Bit Questions

7. Did Shere Khan like Mowgli? Why or why not?

هل كان شير خان يحب ماوكلي؟ ولماذا؟

- No, Shere Khan did not like Mowgli. He believed humans did not belong in the jungle.

- لا، لم يكن شير خان يحب ماوكلي. كان يعتقد أن البشر لا مكان لهم في الغابة.

8. What name did the wolves give to the boy?

ما الاسم الذي أطلقه الذئاب على الطفل؟

- They named him Mowgli, which means "little frog."

- أطلقوا عليه اسم ماوكلي، والذي يعني "الضفدع الصغير".

9. What did Bagheera give to the wolf pack?

ماذا أعطى باغيرا لقطيع الذئاب؟

- He gave them a freshly killed ox.

- أعطاهم ثورًا قتل حديثاً.

10. What did Mowgli learn as he grew up?

ماذا تعلم ماوكلي وهو يكبر؟

- He learned the laws of the jungle.

- تعلم قوانين الغابة.

11. Who taught the Law of the Jungle to young animals?

من علم قانون الغابة لصغار الحيوانات؟

- Baloo the bear taught them.

- علمهم الدب بالو.

Critical thinking questions

B Answer the following questions:

SB Questions

1. How can you describe Mother Wolf?

كيف يمكنك وصف الذئبة الام؟

- Mother Wolf can be described as protective, brave, and daring.

- يمكن وصف الذئبة الام بأنها حامية وشجاعة وجريئة.

2. Why do you think the animals were surprised when they first discovered the human child in the cave?

لماذا في رأيك تفاجأت الحيوانات عندما اكتشفت الطفل البشري لأول مرة في الكهف؟

- Because it was unusual to find a human child in a wolves' cave.

- لأن العثور على طفل بشري في كهف ذئاب كان أمراً غير معتاد.

3. What animals do you expect to meet in a story called "The Jungle Book"?

ما الحيوانات التي تتوقع ان تقابلها في قصة تسمى كتاب الادغال؟

- I expect to meet tigers, wolves, bears and other wild animals.

- اتوقع ان اقابل نمور ودببة وذئاب وحيوانات برية اخرى.

Bit by Bit Critical Thinking Questions

4. Why do you think the author called Shere Khan's threat a "shadow" that remained?
لماذا برأيك وصف الكاتب تهديد شير خان بأنه "ظل" (تهديد) "باق"؟

- The author called it a "shadow" because a shadow follows you everywhere.

- أطلق عليه المؤلف اسم "الظل" لأن الظل يتبعك في كل مكان.

5. Why might it be important that Baloo teaches all young animals the Law of the Jungle?
لماذا قد يكون من المهم أن يعلم بالو جميع الحيوانات الصغيرة قانون الغابة؟

- It is important because the "Law" keeps order and peace.

- لأن "القانون" يحافظ على النظام والسلام.

6. Mother Wolf said the boy was "hers now." What does this tell you about family in this story?

قالت الذئبة الام إن الصبي "أصبح ملكها الآن". ماذا يُخبرنا هذا عن مفهوم العائلة في هذه القصة؟

- It tells us that in this story, family is about love and protection, not just blood.

- يُخبرنا هذا أن العائلة في هذه القصة تعني الحب والحماية، وليس مجرد صلة الدم.

7. Why did Bagheera think he had to pay a price (the ox) for Mowgli?

لماذا اعتقد باغييرا أنه يجب أن يدفع ثمناً (الثور) مقابل ماوكلّي؟

- Maybe he thought the wolves needed a good reason to feed and protect a human, since he is not their own kind.

- ربما اعتقد أن الذئاب بحاجة إلى سبب وجيه لإطعام وحماية إنسان، لأنه ليس من جنسهم.

Exercises on Chapter 1

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

SB Questions

	T	F
1. The animals believed that human didn't belong to the wild.	☐	☐
2. The man cub was discovered by Shere Khan, the fierce tiger.	☐	☐
3. Bagheera offered a freshly killed ox in exchange of the boy.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli means "little frog".	☐	☐

Bit by Bit Questions

	T	F
5. The baby boy was discovered by Father Wolf and Mother Wolf in their cave.	☐	☐
6. Shere Khan, the tiger, wanted to protect the human child.	☐	☐
7. Mother Wolf agreed to give the child to Shere Khan.	☐	☐
8. Baloo and Bagheera supported Mother Wolf's decision to keep the boy.	☐	☐
9. Bagheera offered the wolf pack the price of a freshly killed ox so they would accept Mowgli.	☐	☐
10. The child was named "Mowgli," which means "little wolf."	☐	☐

 Answer the following questions:

- Where did the story take place?

- How did the baby boy get lost in the jungle?

- Where was the baby boy discovered?

- What two animals supported Mother Wolf's decision?

- What did Bagheera do to help the wolf pack accept the boy?

- What group did the boy, Mowgli, become a part of?

- Why do you think the author called Shere Khan's threat a "shadow" that remained?

- What does the name "Mowgli" mean?

- Who found the baby boy?

- What does Baloo teach?

- What did Shere Khan swear to do?

Story Time

The Jungle Book by Rudyard Kipling

Chapter Two

The Law of the Jungle

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

law (n)	قانون	sign (n)	علامة / إشارة
training (n)	تدريب	force (n)	قوة
respect (n)	احترام	behavior (n)	سلوك
hunting grounds (n)	مناطق الصيد	happen (v) (ed)	يحدث
loyalty (n)	ولاء / إخلاص	save (v) (d)	يحمي / ينقذ
warning (n)	تحذير	trust (v) (ed)	يثق
self-defense (n)	دفاع عن النفس	hopeless (adj)	يائس / فاقد للأمل
tough (adj)	قاسي / صعب	python (n)	ثعبان الأصلية (ثعبان ضخم)
naughty (adj)	شقي / مشاكس	ruined (adj)	مدمر
leader (n)	قائد	struggle (n)	كفاح / صراع
chaotic (adj)	فوضوي	guardian (n)	حارس
promise (n)	وعد	strength (n)	قوة
creatures (n)	كائنات / مخلوقات	friendship (n)	صداقة
order (n)	نظام	hunt (v) (ed)	يصاد
honor (n)	احترام	rescue (v) (d)	ينقذ
pupil (n)	تلميذ	kidnap (v) (ped)	يختطف
adventure (n)	مغامرة	storm (v) (ed)	يقتحم / يهاجم بقوة
coils (n)	لفائف (تستخدم لوصف جسم الثعبان عندما يلتف حول فريسته)	scare (v) (d)	يُخيف

Bandar-log:

• هو مصطلح ابتكره الكاتب في القصة ويشير لمجموعة من القرود يعيشون بلا قائد ولا يحترمون قانون الغابة.



Definitions

scared	خائف / مذعور	frightened ⁽¹⁾ of something or nervous about something
warning	تحذير	a sign ⁽²⁾ to help avoid danger ⁽³⁾
tough	قاسي	difficult to do
naughty	شقي / مشاكس	liking to play tricks ⁽⁴⁾ or cause trouble ⁽⁵⁾
hopeless	يائس / فاقد للأمل	feeling no hope
kidnapped	مخطوف	taken away by force ⁽⁶⁾

١. خائف
٢. علامة
٣. خطر
٤. خدع
٥. يسبب مشاكل
٦. قوة

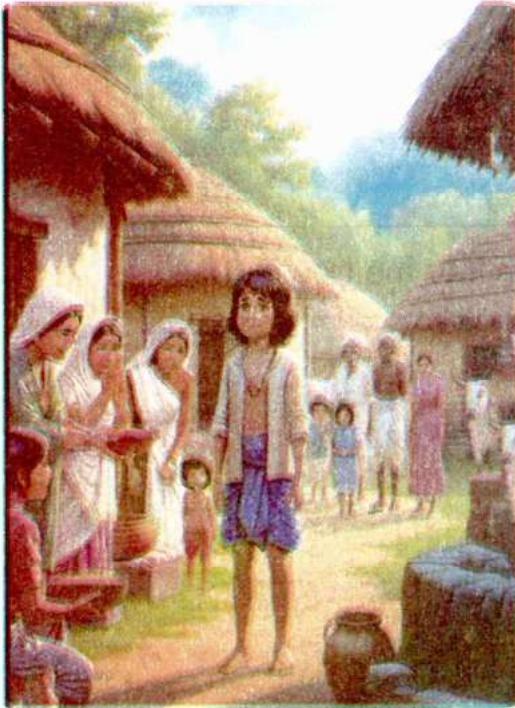
- Read the following text. Who rescued Mowgli?

Baloo began Mowgli's **training**⁽¹⁾ in the **Law of the**⁽²⁾ jungle. He taught him **respect**⁽³⁾ for the **hunting grounds**⁽⁴⁾, the importance of **loyalty**⁽⁵⁾ and the **warning cries**⁽⁶⁾ of different animals.

Bagheera added lessons of hiding, climbing, and **self-defense**⁽⁷⁾. Though sometimes **tough**⁽⁸⁾, Mowgli loved his teachers and followed their advice.

Yet not all **creatures**⁽⁹⁾ followed the law. One day, the **naughty**⁽¹⁰⁾ Bandar-log, the monkey, **kidnapped**⁽¹¹⁾ Mowgli. They carried him high into the tress, saying that they would make him their **leader**⁽¹²⁾. But the Bandar-log were **chaotic**⁽¹³⁾ without order or **honor**⁽¹⁴⁾. Mowgli soon realized their false **promises**⁽¹⁵⁾.

Baloo and Bagheera, **hopeless**⁽¹⁶⁾ to save their pupil, asked for help from Kaa, the giant **python**⁽¹⁷⁾. Together, they **stormed**⁽¹⁸⁾ the monkeys' **ruined**⁽¹⁹⁾ city. In a **wild struggle**⁽²⁰⁾, Kaa's **coils**⁽²¹⁾ and the **guardians' strength**⁽²²⁾ scared and **drove away**⁽²³⁾ the Bandar-log. Mowgli was saved, **grateful for**⁽²⁴⁾ the loyalty of his friends.



This adventure taught him that not all who call themselves friends can be trusted. True **friendship**⁽²⁵⁾, he realized, came from loyalty and respect.

١. تدريب
٢. قانون الغابة
٣. احترام
٤. مناطق الصيد
٥. ولاء
٦. صرخات تحذير
٧. دفاع عن النفس
٨. قاس
٩. كائنات
١٠. شقي / مشاكس
١١. اختطف
١٢. قائد
١٣. فوضوي
١٤. شرف
١٥. وعود
١٦. يائس
١٧. ثعبان الأصلة (بايثون)
١٨. اقتحم / هاجم بقوة
١٩. مُدْمَر
٢٠. صراع برئ / متوحش
٢١. لفائف / حلقات (جسم الثعبان)
٢٢. قوة الحراس
٢٣. طرد / أبعد
٢٤. ممتن لـ
٢٥. صداقة

بدأ بالو بتدريب ماوكلي على قوانين الغابة، فعلمه احترام مناطق الصيد، وأهمية الولاء، وأصوات التحذير التي تُطلقها الحيوانات المختلفة. وأضاف باغيرا دروساً في الاختباء والتسلق والدفاع عن النفس. ورغم قسوته أحياناً، أحب ماوكلي معلميه واتبع نصائحهم. لكن لم تلتزم جميع المخلوقات بالقانون. ففي أحد الأيام، اختطف القرود المشاغبة (بندر لوج) ماوكلي، وحملوه عالياً إلى أعلى الأشجار، زاعمين أنهم سيجعلونه قائدهم. لكن البندر لوج كانوا فوضويين بلا نظام أو شرف. وسرعان ما أدرك ماوكلي زيف وعودهم. وبسبب عجز بالو وبغيرا عن إنقاذ تلميذهما، طلبا العون من كا، الثعبان العملاق. واقتحموا مدينة القرود المدمرة. في صراع عنيف، أرعبت لفائف كا وقوة الحراس بندر لوج وأجبرتهم على الفرار. نجا ماوكلي، بفضل وفاء أصدقائه. علمته هذه المغامرة أن ليس كل من يدعي الصداقة جديراً بالثقة. أدرك أن الصداقة الحقيقية تنبع من الوفاء والاحترام.

Exercises on

Chapter 2

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

SB Questions

	T	F
1. Baloo taught Mowgli how to hunt animals only.	☐	☐
2. Bagheera's lessons included hiding and climbing.	☐	☐
3. The Bandar-log made Mowgli their leader.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli learned that loyalty and respect are parts of true friendship.	☐	☐

Bit by Bit Questions

	T	F
5. Mowgli disliked his teachers because they were tough.	☐	☐
6. The Bandar-log respected the Law of the Jungle.	☐	☐
7. The monkeys kidnapped Mowgli and took him high into the trees.	☐	☐
8. Baloo and Bagheera asked Kaa for help.	☐	☐
9. The monkeys' city was well organized and quiet.	☐	☐
10. Kaa helped save Mowgli using his strength.	☐	☐

B Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

1. Who began Mowgli's training?

- Baloo began Mowgli's training.

من الذي بدأ تدريب ماوكلي؟

- بدأ "بالو" تدريب ماوكلي.

2. Which animal helped Baloo and Bagheera save Mowgli?

- Kaa, the giant python, helped them save Mowgli.

أي حيوان ساعد "بالو" و"باغيرا" في إنقاذ ماوكلي؟

- "كا"، ثعبان الأصلة العملاق، هو من ساعدهم في إنقاذ ماوكلي.

3. How did Mowgli feel after he was saved?

- Mowgli felt grateful for the loyalty of his friends.

كيف شعر ماوكلي بعد إنقاذه؟

شعر ماوكلي بالامتنان لولاء أصدقائه.

4. Who kidnapped Mowgli? Why?

من الذي اختطف ماوكلي؟ ولماذا؟

- The Bandar-log kidnapped Mowgli because they wanted to make him their leader.
اختطف "البندر-لوج" (القرود) ماوكلي لأنهم أرادوا أن يجعلوه قائداً لهم.

5. What kind of animal is Kaa?

ما هو نوع الحيوان الذي يمثله "كا"؟

- Kaa is a giant python.
-"كا" هو ثعبان أصلة (بايثون) عملاق.

6. How is the behavior of Bandar-log described in the story?

كيف تم وصف سلوك "البندر-لوج" في القصة؟

- The Bandar-log are chaotic and without order or honor.

- "البندر-لوج" (القرود المشاكسة) فوضويون، وليس لديهم نظام أو شرف.

7. What did Baloo teach Mowgli?

ماذا علم "بالو" لماوكلي؟

- Baloo taught him respect for the hunting grounds, the importance of loyalty and the warning cries of different animals.

- علمه بالو احترام مناطق الصيد، وأهمية الولاء، وصرخات التحذير الخاصة بالحيوانات المختلفة.

8. Who taught Mowgli hiding, climbing, and self-defense?

من الذي علم ماوكلي الاختباء، والتسلق، والدفاع عن النفس؟

- Bagheera.

- "باغيرا".

9. How did Mowgli feel about his teachers?

كيف كان شعور ماوكلي تجاه معلميه؟

- Mowgli loved his teachers.

- كان ماوكلي يحب معلميه.

10. Who were the Bandar-log?

من هم "البندر-لوج"؟

- They were naughty monkeys.

- هم القرود المشاكسة.

11. What did the Bandar-log do to Mowgli one day?

ماذا فعل "البندر-لوج" لماوكلي ذات يوم؟

- They kidnapped Mowgli.

- قاموا باختطاف ماوكلي.

12. Where did the monkeys carry Mowgli?

إلى أين حملت القرود ماوكلي؟

- They carried him high into the trees.

- حملوه عالياً إلى الأشجار.

13. What did the Bandar-log promise Mowgli?

بماذا وعد "البندر-لوج" ماوكلي؟

- They promised to make him their leader.

- وعدوه بأن يجعلوه قائداً لهم.

14. Where did they fight the Bandar-log?

أين حاربوا "البندر-لوج"؟

- They fought in the monkeys' ruined city.

- حاربوهم في مدينة القرود الخربة (المدممة).

15. How did Kaa help save Mowgli?

كيف ساعد "كا" في إنقاذ ماوكلي؟

- Kaa used his coils to scare and drive away the monkeys.

- استخدم "كا" لفائف جسده لإخافة وطرد القرود.

Critical thinking questions

SB Questions

1. Why do you think Baloo taught Mowgli the cries of different animals?

لماذا تعتقد أن "بالو" علم ماوكلي صرخات الحيوانات المختلفة؟

- He taught him the warning cries to help him stay safe and avoid danger.

- علمه صرخات التحذير لمساعدته على البقاء آمناً وتجنب الخطر.

2. What does the story teach us about the difference between true friends and false friends?

ماذا تعلمنا القصة عن الفرق بين الأصدقاء الحقيقيين والأصدقاء المزيفين؟

- It teaches that true friends show loyalty and respect, like Baloo and Bagheera, while false friends, like the Bandar-log, make false promises.

- تعلمنا أن الأصدقاء الحقيقيين يظهرون الولاء والاحترام، مثل "بالو" و"باغيرا"، بينما الأصدقاء المزيفون، مثل "البندر-لوج"، يقطعون وعوداً كاذبة.

3. What kind of lessons do you think Mowgli might learn from Baloo and Bagheera in the jungle?

ما الدروس التي تعتقد أن ماوكلي قد يتعلمها من بالو وباغيرا في الغابة؟

- Mowgli learns that survival in the jungle requires more than just strength; it requires resourcefulness and wisdom.

- يتعلم ماوكلي أن البقاء على قيد الحياة في الغابة يتطلب أكثر من مجرد القوة؛ فهو يتطلب الحيلة والحكمة.

4. What do you think might happen if someone in the jungle breaks the "Law of the jungle"?

ماذا تعتقد أنه قد يحدث إذا خالف أحد في الغابة "قانون الغابة"؟

- If an animal (like a wolf) breaks the law, the pack might reject them.

- إذا خالف حيوان (مثل الذئب) القانون، فقد يرفضه القطيع.

Bit by Bit Critical Thinking Questions

5. Why do you think Mowgli trusted Baloo and Bagheera more than the Bandar-log?

لماذا تعتقد أن ماوكلي وثق في "بالو" و"باغيرا" أكثر من "البندر-لوج"؟

- Because they taught him lessons and cared for him. لأنهم علموه دروساً واهتموا به.

6. If you were Mowgli, would you forgive the Bandar-log? Why/ why not?

إذا كنت مكان ماوكلي، هل كنت ستسامح "البندر-لوج"؟ لماذا ولماذا لا؟

- No, I would not forgive them because they kidnapped me and made false promises.

- لا، لن أسامحهم لأنهم اختطفوني وقطعوا وعوداً كاذبة.

Exercises on Chapter 2

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

	T	F
1. Baloo taught Mowgli the Law of the Jungle, including the warning cries of animals.	☐	☐
2. The Bandar-log are monkeys who follow the jungle's rules.	☐	☐
3. The monkeys took Mowgli deep into a cave.	☐	☐
4. Baloo and Bagheera rescued Mowgli without any help.	☐	☐
5. They fought the monkeys in the monkeys' ruined city.	☐	☐
6. Kaa, the python, did not help Baloo and Bagheera in saving Mowgli.	☐	☐
7. The adventure taught Mowgli that true friends shows loyalty and respect.	☐	☐
8. Mowgli liked his teachers although their lessons were tough.	☐	☐

B Answer the following questions:

1. What important values did Baloo teach Mowgli?

2. Who helped Baloo and Bagheera save Mowgli?

3. What did Mowgli realize about the monkeys' promises?

4. What did Mowgli feel for his friends after he was saved?

5. Who scared the Bandar-log away with his coils?

6. Why was the Bandar-log described as chaotic?

7. Who were the true friends in this story? How do you know?

8. Why do you think Baloo taught Mowgli the cries of different animals?

Story Time

The Jungle Book by Rudyard Kipling

Chapter Three

The Secret of Fire

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

hatred (n)	كراهية	guard (v.ed)	يحرص
among (prep.)	بين	tension (n)	توتر
whisper (v.ed)	يهمس	council (n)	مجلس
lie (n)	كذبة	argue (v.d)	يجادل
warn (v.ed)	يحذر	tear (v. tore/torn)	يمزق
ruin (n)	دمار/خراب	loyalty (n)	ولاء
doubt (v.ed)	يشك	reveal (v.ed)	يكشف/يظهر
face (v.d)	يواجه	weapon (n)	سلاح
directly (adv)	بشكل مباشر	hold (v.held)	يمسك/يحمل
power (n)	قوة	drive back	يتراجع
fears (n)	مخاوف	revenge (n)	ثأر
secret (n)	سر	no longer	لم يعد
nearby (adj)	قريب/مجاور	one of their own	واحد منهم
closely (adv)	بشكل قريب	fate (n)	المصير
steal (v. stole/stolen)	يسرق	be away from	يكون بعيدا عن
burning coals	جمر مشتعل		

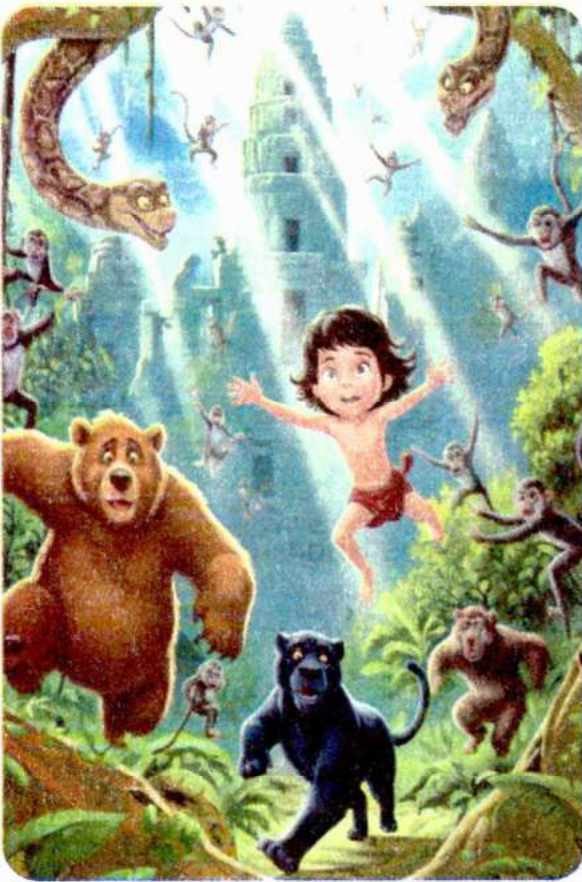


Definitions

hatred	كراهية	very strong feeling of dislike
doubt	يشك	not being sure
tension	توتر	a mind affected by stress
loyalty	ولاء	a strong feeling of support
revenge	ثأر	the act of hurting someone who hurt you first

- Read the following text. What happened at the wolf council?

As Mowgli grew, so did Shere Khan's **hatred**⁽¹⁾. The tiger could not accept a **human**⁽²⁾ living among the animals. He **whispered**⁽³⁾ **lies to**⁽⁴⁾ the **wolf**⁽⁵⁾ pack, warning them that Mowgli would bring fire and **ruin**⁽⁶⁾ to the **jungle**⁽⁷⁾. Some wolves began to **doubt**⁽⁸⁾ the boy's place. Bagheera warned Mowgli that the day would come when he must face the tiger directly. "Men have one **power**⁽⁹⁾ the jungle fears," he said. "You must learn the **secret**⁽¹⁰⁾ of fire." Following this advice, Mowgli visited the nearby village,



watching humans closely. From them, he secretly stole a pot of **burning coals**⁽¹¹⁾, which he **guarded**⁽¹²⁾ carefully. The **tension**⁽¹³⁾ grew. At the wolf council, Shere Khan wanted Mowgli to leave the jungle. The **pack**⁽¹⁴⁾ **argued**⁽¹⁵⁾, torn between **loyalty**⁽¹⁶⁾ to the boy and fear of the tiger. At last, Mowgli **revealed**⁽¹⁷⁾ the **secret weapon**⁽¹⁸⁾. Holding up the fire, he drove Shere Khan back. The tiger moved back but still wanted **revenge**⁽¹⁹⁾. Though he won, Mowgli felt sad. He realized that many wolves no longer saw him as one of their own. He loved the jungle, but problems between them had started. His **fate**⁽²⁰⁾, he felt, might be away from the pack.

مع نمو ماوگلی، ازداد كره شیر خان. لم يستطع النمر تقبل وجود إنسان بين الحيوانات. همس بأكاذيب لقطيع الذئاب، محذراً إياهم من أن ماوگلی سيجلب النار والخراب للغابة. بدأ بعض الذئاب يشكّون في مكانة الصبي. حذر باغيرا ماوگلی من أن اليوم سيأتي الذي سيواجه فيه النمر وجهها لوجه. قال: "للبشر قوة واحدة تخشاها الغابة، عليك أن تتعلم سرّ النار". أمثالاً لهذه النصيحة، زار ماوگلی القرية المجاورة، مراقباً البشر عن كثب. سرق منهم سرّاً قدرّاً من الجمر المشتعل، وحرسه بعناية. ازداد التوتر. في مجلس الذئاب، أراد شیر خان من ماوگلی مغادرة الغابة. تجادل القطيع، حيث كانوا منقسمين بين ولائهم للصبي وخوفهم من النمر. أخيراً، كشف ماوگلی عن سلاحه السري. رفع النار، ودفع شیر خان إلى الوراء. تراجع النمر، لكنه ظلّ متعطشاً للانتقام. رغم انتصاره، شعر ماوگلی بالحزن. أدرك أن العديد من الذئاب لم تعد تعتبره واحداً منهم. كان يحب الغابة، لكن المشاكل بدأت تندلع بينهم. شعر أن مصيره قد يكون بعيداً عن القطيع.

١. كراهية
٢. إنسان
٣. همس
٤. أكاذيب
٥. الذئب
٦. الدمار
٧. اللادغال
٨. يشك
٩. قوة
١٠. سر
١١. فحم مشتعل
١٢. حرس
١٣. توتر
١٤. القطيع
١٥. ناقش
١٦. الولاء
١٧. كشف
١٨. السلاح السري
١٩. الثأر
٢٠. المصير

Exercises on Chapter 3

A Write True (T) or False (F):

SB Questions

	T	F
1. Shere Khan whispered lies to the wolves.	☐	☐
2. Mowgli took burning coal from the jungle.	☐	☐
3. Bagheera advised Mowgli to learn about fire.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli used fire to drive away the wolves.	☐	☐

Bit by Bit Questions

	T	F
5. Shere Khan accepted Mowgli living among the animals.	☐	☐
6. Mowgli learned about fire after visiting a nearby village.	☐	☐
7. Bagheera warned Mowgli that he would have to face Shere Khan one day.	☐	☐
8. At the wolf council, Shere Khan supported Mowgli staying in the jungle.	☐	☐
9. Mowgli asked the villagers to give him fire.	☐	☐
10. Mowgli stole a pot of burning coals and protected it carefully.	☐	☐
11. Fire was the secret weapon that scared Shere Khan.	☐	☐
12. The wolf pack was torn between fear and loyalty.	☐	☐
13. Mowgli felt happy and proud after defeating Shere Khan.	☐	☐
14. Bagheera said that humans are weaker than the jungle animals.	☐	☐

B Answer the following questions:

SB Questions

- Who hated Mowgli? Why?
 من كان يكره ماوكلي؟ لماذا؟
 - Shere Khan hated Mowgli because he could not accept a human living among the animals.
 - كره شير خان ماوكلي لأنه لم يستطع تقبل وجود إنسان يعيش بين الحيوانات.
- What warning did Shere Khan give the wolves about Mowgli?
 ما التحذير الذي وجهه شير خان للذئاب بشأن ماوكلي؟
 - He warned them that Mowgli would bring fire and ruin to the jungle.
 - حذرهم من أن ماوكلي سيجلب النار والخراب إلى الغابة.
- What did Bagheera tell Mowgli about the power that the jungle fears?
 ماذا قال باغييرا لماوكلي عن القوة التي تخشاها الغابة؟
 - He told him that he must learn the secret of fire.
 - أخبره أنه يجب أن يتعلم سر النار.
- Where did Mowgli get the fire from?
 من أين حصل ماوكلي على النار؟
 - He got it from the human village. He stole a pot of burning coals.
 - حصل عليها من قرية البشر. سرق قدرًا من الجمر المشتعل.

Bit by Bit Questions

- Why did Shere Khan hate Mowgli?
 لماذا كان شير خان يكره ماوكلي؟
 - Because he could not accept a human living among the animals.
 - لأنه لم يستطع قبول أن يعيش إنسان بين الحيوانات.
- What did Shere Khan whisper to the wolf pack about Mowgli?
 ماذا كان شير خان يهمس لقطيع الذئاب عن ماوكلي؟
 - He said that Mowgli would bring fire and ruin to the jungle.
 - قال إن ماوكلي سيجلب النار والخراب إلى الغابة.
- What warning did Bagheera give to Mowgli?
 ما التحذير الذي قدمه باغييرا لماوكلي؟
 - He warned him that he would have to face Shere Khan one day.
 - حذره من أنه سيضطر لمواجهة شير خان في يوم من الأيام.
- How did Mowgli get the fire?
 كيف حصل ماوكلي على النار؟
 - He secretly stole a pot of burning coals from the village.
 - سرق سرًا وعاءًا من الجمر المشتعل من القرية.
- How did Mowgli feel after driving Shere Khan away?
 كيف شعر ماوكلي بعد أن أبعد شير خان؟
 - He felt sad and realized he might not belong to the pack anymore.
 - شعر بالحزن وأدرك أنه قد لا ينتمي إلى القطيع بعد الآن.
- Why did some wolves start doubting Mowgli's place in the jungle?
 لماذا بدأ بعض الذئاب يشككون في مكانة ماوكلي في الغابة؟
 - Because Shere Khan whispered lies that Mowgli would bring fire and ruin.
 - لأن شير خان نشر أكاذيب تقول إن ماوكلي سيجلب النار والخراب.

Critical thinking questions

SB Questions

1. What do you think fire represents for humans and animals?

ماذا تُمثل النار في رأيك للبشر والحيوان؟

- For Humans: Fire represents power, protection, and civilization. For Animals: Fire represents terror. They fear it because it burns the forest.

بالنسبة للبشر تُمثل النار القوة والحماية والحضارة. بالنسبة للحيوانات: تُمثل النار الرعب، فهي تخشاهم لأنها تُحرق الغابة.

2. Why do you think some animals might not trust Mowgli even though he grew up in the jungle? لماذا تعتقد أن بعض الحيوانات قد لا تثق بماوكلي رغم أنه نشأ في الغابة؟

- Some animals fear that one day he will act like a human, using fire or weapons. تخشى بعض الحيوانات أن يتصرف يوماً ما كإنسان، مستخدماً النار أو الأسلحة.

3. Why do you think Mowgli felt sad after he won against Shere Khan?

لماذا تعتقد أن ماوكلي شعر بالحزن بعد انتصاره على شير خان؟

- Mowgli was sad because he had to leave his wolf family.

كان ماوكلي حزيناً لأنه اضطر لمغادرة عائلته من الذئاب.

4. Why did Mowgli think that his fate might be away from the pack?

لماذا اعتقد ماوكلي أن مصيره قد يكون بعيداً عن القطيع؟

- The wolves feared him, therefore he felt his fate was with humans.

كانت الذئاب تخشاه، ولذلك شعر أن مصيره سيكون مع البشر.

Bit by Bit Critical Thinking Questions

5. How did Mowgli use what he learned from humans to face Shere Khan?

كيف استخدم ماوكلي ما تعلمه من البشر لمواجهة شير خان؟

- He stole fire (burning coals) from the village and used it to scare Shere Khan.

- سرق النار (الجمر المشتعل) من القرية واستخدمه لإخافة شير خان.

6. How can the story teach readers about solving problems?

كيف يمكن للقصة أن تعلم القراء حول حل المشكلات؟

- It shows that using knowledge wisely, like Mowgli using fire, can solve difficult problems.

- يوضح أن استخدام المعرفة بحكمة، مثل استخدام ماوكلي للنار، يمكن أن يحل المشكلات الصعبة.

Exercises on Chapter 3

A Write True (T) or False (F):

1. Shere Khan was happy to see Mowgli living in the jungle.

☐
☐

2. Shere Khan whispered lies to the wolf pack about Mowgli.

☐
☐

3. All the wolves immediately trusted Mowgli.

☐
☐

4. Bagheera warned Mowgli that he would have to face Shere Khan one day.

☐☐

5. Mowgli learned the secret of fire from the wolves.

☐☐

6. Mowgli stole a pot of burning coals from the nearby village.

☐☐

7. Mowgli used fire to scare Shere Khan.

☐☐

8. After defeating Shere Khan, Mowgli felt completely happy.

☐☐

9. Many wolves still considered Mowgli part of their pack after the fight.

☐☐

10. Mowgli realized that he might have to leave the pack.

☐☐

B Answer the following questions:

1. Who could not accept Mowgli living among the animals?

2. What did Shere Khan whisper to the wolf pack?

3. Who warned Mowgli about facing Shere Khan?

4. Where did Mowgli get the fire from?

5. What did Mowgli hold up to drive Shere Khan back?

6. Why did some wolves start doubting Mowgli's place in the jungle?

7. How did Mowgli use his knowledge of humans to face Shere Khan?

8. Why did Mowgli feel sad after defeating Shere Khan?

9. How can Mowgli's actions teach readers about solving problems?

Story Time

The Jungle Book by Rudyard Kipling

Chapter Four

Mowgli's Final Confrontation

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

confrontation (n.)	المواجهة	set a trap	يقوم بعمل فخ
cattle (n.)	الماشية	resourceful (adj.)	ذكي
cunning (adj.)	مخادع - مكار	narrow pass	ممر ضيق
defeated (adj.)	مهزوم	herd (h.)	القطيع
run away (n.)	يهرب	crushed (adj.)	محطم
victory (n.)	النصر	sadness (n.)	الحزن
reject (v.ed)	يرفض	humans (n.)	البشر
mark (v.ed)	يميز	pack (n.)	القطيع
at a cost	مقابل تضحية/بثمن باهظ	With a heavy heart	بقلب حزين/ببالغ الاسى



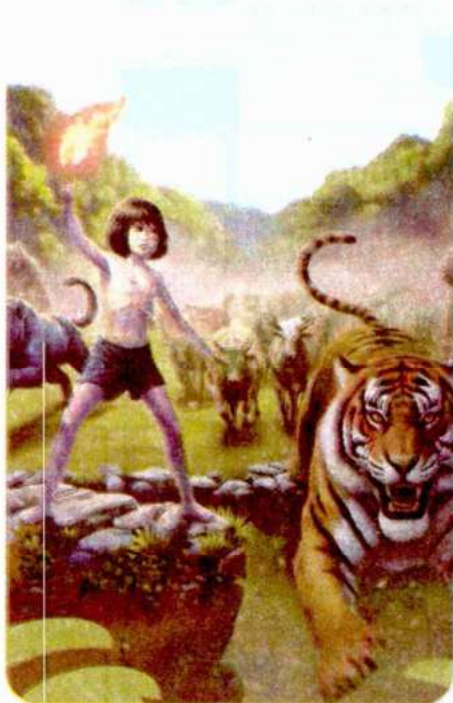
Definitions

confrontation	صدام	serious meeting, arguing or fight between people
cunning	مكار	being clever in a way that is often tricky using smart methods
victory	نصر	great success
rejected	مرفوض	refused, not accepted

- Read the following text.

The final **confrontation**⁽¹⁾ arrived. Shere Khan **set a trap**⁽²⁾ to kill Mowgli by driving **cattle**⁽³⁾ toward him. Yet Mowgli, brave and **resourceful**⁽⁴⁾, turned the plan against the tiger. With fire and **cunning**⁽⁵⁾, he forced the **herd**⁽⁶⁾ to **run away**⁽⁷⁾, trapping Shere Khan in a **narrow pass**⁽⁸⁾. The tiger was **crushed**⁽⁹⁾ and finally **defeated**⁽¹⁰⁾.

Standing over his fallen enemy, Mowgli felt both **victory**⁽¹¹⁾ and **sadness**⁽¹²⁾. He had protected himself and his wolf family, but at a cost. When he returned to the pack, many wolves **rejected**⁽¹³⁾ him, believing that **humans**⁽¹⁴⁾ could never truly belong to the **jungle**⁽¹⁵⁾.



Mowgli decided to leave the **pack**⁽¹⁶⁾. With a heavy heart, he said goodbye to the wolves, though he promised never to forget them.

This victory **marked**⁽¹⁷⁾ the end of his **childhood**⁽¹⁸⁾. He was no longer the helpless **man-cub**⁽¹⁹⁾ saved by Mother Wolf.

He had become a young man, strong and wise, yet still searching for where he truly **belonged**⁽²⁰⁾.

١. مواجهة
٢. يقوم بعمل فخ
٣. الماشية
٤. ذكي
٥. مكار
٦. القطيع
٧. يهرب
٨. ممر ضيق
٩. سحق
١٠. هزم
١١. النصر
١٢. الحزن
١٣. رفض
١٤. البشر
١٥. الغابة
١٦. القطيع
١٧. ميز
١٨. الطفولة
١٩. الشبل البشري
٢٠. ينتمي

جاءت المواجهة الحاسمة. نصب شير خان فخاً لقتل ماوگلي بدفع الماشية نحوه. لكن ماوگلي، بشجاعته ودهائه، قلب الخطة ضد النمر. بالنار والمكر، أجبر القطيع على الفرار، وحاصر شير خان في ممر ضيق. سحق النمر وهزم أخيراً. وقف ماوگلي فوق عدوه المهزوم، وشعر بالنصر والحزن معاً. لقد حمى نفسه وعائلته من الذئاب، لكن بثمن باهظ. عندما عاد إلى القطيع، رفضه العديد من الذئاب، لا اعتقادهم أن البشر لا يمكن أن ينتموا حقاً إلى الغابة.

قرر ماوگلي مغادرة القطيع. وبقلب حزين، ودّع الذئاب، لكنه وعدهم ألا ينسأهم أبداً. مثل هذا الانتصار نهاية طفولته. لم يعد ذلك الفتى الصغير العاجز الذي أنقذته أمه الذئبة. لقد أصبح شاباً قوياً وحكيماً، ولكنه مازال يبحث عن المكان الذي ينتمي إليه حقاً.

Exercises on Chapter 4

A Write True (T) or False (F):

SB Questions

	T	F
1. Shere Khan planned to kill Mowgli by using a herd of cattle.	☐	☐
2. The wolves all welcomed Mowgli back after the fight.	☐	☐
3. Bagheera reminded Mowgli that he belonged only to the jungle.	☐	☐
4. In the end, Mowgli chose to leave the wolf pack.	☐	☐

Bit by Bit Questions

	T	F
5. Many wolves accepted Mowgli after he defeated Shere Khan.	☐	☐
6. Mowgli used fire to turn Shere Khan's plan against him.	☐	☐
7. The tiger was trapped in a narrow pass.	☐	☐
8. Mowgli felt only happiness after defeating Shere Khan.	☐	☐
9. Shere Khan was finally crushed and defeated.	☐	☐
10. Mowgli never promised to remember the wolves.	☐	☐
11. Mowgli became a young man, strong and wise.	☐	☐
12. Some wolves rejected Mowgli, thinking humans could not belong in the jungle.	☐	☐
13. Mowgli's childhood ended after his victory over Shere Khan.	☐	☐
14. Mowgli defeated Shere Khan without using any clever tricks.	☐	☐
15. Mowgli said goodbye to the wolves with a heavy heart.	☐	☐

B Answer the following questions:

SB Questions

- How did Mowgli turn the tiger's plan against him? كيف قلب ماوگلي خطة النمر ضده؟
- Mowgli used his human intelligence. He used fire to trap the tiger. - استخدم ماوگلي ذكائه البشري. استخدم النار للإيقاع بالنمر.
- What happened to Shere Khan at the pass? ماذا حدث لشير خان عند الممر؟
- Shere Khan was trapped in the narrow pass and was defeated by Mowgli. - حُوصِر شير خان في الممر الضيق وهزمه ماوگلي.

3. How did Mowgli feel after defeating the tiger? ما هو شعور ماوكلى بعد هزيمة النمر؟
 - He felt a mix of victory and sadness. He was happy to be safe, but sad because he had to leave the pack.

- شعر بمزيج من النصر والحزن. كان سعيدًا لأنه أصبح آمنًا، لكنه حزين لأنه مضطر إلى مغادرة القطيع.

4. What decision did Mowgli make after returning to the pack?

ما القرار الذي اتخذه ماوكلى بعد عودته إلى القطيع؟

- He decided to leave the jungle for a while and return to the human village, but he promised to keep ties with both worlds.

- قرر مغادرة الغابة لفترة والعودة إلى قرية البشر، لكنه وعد بالحفاظ على علاقاته مع كلا العالمين.

Bit by Bit Questions

5. Who set a trap to kill Mowgli?

من نصب فخًا لقتل ماوكلى؟

- Shere Khan.

- شير خان.

6. What did Mowgli use to turn the plan against Shere Khan?

ماذا استخدم ماوكلى ليحول الخطة ضد شير خان؟

- Fire and cunning.

- النار والذكاء.

7. Where was Shere Khan trapped?

أين تم حبس شير خان؟

- In a narrow pass.

- في ممر ضيق.

8. How did many wolves react when Mowgli returned to the pack?

كيف كان رد فعل العديد من الذئاب عندما عاد ماوكلى إلى القطيع؟

- They rejected him.

- رفضوه.

9. Who saved Mowgli when he was a child?

من أنقذ ماوكلى عندما كان طفلًا؟

- Mother Wolf.

- الذئبة الأم.

SB Critical thinking questions

1. Why do you think this moment marks the end of Mowgli's childhood?

لماذا تعتقد أن هذه اللحظة تمثل نهاية طفولة ماوكلى؟

- Because he faced his biggest enemy (Shere Khan) alone and won.

- لأنه واجه أكبر أعدائه (شير خان) بمفرده وانتصر.

2. If you were Mowgli, would you stay in the jungle or go to the village? Why?

لو كنت مكان ماوكلى، هل ستبقى في الغابة أم ستذهب إلى القرية؟ ولماذا؟

- I would go to the village to learn about humans, but I would visit the jungle often because it is my first home.

- سأذهب إلى القرية لأتعلم عن البشر، لكنني سأزور الغابة كثيرًا لأنها منزلي الأول.

3. What do you think happens when a person must choose between two things?

ما رأيك فيما يحدث عندما يضطر الشخص للاختيار بين أمرين؟

- It makes them feel "torn" or sad, but it also helps them grow and discover who they really are.

- يجعلهم ذلك يشعرون بالتمزق أو الحزن، لكنه يساعدهم أيضًا على النمو واكتشاف حقيقتهم.

4. What do you expect will happen to Mowgli and Shere Khan?

ماذا تتوقع أن يحدث لماوكلى وشير خان؟

- Mowgli will become a "bridge" between two worlds. Shere Khan will lose his power and fear because Mowgli's intelligence is stronger than the tiger's teeth.
- سيصبح ماوكلي "جسرًا" بين عالمين. وسيفقد شيرخان قوته وخوفه لأن ذكاء ماوكلي أقوى من أنياب النمر.

Bit by Bit Critical Thinking Questions

5. Why do you think Mowgli felt both victory and sadness?

لماذا تعتقد أن ماوكلي شعر بالنصر والحزن معًا؟

- Because he defeated Shere Khan but lost the full acceptance of the wolves.

- لأنه هزم شير خان لكنه فقد قبول الذئاب بالكامل.

6. How did Mowgli show courage and resourcefulness in the story?

كيف أظهر ماوكلي الشجاعة والذكاء في القصة؟

- By turning Shere Khan's trap against him using fire.

- بتحويل فخ شير خان ضده باستخدام النار.

7. What does the wolves' rejection of Mowgli teach about trust and belonging?

ماذا تعلمنا من رفض الذئاب لماوكلي عن الثقة والانتماء؟

- It teaches us that fear can make friends forget their loyalty. The wolves feared the tiger more than they loved Mowgli.

- يعلمنا أن الخوف قد يجعل الأصدقاء ينسون ولاءهم؛ فالذئاب خافوا من النمر أكثر من حبهم لماوكلي.

8. Why did Mowgli decide to leave the pack?

لماذا قرر ماوكلي مغادرة القطيع؟

- Because he was not fully accepted and wanted to find where he truly belonged.

- لأنه لم يُقبل بالكامل وأراد أن يجد مكانه الحقيقي.

9. How did the story show Mowgli's growth from childhood to adulthood?

كيف أظهرت القصة نمو ماوكلي من الطفولة إلى البلوغ؟

- He became strong, wise, and independent after facing challenges.

- أصبح قويًا وحكيماً ومستقلاً بعد مواجهة التحديات.

Exercises on Chapter 4

A Write True (T) or False (F):

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

1. Shere Khan trapped Mowgli using a herd of cattle.

2. Mowgli was afraid and could not change the tiger's plan.

3. Mowgli used fire and cunning to defeat Shere Khan.

4. Shere Khan was defeated in a narrow pass.

5. Mowgli felt only happy when he defeated the tiger.

☐ ☐

6. All the wolves welcomed Mowgli back with joy.

☐ ☐

7. Some wolves believed that humans do not belong in the jungle.

☐ ☐

8. Mowgli decided to stay with the wolf pack forever.

☐ ☐

9. Mowgli promised that he would never forget the wolves.

☐ ☐

10. The victory over Shere Khan marked the end of Mowgli's childhood.

☐ ☐

Answer the following questions:

1. How did Shere Khan try to kill Mowgli?

2. What two things did Mowgli use to defeat the tiger?

3. Where was Shere Khan finally defeated?

4. Why did Mowgli feel "sadness" after his victory?

5. Why did many wolves reject Mowgli when he returned?

6. What did Mowgli decide to do after the pack rejected him?

7. How did Mowgli feel when he said goodbye to the wolves?

8. What does the text say about Mowgli's childhood after the fight?

9. Describe Mowgli after he defeated Shere Khan (was he weak or strong)?

10. What was Mowgli still searching for at the end of the story?

Story Time

The Jungle Book by Rudyard Kipling

Chapter Five

Mowgli in the Human Village

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

doubt (n-v)	شك/يشك	half wild (adj)	شبه بري
cursed (adj)	ملعون	clothing (n)	الملابس
accustomed (adj)	معتاد	speech (n)	الكلام
predators (n)	حيوانات مفترسة	customs (n)	العادات
trapped (adj)	محاصر	whisper (v)	يهمس
surprised (adj)	مندهش	freedom (n)	الحرية
seem (v)	يبدو	value (n)	قيمة
cattle (n)	الماشية	shape (v)	يشكل
environment (n)	البيئة	no longer	لم يعد
voices (n)	أصوات	in his heart	في داخله
honesty (n)	الأمانة	longed for	اشتااق إلى
law (n)	قانون	caught between	متحير بين
rejection (n)	الرفض	felt isolated	شعر بالعزلة



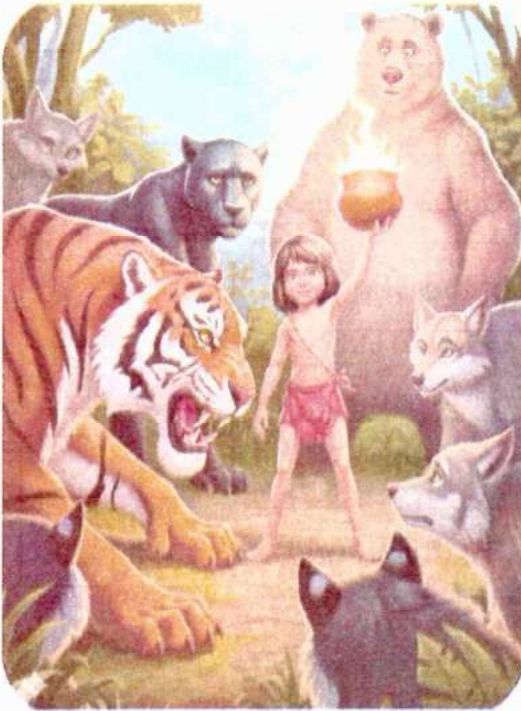
Definitions

doubted (v)	شك	feel uncertain about
cursed (adj)	ملعون	being enchanted
accustomed (adj)	معتاد	being used to something
predators (n)	حيوانات مفترسة	animals that hunt, kill and eat other animals
trapped (adj)	محاصر	prevent someone from escaping

- Read the following text.

What kind of identity problem is Mowgli Facing?

Mowgli entered the **nearby**⁽¹⁾ human village. At first, the people were surprised by the strange boy who seemed half wild. They gave him food, clothing, and a place to stay. For a time, he tried to live as they did, learning their speech and **customs**⁽²⁾. Yet Mowgli found life among humans difficult. Many villagers **doubted**⁽³⁾ him, whispering that he was dangerous or **cursed**⁽⁴⁾. Others tried to control him, telling him what to do and where to go. **Accustomed**⁽⁵⁾ to the freedom of



the jungle, Mowgli felt **trapped**⁽⁶⁾. Still, he discovered some value in human life. He cared for the village's **cattle**⁽⁷⁾, protecting them from **predators**⁽⁸⁾. He also

learned more about fire and tools, seeing how humans used them to shape their environment. Yet in his heart, he **longed for**⁽⁹⁾ the open forest, the voices of Baloo and Bagheera, and the simple honesty of the law of the jungle. Caught between **doubt**⁽¹⁰⁾ from men and rejection from wolves, Mowgli felt **isolated**⁽¹¹⁾ once more. His greatest challenge was no longer Shere Khan.

١. قرية بشرية
٢. عادات / تقاليد
٣. شك / تشكك
٤. ملعون
٥. متعود / معتاد
٦. محاصر / مقيد
٧. ماشية / أبقار
٨. الحيوانات المفترسة
٩. اشتاق / تاق إلى
١٠. شك / ريبة
١١. معزول / منعزل

دخل ماوكلى قرية البشر المجاورة. في البداية، استغرب الناس من الفتى الغريب الذي بدا وكأنه نصف برى. قدموا له الطعام والملابس ومكاناً للإقامة. حاول لفترة من الزمن أن يعيش مثلهم، متعلماً لغتهم وعاداتهم. لكن ماوكلى وجد الحياة بين البشر صعبة. شكك فيه العديد من القرويين، وهمسوا بأنه خطير أو ملعون. حاول آخرون السيطرة عليه حيث يملكون عليه ما يفعله وأين يذهب. شعر ماوكلى، الذي اعتاد على حرية الغابة، بأنه محاصر. مع ذلك، اكتشف قيمة ما في حياة الإنسان، اعتنى بماشية القرية، وحماها من المفترسات. كما تعلم المزيد عن النار والأدوات، ورأى كيف يستخدمها البشر لتشكيل بيئتهم. لكن في قرارة نفسه، كان يتوق إلى الغابة المفتوحة، وأصوات بالو وبغيرا، وبسطة قانون الغاب. وبين شك البشر ورفض الذئاب، شعر ماوكلى بالعزلة من جديد. لم يعد شير خان هو التحدي الأكبر الذي يواجهه.

Exercises on Chapter 5

A Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. At first, the villagers were happy to see Mowgli.	☐	☐
2. Mowgli received food and clothing from the people in the village.	☐	☐
3. Mowgli found it very easy to adapt to the human way of life.	☐	☐
4. Some villagers whispered that Mowgli was dangerous or cursed.	☐	☐
5. Mowgli's job in the village was to take care of the cattle.	☐	☐
6. In the village, Mowgli learned how to use fire and tools.	☐	☐
7. Mowgli preferred the village's rules over the "Law of the Jungle."	☐	☐
8. Shere Khan was still Mowgli's greatest challenge.	☐	☐
9. Mowgli found life among humans difficult and felt trapped.	☐	☐
10. At first, the people were surprised by the strange, half-wild boy.	☐	☐

B Answer the following questions:

SB Questions

1. What new things did Mowgli learn from the humans?

ما الاشياء الجديدة التي تعلمها ماوكلي من البشر؟

- He learned how humans used fire and tools to shape their environment.

- تعلم كيف يستخدم البشر النار والأدوات لتشكيل بيئتهم.

2. How did some villagers treat Mowgli?

كيف عامل بعض القرويين ماوكلي؟

- Some villagers doubted him, whispered that he was dangerous or cursed, and tried to control him by telling him what to do and where to go.

- بعض القرويين شكوا فيه، وكانوا يهيمسون بأنه خطر أو ملعون، وحاولوا التحكم فيه من خلال إملاء ما عليه فعله وأين يذهب.

3. What question did Mowgli begin to ask himself at the end?

ما السؤال الذي بدأ ماوكلي يطرحه على نفسه في النهاية؟

- At the end, Mowgli began to ask himself whether he truly belonged among humans or in the jungle.

- في النهاية، بدأ ماوكلي يسأل نفسه ما إذا كان ينتمي حقاً إلى البشر أم إلى الغابة.

4. Why did some villagers think Mowgli was cursed?

لماذا اعتقد بعض القرويين أن ماوگلی ملعون؟

- Because he was different, seemed strange, and acted differently from humans.

- لأنه كان مختلفًا، ويبدو غريبًا، ويتصرف بطريقة مختلفة عن البشر.

5. Why did Mowgli feel trapped?

لماذا شعر ماوگلی أنه محاصر؟

- Mowgli felt trapped because he was accustomed to the freedom of the jungle.

- شعر ماوگلی بأنه محاصر لأنه كان متعودًا على حرية الغابة.

Bit by Bit Questions

6. Where did Mowgli go?

أين ذهب ماوگلي؟

- Mowgli entered the nearby human village.

- دخل ماوگلي القرية البشرية القريبة.

7. How did the people feel towards him at first?

كيف شعر الناس تجاهه في البداية؟

- At first, the people were surprised by the strange boy who seemed half wild.

- في البداية، اندهش الناس من الصبي الغريب الذي بدا نصف متوحش.

8. What did the people give him?

ماذا أعطاه الناس؟

- They gave him food, clothing, and a place to stay.

- أعطوه الطعام والملابس ومكانًا للإقامة.

9. How did Mowgli try to live like humans?

كيف حاول ماوگلي أن يعيش مثل البشر؟

- He tried to live as they did, learning their speech and customs.

- حاول أن يعيش كما يعيشون، فتعلم لغتهم وعاداتهم.

10. What did Mowgli longed for?

ماذا كان ماوگلي يتوق إليه؟

- He longed for the open forest, the voices of Baloo and Bagheera, and the simple honesty of the law of the jungle.

- كان يتوق إلى الغابة المفتوحة، وأصوات بالو وباغيرا، وصدق البسيط لقانون الغابة.

Critical thinking questions

Answer the following questions:

SB Questions

1. How can people live peacefully even when they are different from others?

كيف يمكن للناس أن يعيشوا بسلام حتى عندما يكونون مختلفين عن الآخرين؟

- People can live peacefully by respecting differences, accepting others, communicating kindly, and cooperating.

- يمكن للناس أن يعيشوا بسلام من خلال احترام الاختلافات، وقبول الآخرين، والتواصل بلطف، والتعاون.

2. Why do you think Mowgli felt isolated?

لماذا تعتقد أن ماوكلي شعر بالعزلة؟

- Mowgli felt isolated because humans doubted and controlled him, while he no longer fully belonged to the jungle, so he did not feel accepted in either world.

- شعر ماوكلي بالعزلة لأن البشر شكوا فيه وحاولوا السيطرة عليه، وفي الوقت نفسه لم يعد ينتمي تمامًا إلى الغابة، لذلك لم يشعر بالقبول في أي من العالمين.

3. How do you think Mowgli will feel when he lives as humans after growing up in the village?

كيف تتوقع أن يشعر ماوكلي عندما يعيش بين البشر بعد أن نشأ في القرية؟

- Mowgli will feel confused and out of place at first. He will miss the freedom of the jungle and his friends.

- سيشعر ماوكلي بالحيرة والغربة في البداية. سيفتقد حرية الغابة وأصدقائه.

Bit by Bit Critical Thinking Questions

4. What lesson can humans learn from Mowgli's experience among the villagers?

ما الدرس الذي يمكن أن يتعلمه البشر من تجربة ماوكلي بين أهل القرية؟

- Humans can learn that fear of differences leads to rejection, while understanding and empathy help build trust and harmony.

- يمكن للبشر أن يتعلموا أن الخوف من الاختلاف يؤدي إلى الرفض، بينما يساعد الفهم والتعاطف على بناء الثقة والانسجام.

5. Do you think freedom is more important than comfort? Why or why not?

هل تعتقد أن الحرية أهم من الراحة؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes, freedom can be more important than comfort because without freedom, a person may feel trapped and unhappy, even if their basic needs are met.

- نعم، قد تكون الحرية أهم من الراحة، لأن الإنسان بدون حرية قد يشعر بالقيود والتعاسة حتى لو توفرت له احتياجاته الأساسية.

6. Why did some villagers doubt Mowgli and consider him dangerous?

لماذا شك بعض القرويين في ماوكلي واعتبروه خطيرًا؟

- Some villagers doubted Mowgli because he looked different and behaved unlike them, and they feared what they did not understand.

- شك بعض القرويين في ماوكلي لأنه كان مختلفًا في شكله وتصرفاته، وخافوا مما لا يفهمونه.

7. How did life in the jungle affect Mowgli's feelings in the human village?

كيف أثرت حياة الغابة في مشاعر ماوكلي داخل القرية البشرية؟

- Life in the jungle made Mowgli value freedom, so living under rules and control in the village made him feel trapped and unhappy.

- جعلته حياة الغابة يقدر الحرية، ولذلك جعله العيش تحت القواعد والسيطرة في القرية يشعر بالضيق وعدم السعادة.

8. What shows that Mowgli tried to adapt to human life despite the difficulties?

ما الذي يوضح أن ماوكلي حاول التكيف مع حياة البشر رغم الصعوبات؟

- Mowgli tried to adapt by learning human speech and customs and by caring for the villagers' cattle and protecting them from predators.

- حاول ماوكلي التكيف بتعلم لغة البشر وعاداتهم، كما اعتنى بمواشي القرية وحماها من الحيوانات المفترسة.

9. Why was Mowgli's greatest challenge no longer Shere Khan?

لماذا لم يعد شير خان هو التحدي الأكبر في حياة ماوكلي؟

- His greatest challenge was feeling torn between two worlds, rejected by wolves and doubted by humans, which made him feel isolated and unsure of where he belonged.

- لأن التحدي الأكبر أصبح شعوره منقسم بين عالمين، مرفوضاً من الذئاب ومشكوكاً فيه من البشر، مما جعله يشعر بالعزلة وعدم الانتماء.

Exercises on Chapter 5

A Read and put (T) True or (F) False:

	T	F
1. The villagers welcomed Mowgli at first.	☐	☐
2. Everyone in the village trusted and respected Mowgli.	☐	☐
3. Mowgli worked by taking care of the village's cattle.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli was completely happy living among the humans.	☐	☐
5. Mowgli entered a nearby human village at the beginning of the story.	☐	☐
6. The villagers immediately accepted Mowgli and were not surprised by him.	☐	☐
7. The people gave Mowgli food, clothes, and a place to stay.	☐	☐
8. Mowgli easily adapted to life among humans and felt comfortable.	☐	☐
9. Some villagers believed that Mowgli was dangerous or cursed.	☐	☐
10. Everyone in the village treated Mowgli kindly and gave him complete freedom.	☐	☐
11. Mowgli felt trapped because he was used to the freedom of the jungle.	☐	☐
12. Mowgli helped the villagers by taking care of their cattle.	☐	☐

13. Mowgli forgot about the jungle and no longer missed Baloo and Bagheera.

☐☐

14. Mowgli felt isolated because he was rejected by both humans and wolves.

☐☐

B Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Mowgli go after leaving the jungle?

2. How did the villagers react when they first saw Mowgli?

3. What kind of help did the villagers give Mowgli at the beginning?

4. Why did some villagers doubt Mowgli and fear him?

5. What responsibilities did Mowgli have in the human village?

6. Why did Mowgli find life among humans more difficult than life in the jungle?

7. How does caring for the cattle show that Mowgli tried to adapt to human life?

8. Why do you think Mowgli felt trapped in the village?

9. What does Mowgli's longing for the jungle tell us about his true identity?

10. Why was Mowgli's greatest challenge no longer Shere Khan at the end of the text?

Story Time

The Jungle Book by Rudyard Kipling

Chapter Six

"Mowgli's Life Balance"

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

Over time	بمرور الوقت	peace (n)	سلام
belong (v.ed)	ينتمي	order (n)	نظام
return (v.ed)	يعود	knowledge (n)	معرفة
welcome (v.d)	يرحب	uniting (n)	توحيد
ties (n)	روابط	strength (n)	قوة
cattle (n)	ماشية	alone (adj)	بمفرده
crops (n)	محاصيل	remain (v.ed)	يبقى
defend (v.ed)	يدافع	a sign of courage	علامة على الشجاعة
hunters (n)	صيادون	belonging (n)	انتماء
needlessly (adv)	بلا داع	nature (n)	الطبيعة
necessary (adj)	هام	beasts (n)	وحوش
balance (n)	توازن		



Definitions

crops	محاصيل	plants that farmers grow for food or other uses
beasts	وحوش	wild or dangerous animals
peace	سلام	state of calm, safety and harmony
welcoming	مرحب	behaving in a polite or friendly way

- Read the following text.

What did Mowgli do to keep his **connection**⁽¹⁾ with the jungle? Over time, Mowgli **accepted**⁽²⁾ that he **belonged to**⁽³⁾ both worlds. He **returned**⁽⁴⁾ often to the **jungle**⁽⁵⁾, visiting Baloo, Bagheera, and his wolf brothers. They welcomed him as family, reminding him that courage and loyalty were stronger than **blood**⁽⁶⁾. At the same time, he kept ties with the village, helping humans protect their cattle and crops. Mowgli became a bridge between man and **nature**⁽⁷⁾. He defended the jungle against hunters who killed **needlessly**⁽⁸⁾,



and he defended the villagers against wild animals when **necessary**⁽⁹⁾. Through this balance, he found a new kind of peace. Mowgli carried within him the order of the Law of the **Jungle**⁽¹⁰⁾ and the knowledge of people. By **uniting**⁽¹¹⁾ them, he discovered strength greater than either alone. The Jungle Book ends not with Mowgli choosing one world over the other, but with him welcoming both. His story remains a sign of **courage**⁽¹²⁾, belonging, and **balance**⁽¹³⁾ between human and nature.

١. صلة / ارتباط
٢. قبل / تقبل
٣. ينتمي إلى
٤. عاد
٥. الغابة
٦. الدم
٧. الطبيعة
٨. بلا داع
٩. مهم
١٠. الأدغال
١١. توحيد
١٢. شجاعة
١٣. توازن

بمرور الوقت، تقبل ماوكلي انتماءه إلى كلا العالمين. كان يعود مراراً إلى الغابة، زائراً بالو وبغيرا وإخوته الذئاب. رغبوا به كفرد من العائلة، مذكّرين إياه بأن الشجاعة والوفاء أقوى من رابطة الدم. وفي الوقت نفسه، حافظ على صلاته بالقرية، مساعدًا البشر في حماية مواشيهم ومحاصيلهم.

أصبح ماوكلي جسراً بين البشر والطبيعة. دافع عن الغابة ضد الصيادين الذين يقتلون بلا داع، ودافع عن القرويين ضد الحيوانات المفترسة عند الضرورة. من خلال هذا التوازن، وجد نوعاً جديداً من السلام. حمل ماوكلي في داخله نظام قانون الغابة ومعرفة البشر. وبجمعهما، اكتشف قوة أعظم من أي منهما على حدة.

لا تنتهي قصة كتاب الأدغال باختيار ماوكلي عالماً على الآخر، بل باستقباله ل كليهما. تبقى قصته رمزاً للشجاعة والانتماء والتوازن بين الإنسان والطبيعة...

Exercises on Chapter 6

A Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Mowgli decided to live only in the jungle and never visit the village again.	☐	☐
2. Baloo and Bagheera still welcomed Mowgli as part of their family.	☐	☐
3. Mowgli helped the villagers by protecting their animals and crops.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli allowed hunters to kill animals in the jungle for no reason.	☐	☐
5. By connecting both worlds, Mowgli felt a new kind of peace.	☐	☐
6. In the end, Mowgli chose to belong to only one world.	☐	☐
7. Mowgli visited the jungle only once a year.	☐	☐
8. The wolf brothers treated Mowgli like a stranger.	☐	☐
9. Mowgli believed that courage and loyalty were more important than blood.	☐	☐
10. Mowgli protected the jungle from people who killed animals for no reason	☐	☐
11. Mowgli combined the Law of the Jungle with the knowledge of humans.	☐	☐
12. Mowgli felt that being part of two worlds made him weaker.	☐	☐
13. The story ends with Mowgli feeling balance and at peace.	☐	☐

B Answer the following questions:

SB Questions

1. How did the animals welcome Mowgli when he visited the jungle?

كيف رحبت الحيوانات بماوكلي عندما زار الغابة؟

- The animals welcomed Mowgli as family and reminded him that courage and loyalty were stronger than blood.

- رحبت الحيوانات بماوكلي كفرد من العائلة، وذكرته بأن الشجاعة والوفاء أقوى من روابط الدم.

2. What two groups did Mowgli protect?

ما المجموعتان اللتان كان ماوكلي يحميهما؟

- Mowgli protected the jungle from hunters who killed needlessly and protected the villagers from wild animals.

- حَمَى ماوكلي الغابة من الصيادين الذين يقتلون دون حاجة، كما حَمَى القرويين من الحيوانات البرية.

3. What is the lesson we learn from Mowgli's story? ما الدرس الذي نتعلمه من قصة ماوگلي؟
 - The lesson is that balance between humanity and nature creates strength, peace, and true belonging.
 - الدرس المستفاد هو أن التوازن بين الإنسانية والطبيعة يحقق القوة والسلام والانتماء الحقيقي.
4. How did Mowgli's story end? كيف انتهت قصة ماوگلي؟
 - Mowgli's story ended with him welcoming both the human world and the jungle instead of choosing one over the other.
 - انتهت قصة ماوگلي بترحيبه بعالم البشر وعالم الغابة معًا، دون أن يختار أحدهما على الآخر.
5. How did Baloo and Bagheera welcome Mowgli? كيف رحب بالو وماغيرا بماوگلي؟
 - They welcomed him as their family. رحبوا به كأنه أحد أفراد العائلة.
6. What did Mowgli's story become a sign of? ما الذي أصبح قصة ماوگلي علامة عليه؟
 - It became a sign of courage and balance. لقد أصبحت (قصته) رمزاً للشجاعة والتوازن.
7. Who did Mowgli defend the villagers against? ممن حمى ماوگلي أهل القرية؟
 - The wild animals. من الحيوانات البرية.

Answer the following questions:

Bit by Bit questions

8. What did Mowgli do to keep his connection with the jungle? ما الذي فعله ماوگلي ليحافظ على ارتباطه بالغابة؟
 - Mowgli kept his connection with the jungle by returning often to visit Baloo, Bagheera, and his wolf brothers, and by defending the jungle against hunters who killed needlessly.
 - حافظ ماوگلي على ارتباطه بالغابة من خلال عودته المتكررة لزيارة بالو وباغيرا وإخوته من الذئاب، وكذلك من خلال دفاعه عن الغابة ضد الصيادين الذين يقتلون بلا داع.
9. Why did Mowgli return often to the jungle? لماذا كان ماوگلي يعود كثيرًا إلى الغابة؟
 - Mowgli returned often to the jungle because he still belonged to it and wanted to visit his animal friends who welcomed him as family.
 - كان ماوگلي يعود كثيرًا إلى الغابة لأنه كان لا يزال ينتمي إليها، ولأنه أراد زيارة أصدقائه من الحيوانات الذين رحبوا به كأحد أفراد العائلة.
10. How did Mowgli help the people in the village? كيف ساعد ماوگلي الناس في القرية؟
 - Mowgli helped the villagers by protecting their cattle and crops and defending them from wild animals when necessary.
 - ساعد ماوگلي أهل القرية من خلال حماية ماشيتهم ومحاصيلهم، والدفاع عنهم ضد الحيوانات البرية عند الحاجة.
11. Why was Mowgli considered a bridge between man and nature? لماذا اعتُبر ماوگلي جسرًا بين الإنسان والطبيعة؟
 - Mowgli was considered a bridge because he understood both the Law of the Jungle and the ways of humans and united them.
 - اعتُبر ماوگلي جسرًا لأنه فهم قانون الغابة وعادات البشر معًا، وقام بتوحيدهما.

12. What kind of peace did Mowgli find through balance?

أي نوع من السلام وجدته ماوگلي من خلال التوازن؟

- Through balance between the jungle and the village, Mowgli found a new kind of peace based on understanding and harmony.

- من خلال التوازن بين الغابة والقرية، وجد ماوگلي نوعًا جديدًا من السلام قائمًا على الفهم والانسجام.

Critical thinking questions

SB Questions

Answer the following questions:

1. How can people today create harmony between life and the environment?

كيف يمكن للناس اليوم أن يحققوا الانسجام بين الحياة والبيئة؟

- People can create harmony by respecting nature, protecting natural resources, and using them responsibly without causing harm to the environment.

- يمكن للناس تحقيق الانسجام من خلال احترام الطبيعة، وحماية الموارد الطبيعية، واستخدامها بطريقة مسؤولة دون إلحاق الضرر بالبيئة.

2. What does Mowgli's story teach us about balancing different parts of our lives (family, culture, nature, and responsibility)?

ماذا تعلمنا قصة ماوگلي عن تحقيق التوازن بين جوانب حياتنا المختلفة (الأسرة، والثقافة، والطبيعة، والمسؤولية)؟

- Mowgli's story teaches us that true strength comes from balance, and that respecting all parts of life helps us live peacefully and responsibly.

- تعلمنا قصة ماوگلي أن القوة الحقيقية تأتي من التوازن، وأن احترام جميع جوانب الحياة يساعدنا على العيش بسلام وتحمل المسؤولية.

3. What makes Mowgli a true hero: his strength, his courage, or his wisdom?

ما الذي يجعل ماوگلي بطلاً حقيقياً: قوته أم شجاعته أم حكمته؟ وضح ذلك.

- Mowgli is a true hero because of his wisdom, as he understands both humans and animals and knows when to protect each side with fairness and balance.

- يُعدّ ماوگلي بطلاً حقيقياً بسبب حكمته، إذ يفهم عالم البشر وعالم الحيوانات معاً، ويعرف متى يحمي كل طرف بعدل وتوازن.

4. What qualities help people live in peace? ما الصفات التي تساعد الناس على العيش بسلام؟

- To accept and value others and to be faithful to your friends and family.

- تقبل الآخرين وتقديرهم، والوفاء للأصدقاء والعائلة.

5. How can people build good relationships with animals?

كيف يمكن للناس بناء علاقات طيبة مع الحيوانات؟

- By not hunting animals needlessly and protecting their homes and by treating nature with care, just as Mowgli cared for his jungle family.

- بالامتناع عن صيد الحيوانات بلا داع، وحماية موائلها، والتعامل مع الطبيعة بعناية، كما كان ماوگلي يعتني بعائلته في الغابة.

Bit by Bit Critical Thinking Questions

6. Why is balance more important than choosing only one side in Mowgli's life?

لماذا يُعدّ التوازن أكثر أهمية من اختيار جانب واحد فقط في حياة ماوكلّي؟

- Balance is more important because it allows Mowgli to live peacefully in both worlds and use the strengths of each without losing his identity.

- يُعدّ التوازن أكثر أهمية لأنه يسمح لماوكلّي بالعيش بسلام في العالمين والاستفادة من قوة كل منهما دون فقدان هويته.

7. What qualities helped Mowgli gain trust from both humans and animals?

ما الصفات التي ساعدت ماوكلّي على كسب ثقة البشر والحيوانات معًا؟

- Mowgli gained trust through courage, loyalty, fairness, and his respect for both human and animal communities.

- كسب ماوكلّي الثقة من خلال الشجاعة، والوفاء، والعدل، واحترامه لمجتمعي البشر والحيوانات.

8. How does Mowgli's story reflect real-life relationships between humans and nature?

كيف تعكس قصة ماوكلّي العلاقة الواقعية بين الإنسان والطبيعة؟

- The story reflects how humans depend on nature and must protect it, just as nature can protect humans when treated with respect.

- تعكس القصة اعتماد الإنسان على الطبيعة وضرورة حمايتها، تمامًا كما يمكن للطبيعة أن تحمي الإنسان عندما تُعامل باحترام.

9. What would the world be like if more people acted as bridges between humans and nature like Mowgli?

كيف سيكون العالم لو تصرف عدد أكبر من الناس كجسور بين الإنسان والطبيعة مثل ماوكلّي؟

- The world would be more peaceful and balanced, with less conflict and greater respect for the environment and all living beings.

- سيكون العالم أكثر سلامًا وتوازنًا، مع صراعات أقل واحترام أكبر للبيئة وجميع الكائنات الحية.

Exercises on Chapter 6



Read and put (T) True or (F) False:

	T	F
1. Mowgli never returned to the jungle after living with humans.	☐	☐
2. Mowgli helped the villagers protect their cattle and crops.	☐	☐
3. Mowgli fought only for humans and never for the jungle.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli found peace by accepting both sides of himself.	☐	☐
5. Baloo and Bagheera welcomed Mowgli as their family.	☐	☐
6. Mowgli defended villagers against wild birds.	☐	☐
7. Mowgli's story became a sign of courage and balance.	☐	☐

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 8. Mowgli completely left the jungle and never returned to it. | ☐ | ☐ |
| 9. Mowgli often visited Baloo, Bagheera, and his wolf brothers in the jungle. | ☐ | ☐ |
| 10. The animals welcomed Mowgli and treated him as a stranger. | ☐ | ☐ |
| 11. Mowgli believed that courage and loyalty were more important than blood ties. | ☐ | ☐ |
| 12. Mowgli cut all his connections with the human village. | ☐ | ☐ |
| 13. Mowgli helped humans protect their cattle and crops. | ☐ | ☐ |
| 14. Mowgli acted as a bridge between humans and nature. | ☐ | ☐ |
| 15. Mowgli defended hunters who killed animals without need. | ☐ | ☐ |
| 16. He defended villagers from wild animals when it was necessary. | ☐ | ☐ |
| 17. The story ends with Mowgli accepting both the jungle and the human world. | ☐ | ☐ |

B Answer the following questions:

- How did Mowgli help maintain peace between the jungle and the village?

- Why did the animals in the jungle continue to welcome Mowgli as family?

- What role did the Law of the Jungle play in shaping Mowgli's actions?

- How did Mowgli protect the jungle from harm caused by humans?

- What lesson does Mowgli's story teach about balance between humans and nature?

- Why is balance important when someone belongs to two different worlds or cultures?

- How can Mowgli's actions inspire people today to protect nature responsibly?

- What problems might arise if humans ignore the "Law of the Jungle" or natural rules?

- In what ways does cooperation between humans and nature benefit both sides?

- How can courage and loyalty help a person make fair decisions in difficult situations?

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة في وحدات كتاب Bit Bit

Unit 7

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My Name is Fawzy. I'm 14 years old.
My father is a farmer. He grows a lot of vegetables. He also keeps some animals and birds. In my school, I have got a lot of friends. My school day begins at eight o'clock in the morning. After school, I usually help my father. I love looking after animals. I like farming. I want to grow the main crops on our farm when I grow up.

Test on Unit 1

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

To study effectively, you need an organized timetable. Review your subjects every day. You must keep your lab book for science class clean. This is your responsibility. A good student uses a brush for their art class and wears a coat in the lab. Prepare your work smoothly and you will do very well.

Unit 8

General Exercises Lesson 3

Singing and stories are powerful techniques in smart learning. They make learning fun and meaningful. They help students imagine and empathize with others. They also help students memorize new words and phrases naturally. This learning style builds confidence

and encourages shy students to join in. Students feel relaxed and enjoy participating in activities. Teachers use songs and stories to create a happy atmosphere.

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Malek draws diagrams for long processes like photosynthesis. Visual learning helps him understand faster. He finds it helpful to connect steps to something familiar. Learning becomes easier and more interesting.

Test on Unit 2

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Rayan is very shy. He does not participate in group activities. His teacher gives him advice to improve. She uses interactive apps and learning games. These tools are popular with students. Rayan starts to join in and practice more. Gradually, he becomes confident. He can handle every task now. This digital learning makes learning easy and enjoyable.

Unit 9

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My job profile is about my future career and the work I want to do. I would like to work as a teacher because I enjoy helping others learn. My job includes preparing lessons, explaining ideas clearly, and supporting students.

Test on Unit 9**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Choosing your career is an important decision in your life. First, you should think about your interests and what you enjoy doing. You also need to know your strengths and skills. Reading job profiles can help you understand the responsibilities and qualifications needed for each job.

Unit 10**Al Azhar Exercises****1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

My town Minya is near the Nile. It is famous for its black honey and the ancient monuments. Thousands of tourists visit it every year.

Test on Unit 10**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Cinderella is a kind girl who lives with her cruel stepmother and two stepsisters. After her father's death, she works as a servant in her own home. One day, the king holds a royal party for the prince. With the help of a fairy, Cinderella attends the party. The prince loves her kindness, finds her later, and marries her.

Unit 11**Al Azhar Exercises****1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Adel is student in prep school . He lives with his family in Giza in a big house. He likes playing football .After dinner. He likes watching T.V.

Test on Unit 11**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Osama was born in 1994. When he was 22, he travelled to America but he had an accident and he lost his leg, but this didn't stop him working hard to be successful. Now, he is an important businessman.

Unit 12**Al Azhar Exercises****1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Eating healthy food and exercising regularly is good for our health. Exercise makes our heart strong and healthy. It also helps our body to stay fit and gives us more energy. Doing sports or walking every day can keep our heart and body in good condition.

Test on Unit 12**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Last summer, I visited two beautiful cities. The first city is famous for its colorful festivals and delicious food. Every year, people from all over the world come to enjoy the celebrations. The second city is known for its stunning beaches and clear blue water. Tourists love to swim, relax, and take pictures there. Both cities have rich history and amazing landmarks. They are located on the same continent, making it easy to travel between them. Visiting these cities was an unforgettable experience, and I hope to go back someday.

ENGLISH

FOR PREPARATORY SCHOOLS

ملحق تسميع المفردات والواجب المنزلي

20
26

الصف الثاني الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني



nd **2**
PREP
SECOND TERM

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



R

Review on Unit 7 (My School Life)

Lessons ① & ②

قواعد	بحرص
سلوك/ تصرف	زملاء الفصل
قواعد الزى	هادئ
حذاء رياضي	طريق
طريقة/ ممر	أثناء
ممنوع	طريقة/ ممر
اعدادي	وجبة خفيفة
بيئة تعليمية	ملهيات/ مشتتات
امن	مثمر/فعال/مفيد
محترم للآخرين	يفضل
بالتساوي	يخلق/يوفر
بصحة جيدة	يتبع
هواتف خلوية	يتطلب

واتق	يرفع
اخلاق/آداب سلوك	يُعيد/يرجع
مدروس بعناية	يحي
اجواء ايجابية	يقاطع الكلام
جدول مواعيد	يشارك

1. Write the word:

_____ instructions that tell people what they must or must not do

_____ the way someone acts

_____ something not allowed to happen by rules or law

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
forbidden	_____	_____
safe	_____	_____

quiet

respectful

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-y / -ive / -ful / re- / -able / -ly	
careful _____	enjoy _____
health _____	respect _____
product _____	view _____



1 A. Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:



1. What did the writer do after school?

- a. Watched TV
- b. Reviewed lessons
- c. Played a game
- d. Went shopping

2. What does the writer put in their bag?

- a. A toy and a snack
- b. Food and a drink
- c. Books and an art brush
- d. Shoes and clothes

B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

1. What does "good self-control" mean to the writer?

.....

2. What simple movement does the writer do?

.....

3. What happens the next day when the writer is organized?

.....

2 Finish the following dialog:

Basant is talking to her mother about her first day of school.

Mother : Did you like your first day at school? Basant?

Basant : Yes. I did

Mother : What ① will you study this year?

Basant : This year, I'll study Arabic, English, Maths and Science.

Mother : Which subject do you ② ?

Basant : I like ③

Mother : ④ do you like this subject?

Basant : Because I like doing experiments in the lab.

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Schools have _____ about being on time.
a. behavior b. dress code c. rules d. sneakers
2. Good _____ is important in class.
a. environment b. hallway c. behavior d. subject
3. The school's _____ says we must wear a uniform.
a. sneakers b. hallway c. dress code d. preparatory
4. I wear comfortable _____ for P.E. class.
a. sneakers b. cell phones c. classmates d. rules
5. Do not run in the school _____.
a. behavior b. preparatory c. hallway d. environment
6. Eating in the library is _____.
a. safe b. healthy c. careful d. forbidden
7. The _____ school is for older students.
a. respectful b. preparatory c. equally d. forbidden
8. We must keep our classroom _____ clean.
a. environment b. dress code c. sneakers d. rules
9. A school should be a _____ place for everyone.
a. forbidden b. preparatory c. safe d. equally
10. Be _____ to your teachers.
a. healthy b. respectful c. carefully d. equally
11. The teacher treats all students _____.
a. lovely b. friendly c. equally d. quickly
12. Eating fruit is a _____ habit.
a. safe b. healthy c. respectful d. preparatory

13. Please put your _____ away during the lesson.
a. sneakers b. hallway c. thinking d. cell phone
14. Listen _____ to the instructions.
a. equally b. carefully c. hardly d. safely
15. I work on a project with my _____.
a. environment b. classmates c. behavior d. sneakers
16. A _____ shows your classes for each day of the week.
a. library b. box c. timetable d. map
17. Students must wear their school _____ every day at school.
a. library b. flag c. uniform d. shoes
18. Students should _____ all school rules.
a. break b. follow c. blow d. fly
19. We borrow books and study quietly in the school _____.
a. library b. office c. laboratory d. playground
20. We enjoy doing scientific _____ in the lab.
a. uniforms b. experiments c. experts d. timetables

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. It's advisable to save your work frequently while using the computer. (Save...)

2. It is not a good idea to eat a heavy meal right before exercising. (shouldn't)

3. If I were you, I would make a reservation at that popular restaurant. (should)

4. You are not permitted to feed the animals at the zoo. (Don't...)

5. It's advisable to wear a helmet when riding a bike.

(Wear...)

6. If I were you, I would ask for help if I don't understand the instructions. (Ask...)

7. It is not a good idea to leave your luggage unattended at the airport. (shouldn't)

8. It's advisable to drink plenty of water on a hot day.

(Drink...)

9. If I were you, I would study a little bit every day.

(should)

10. You are not permitted to park in front of the hospital.

(Don't...)

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hallway - respectful - rules - behavior - sneakers

Our school has ① _____. We must follow them. The dress code says we should wear ② _____ for sports. Running in the ③ _____ is forbidden. Good behavior is important. We must be ④ _____ to classmates. We greet our teachers. We avoid loud noise and keep the school a safe place for everyone.

lessons 3 - 5 & 6

تربية بدنية	مواد دراسية
نشاط	مادة العلوم
متعاون/مفيد	مادة الرسم/فن
ممتع	مسؤولية
معمل حاسوب	لاحقاً
صبور	بحكمة
ودود	فرشاة
نادي التمثيل	كافي
بشكل عام	خاص
يراجع	فعاليات
يحضر	يوم رياضي
يناقش	معرض العلوم
يخطط	ينظم
يدير	يراجع
يقدم	يُعدّ/يجهز
بسلاسة/بسهولة	مدير المدرسة
منظم	طابور الصباح
معرض	إشعار/ملاحظة
ضبط النفس	مُرتبك
فترة/حصّة	زي موحد
يدير	ربما
بفعالية/بشكل مؤثر	ثابت
حركة	مخطط
جدول مواعيد	يومي
مواد دراسية	واجبات
خدمة	ممتاز
طوابق	فصل دراسي
صالة رياضية	بادب
دفتـر المعمل	مركز
معطف	بالضبط

1. Write the word:

_____	a fixed time in a school timetable during which a specific subject or activity is taught
_____	in a calm, easy, and regular way
_____	to plan and arrange things in order
_____	in a way that works well and produces good results
_____	to control or direct something successfully

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
organized	_____	_____
effectively	_____	_____
smoothly	_____	_____
responsibility	_____	_____
wisely	_____	_____
special	_____	_____
true	_____	_____
fixed	_____	_____
active	_____	_____
confused	_____	_____

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

self- / -ity / -ed / -ly / -ment / -er / -ful	
teach _____	responsibil _____
control _____	smooth _____
activ _____	wise _____
move _____	organiz _____
confus _____	dai _____
power _____	help _____
polite _____	exact _____



1 Finish the following dialog:

Waleed and his father are talking about Waleed's birthday present.

Waleed : Dad, I want a new computer, please!

Father : Why do you ① it?

Waleed : I need to do some ② on the internet.

Father : Do you know how to ③ the internet?

Waleed : Yes, we use computers at ④

Father : OK. I'll get you one next Friday.

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. I have a new It tells me when to study, eat, and sleep.

- a. self-control b. movement c. timetable d. period

2. I will you how to draw a perfect circle.

- a. show b. manage c. pack d. brush

3. Her desk is very She knows where everything is.

- a. fair b. enough c. special d. organized

4. For science, we write all our notes in a

- a. Sports Day b. lab book c. self-control d. movement

5. All the students will take part in the Science next week.

- a. Pair b. Fair c. Care d. Air

6. Football and tennis are my favorite

- a. subjects b. sports c. periods d. movements

7. The car moved over the new road. It did not shake at all.

- a. lately b. enough c. smoothly d. hardly

8. I need to my time to finish all my homework.

- a. stop b. show c. explore d. manage

9. My birthday is a _____ day for me.
a. fair b. special c. enough d. organized
10. He worked _____ and finished the job very well.
a. smoothly b. effectively c. enough d. specially
11. The school has three _____. My class is on the top one.
a. gyms b. notices c. floors d. principals
12. Every day, all students stand in the _____ before the classes start.
a. morning line b. computer lab c. notice d. gym
13. The _____ of the school is the main boss.
a. notice b. patient c. principal d. floor
14. There is a _____ on the wall about the school trip next week.
a. gym b. morning line c. confused d. notice
15. I was _____ by the difficult math question. I did not understand it.
a. patient b. confused c. principal d. floors
16. We play basketball and run races inside the school _____.
a. computer lab b. office c. gym d. morning line
17. We learn typing and use the internet in the _____.
a. computer lab b. gym c. principal d. floors
18. A good teacher is always _____ and does not get angry quickly.
a. confused b. notice c. patient d. principal
19. We must _____ care of our school and keep it clean.
a. take b. show c. do d. waste
20. It is important to be _____ time for class every morning.
a. for b. up c. on d. at
21. It isn't _____ to use your phone during the test.
a. careful b. allowed c. used d. known

22. Students must _____ during the lesson to remember information.

- a. take notes b. show pride c. take care d. wake up

23. Good friends help _____ when there is a problem.

- a. another b. every other c. other d. each other

24. I must wake _____ early tomorrow for my school trip.

- a. off b. up c. over d. on

25. You should take _____ of your younger brother at the park.

- a. care b. pride c. time d. part

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

smoothly - timetable - effectively - manage - period

My new ① _____ helps me ② _____ my day. Each study period is one hour long. I work on my tasks ③ _____, without stopping. When I follow my plan, my day goes ④ _____. I finish my work on time. This gives me more time to play and rest. It is a very good feeling.

Test on Unit 7

A: Listening

1 A. Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:



1. What is happening tomorrow?_____.
- a. A school test b. A school party
- c. A school Sports Day d. A teacher meeting
2. What does the writer hope to have enough of?_____.
- a. Friends b. Prizes c. Energy d. Time

 B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

1. How many events will the writer run in?

100 200 300 400 500 600 700 800 900 1000 1100 1200 1300 1400 1500 1600 1700 1800 1900 2000 2100 2200 2300 2400 2500 2600 2700 2800 2900 3000 3100 3200 3300 3400 3500 3600 3700 3800 3900 4000 4100 4200 4300 4400 4500 4600 4700 4800 4900 5000 5100 5200 5300 5400 5500 5600 5700 5800 5900 6000 6100 6200 6300 6400 6500 6600 6700 6800 6900 7000 7100 7200 7300 7400 7500 7600 7700 7800 7900 8000 8100 8200 8300 8400 8500 8600 8700 8800 8900 9000 9100 9200 9300 9400 9500 9600 9700 9800 9900 10000

2. Why are the writer's friends coming to Sports Day?

200 205 210 215 220 225 230 235 240 245 250 255 260 265 270 275 280 285 290 295 300 305 310 315 320 325 330 335 340 345 350 355 360 365 370 375 380 385 390 395 400 405 410 415 420 425 430 435 440 445 450 455 460 465 470 475 480 485 490 495 500 505 510 515 520 525 530 535 540 545 550 555 560 565 570 575 580 585 590 595 600 605 610 615 620 625 630 635 640 645 650 655 660 665 670 675 680 685 690 695 700 705 710 715 720 725 730 735 740 745 750 755 760 765 770 775 780 785 790 795 800 805 810 815 820 825 830 835 840 845 850 855 860 865 870 875 880 885 890 895 900 905 910 915 920 925 930 935 940 945 950 955 960 965 970 975 980 985 990 995

3. What is the writer's final hope for their team?

302 303 304 305 306 307 308 309 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 317 318 319 320 321 322 323 324 325 326 327 328 329 330 331 332 333 334 335 336 337 338 339 340 341 342 343 344 345 346 347 348 349 350 351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 379 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 391 392 393 394 395 396 397 398 399 400 401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409 410 411 412 413 414 415 416 417 418 419 420 421 422 423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431 432 433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441 442 443 444 445 446 447 448 449 450 451 452 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 469 470 471 472 473 474 475 476 477 478 479 480 481 482 483 484 485 486 487 488 489 490 491 492 493 494 495 496 497 498 499 500

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- [illegible]

experiment - brush - subjects - special - show

In science, we have a ❶ _____ book called a lab book. We write all our notes in it. Today, the teacher will ❷ _____ us a new experiment. We will use a small ❸ _____ to clean the equipment. Science and math are my favourite ❹ _____. I like learning new things every day. It is fun to see how things work in our world.

4

Our preparatory school wants a healthy and productive environment. To create this, we must follow some steps. First, arrive on time using your timetable. In class, listen carefully and participate. Raise your hand; do not interrupt. During the break, you can eat a snack in the corridor. We must respect teachers and treat friends equally. Cell phones are forbidden in class; they are big distractions. This behavior helps everyone. Our school requires us to be safe and respectful. I prefer to study this way. It helps us learn more and be better students.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where can you eat your snack at school?
- a. In the library b. On the sports field
- c. In the corridor d. In the classroom
2. What does the school require students to be?
- a. Quiet and busy b. Fast and smart
- c. Safe and respectful d. Happy and funny

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the first step to help create a good environment?

4. What are you not allowed to do in class when someone is talking?

5. What does the writer prefer about studying this way?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. The baby boy was found by Mother Wolf first.	☐	☐
2. Mowgli grew up in the city.	☐	☐
3. Baloo promised to teach the boy the Law of the Jungle.	☐	☐
4. Shere Khan made a promise to protect Mowgli.	☐	☐

B: Answer the following questions:

1. Which two animals supported Mother Wolf and wanted to keep the boy?

2. How do you think living with wolves will be different for Mowgli than living with humans?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. If I were you I would listen carefully to my teacher. (should.....)

2. You shouldn't go near wild animals in the zoo. (Don't...)

3. It isn't advisable to park your car here. (shouldn't)

4. You should revise your lessons every day. (Revise ...)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Omar meets Adel in the corridor.

Omar : Hello Adel! How are you?

Adel : I'm ①, thanks.

Omar : Where are you ②?

Adel : I'm going to the ③

Unit 7 My School Life

Omar : Why are you going there?

Adel : We have a 4 lesson.

Omar : Did you bring your lab book?

Adel : Yes, I did.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Your school trip to the zoo"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

R

Review on Unit 8 (Learn Smart, Learn Easy)

Lessons ① & ②

تركيز	ألعاب تحريب العقل / ألعاب تنمية الذكاء
خجول	عقلي
يحسن	خبير
يجمع	تطبيقات تفاعلية
يشارك	فَعَال
يتعامل مع	يشجع
يدعم	تعلّم اللغات
يحفز	تعليمي
نمو	تعليم
غريب	تطوير
نقاش / جدال	مهمة
فضاء	هدف
أنشطة جماعية	يطوّر
مهارات الذاكرة	يوازن
أذكي	يشئت
عالم	يؤمن
مؤكد / مُعَيّن	يبدو
بحث / أبحاث	يدعو
خُصُوصاً	يتجاهل
ألعاب الألغاز	يستبدل
بوضوح	يتفاعل / يشارك
الحياة الواقعية	الطرق التقليدية
ألعاب الحركة	أدوات
ألعاب التعلّم	أساسي
مُمتّع	مدير / مسئول
أسلوب / نمط	التعلم الرقمي
دور	بِنَشْاط
تُدرِجِيَا	عقل
احتياجات	المعدات المناسبة
	مضحك

1. Write the word:

_____	focusing your mind on one thing
_____	related to the mind or thinking
_____	people who know a lot about something
_____	to put things together
_____	not confident to talk to others
_____	to take part in an activity

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
shy	_____	_____
active	_____	_____
smart	_____	_____
quiet	_____	_____
fun / enjoyable	_____	_____
popular	_____	_____
concentration	_____	_____
effective	_____	_____

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-able / -ion / -ly / -ive / -ed / inter- / -al / -ment / -ing	
active _____	focus _____
enjoy _____	learn _____
careful _____	develop _____
education _____	concentrat _____
train _____	educat _____
effective _____	gradual _____
active _____	think _____
effect _____	clear _____
interact _____	

Lessons



Lessons 1 - 2

1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. The word "....." means focusing your mind on one thing.
 a. development b. solutions c. information d. concentration
2. Using games is an effective method for young students. "....." is a synonym of "effective".
 a. Ineffective b. Successful c. Energetic d. Focused
3. To get the noun for a person from the verb "play", add the suffix
 a. -ar b. -er c. -ant d. -ir
4. It is important to in school sports to stay healthy.
 a. participate b. support c. balance d. motivate
5. are the people who know a lot about something.
 a. Players b. Scientists c. Experts d. Administrators
6. My little sister is shy. The antonym of "shy" is
 a. confident b. timid c. lazy d. noisy
7. Reading books is a good activity that makes you smarter.
 a. mental b. physical c. social d. digital
8. Teachers use puzzles and games to make more enjoyable.
 a. research b. equipment c. education d. concentration
9. It is important to have a clear before you start any new task.
 a. goal b. skill c. space d. activity
10. The adjective from the verb "enjoy" is formed by adding the suffix
 a. -able b. -al c. -ive d. -ful
11. You must your time between studying and playing.
 a. distract b. support c. improve d. balance

12. It is easy to distracted when there is a lot of noise.

- a. make b. do c. get d. give

13. Teachers advice to help students learn better.

- a. make b. take c. give d. do

14. Learning games quick thinking in a fun way.

- a. combine b. handle c. develop d. participate

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

focus - mental - improve - interactive - combine

Many experts say that brain training games are very effective. These puzzle games help you ① your memory skills and concentration. When you ② on a task, you become smarter and learn to solve problems quickly. It is enjoyable to ③ learning with fun. These ④ apps keep your mind active. They also help you develop new skills for real life.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Anas tried to concentrate on his task. He felt very tired. (but)

.....

2. Some apps are educational. Others are just for fun. (while)

.....

3. Shaza wants to be smarter. She doesn't like to study. (However)

.....

4. Solving puzzles is a mental task. Running is a physical task. (while)

.....

5. The interviewer was kind. However, the boy felt very nervous. (but)

.....

6. Research is very important. It takes a long time to finish. (However)

.....

7. He wants to improve his English. He doesn't practice every day. (but)

8. Puzzles help you focus. They can be very difficult. (While)

9. Playing video games is fun. It can be a distraction. (but)

10. The expert gave good advice, but the students didn't listen. (However)

4 Finish the following dialog:

Tamer encourages his friend Nader to be more confident.

Tamer : Why are you so quiet today?

Nader : I am a bit ①..... so I don't participate.

Tamer : Don't worry! These ②..... apps are fun for everyone.

Nader : ③..... they help me feel more confident?

Tamer : Yes, they encourage everyone to join in.

Nader : Will they help me improve my memory skills too?

Tamer : Yes, these games help you ④..... and learn fast.

Nader : Thanks for your help.

Lessons 3 - 5 & 6

تفاعلي	قلق / متوتر
التعلم التقليدي	التعلم الذكي
منزعج / متضايق	يربط / يتصل
يحفظ / يستذكر	يخلق / يبتكر
عاطفة / شعور	يتجنب
أهمية	مشاعر / أحاسيس
ثقافة	غرض / هدف
تواصل	تقنية / أسلوب
يكرر	مشاركة
يتذكر	مبدع / مبتكر
عبارة	معرفة
بشكل طبيعي / تلقائياً	حقيقة
يشعر بالملل	نطق
فرح / بهجة	طريقة
جو / أجواء / بيئة	ثقة
قوي / مؤثر	قيمة
بطاقات تعليمية	تعريفات
بصري / مرئي	رسم توضيحي / مخطط
عملية البناء الضوئي	ملاحظات
يعاني / يواجه صعوبة	بكل تأكيد / قطعاً
يركز	كلمات الأغاني
صمت	عبقري / رائع
قادم	فيلم وثائقي
مألوف / معروف	رواية مصورة
قصيدة	قصص مصورة
إيقاع	نصائح
ملاحظات تقييمية	استراحات منتظمة
مساحة	بيئة الدراسة
بمفرده	إدارة الوقت
قابل للتحقيق	حافز / دافع
عملية / يعالج	يخلط / يمزج
جدول مواعيد	يسلي / يرفه عن
بالإضافة إلى ذلك	يناسب / يلائم
علاوة على ذلك	رسوم متحركة

1. Write the word:

_____	involving active participation and communication
_____	worried or nervous
_____	having real importance or purpose
_____	to form ideas in the mind about something
_____	to understand other's feelings

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
confidence	_____	_____
meaningful	_____	_____
different	_____	_____
anxious	_____	_____
modern	_____	_____
exciting	_____	_____
remember	_____	_____
powerful	_____	_____
definition	_____	_____
silence	_____	_____
struggle	_____	_____
memorize	_____	_____
familiar	_____	_____

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ful / -ly / -ent / -ation / -ive / -ment / -able / -ate / -ize / re- / -ition / -ion	
natural _____	meaning _____
creat _____	power _____
pronunci _____	inform _____
differ _____	read _____
motiv _____	motivat _____
manage _____	memor _____
defini _____	achiev _____


1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. To _____ is to form ideas in the mind about something.
 a. imagine b. avoid c. connect d. empathize
2. I feel anxious before a test. The antonym of "anxious" is _____.
 a. worried b. nervous c. calm d. angry
3. The teacher is _____ and makes lessons enjoyable.
 a. meaningful b. creative c. anxious d. traditional
4. Smart learning is a powerful way to learn. "Powerful" is similar in meaning to _____.
 a. ineffective b. powerless c. useless d. effective
5. The word "_____" means involving active participation and communication.
 a. creative b. powerful c. interactive d. anxious
6. "_____" is the opposite of "similar".
 a. Same b. Traditional c. Usual d. Different
7. To get the noun from "pronounce", we add the suffix _____.
 a. -ion b. -ition c. -cion d. -ation
8. I use songs to _____ my new English words.
 a. memorize b. imagine c. empathize d. avoid
9. Reading out loud helps you _____ confidence in class.
 a. connect b. remember c. build d. repeat
10. Learning games can turn lessons _____ fun activities.
 a. onto b. off c. into d. for
11. We use the suffix "-ly" to change a/an _____ into a/an adverb .
 a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. conjunction
12. My teacher gave me some great _____ for the test.
 a. spaces b. distractions c. tips d. breaks
13. A _____ learner likes to look at photos to study.
 a. listener b. physical c. visual d. traditional

14. To change the verb "motivate" into a noun, we add the suffix
 a. -ion b. -tion c. -ation d. -ition
15. The synonym of "familiar" is
 a. unknown b. strange c. unfamiliar d. common
16. I draw in science class to help myself learn faster.
 a. flashcards b. study environment
 c. diagrams d. schedules

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

achievable - struggle - visual - schedule - concentrate

To prepare for an upcoming test, you should create a good study environment. Use a ① to plan your time. If you ② to remember words, try using flashcards. Writing short notes and reading definitions can help too. Regular breaks are important so you can ③ better. This makes your goals ④ Good time management is a brilliant way to succeed!

traditional - cultures - empathize - explore - meaningful

Stories are a powerful way to learn. They help us ① ideas and understand the world. When we read, we imagine the characters and ② with their feelings. This makes learning ③ and fun. Stories are different from boring facts. They help us connect to new ④ and learn about emotions. It is a creative way to grow.

3 Finish the following dialog:

Amir and Ramy are talking about learning methods.

Amir : How do you memorize this long poem?

Ramy : My ① is to follow the rhythm and turn it into a song.

Amir : I'm not sure that would work for me. I don't like singing.

Ramy : Then ② don't you read the lyrics while looking at animations?

Amir : That's a great ③ ! I like watching videos.

Ramy : It's important to find the technique that suits you best.

Amir : Do you find it ④ to write the words down too?

Ramy : Definitely! This helps you concentrate and remember the spelling.

Test on Unit 8

A: Listening

1 A. Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. Lucy studied in a quiet space without
 a. concentration b. tips c. distractions d. breaks
2. Taking regular breaks keeps Lucy's mind
 a. shy b. lazy c. active d. confident

B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

1. What did Lucy do to improve her pronunciation?

.....

2. Which language did she want to improve?

.....

3. How is Lucy now?

.....

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. The word "....." means having real importance or purpose.
 a. powerful b. interactive c. meaningful d. creative
2. The suffix changes the word "focus" into an adjective.
 a. -able b. -ive c. -ful d. -ed
3. Football is a popular sport. "....." is the opposite of "popular".
 a. Well-known b. Unknown c. Famous d. Usual
4. If you feel, try to find a quiet space to relax.
 a. achievable b. anxious c. interactive d. powerful

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

expert - atmosphere - balances - participate - supports

A teacher does more than just give information. A great teacher ① students. They handle all questions and create a happy, positive classroom. This good ② encourages every student. The teacher helps shy students to ③ They also find what motivates each person. This way, all students feel confident and learn better. A great teacher is an ④ who makes learning exciting for everyone.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In a giant jungle, a group of young animals lived together. Their leader was a brave lion. He taught them that loyalty and respect are the most important laws. One day, a naughty monkey went into the wild hunting grounds alone. Suddenly, a huge python appeared! The monkey felt hopeless and scared as the snake moved its coils.

Luckily, the lion heard him and came to the rescue. He used his strength to drive away the snake. The monkey was very **grateful** for the help. He promised to follow advice and never cause trouble again. The jungle became a place of order instead of being chaotic, and their friendship grew stronger every day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The young animals lived together in a
a. a small cage b. a quiet village c. a giant jungle d. a dry desert
- The word "**grateful**" means
a. brave b. thankful c. shy d. ungrateful

B. Answer the following questions:

- What's the main idea of the passage?

.....

- What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?

.....

- Why do you think the monkey felt hopeless?

.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Kaa is described as a tiny creature.	☐	☐
2. Mowgli liked his teachers although their lessons were tough.	☐	☐
3. Bagheera taught Mowgli how to climb and hide.	☐	☐
4. The monkeys' city was well organized and quiet.	☐	☐

B: Answer the following questions:

1. Who kidnapped Mowgli? Why?

.....

2. Was it a good idea for Baloo and Bagheera to ask Kaa for help? Why?

.....

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. Digital learning is very popular now. Many schools still use traditional methods.

(However)

.....

2. I wanted to play video games. I had to finish my homework first.

(but)

.....

3. Some children like action games. Others prefer puzzle games.

(while)

.....

4. Sherif felt anxious about the test, but he did well.

(However)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Hala is asking Mariam about her method of learning English.

Hala : How do you learn English?

Mariam : I use ① apps.

Hala : ② do you prefer them?

Mariam : Because they are enjoyable and effective.

Hala : Do they help your ③ _____ ?

Mariam : Yes, they keep my mind active.

Hala : That 4 _____ wonderful!

Mariam : You should try them too.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

“Learning Methods”

[illegible]

Review on Unit 9 (Jobs & Skills)

Lessons 1 & 2

الاتصال - التواصل	ملف شخصي
مفيد	ملف مهني
خطير	مؤهلات
مثير	متعب
وصف	واعي - مدرك
مهارات	مسؤوليات
صاحب العمل	نقاط القوة
دور	الحياة المهنية
محدد/معين	مهندس ميكانيكي
يؤكد	ورشة
شهادات	المرضي
مزدحم	حل المشاكل
مركبات	علاج - معاملة
رئيس الأطباء	العمل الجماعي
مرشد	القيادة
موظف	درجات
تطوير	تدريب
فني	اهتمامات
معدات	محترم
امن	شغف
مصانع	اختبار - يختبر
المرور	حوادث
ميكانيكي	واضح
يذكر	مقابلة شخصية
يبرز	تقرير - يبلغ
يحل	حرائق
يطابق	يتصرف - يمثل
خلفيات	يسهل

1. Write the word:

_____ tells about a person's work, skills, and responsibilities

_____ duties or tasks someone must do

_____ studies or training needed for a job

_____ the work a person does through life

_____ the way people share ideas, thoughts, or feelings

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
clear	_____	_____
facilitate	_____	_____
useful	_____	_____
tiring	_____	_____
mindful	_____	_____
exciting	_____	_____
dangerous	_____	_____

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-er / -ous / en- / -ful / -ing / -ion / -ee	
employ _____	sure _____
communicat _____	employ _____
excit _____	use _____
danger _____	tir _____
mind _____	



1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the tour guide's main job?

- a. To cook food for the group.
- b. To give a clear description of places.
- c. To drive the tour bus.
- d. To visit new places.

2. Why is it useful for the guide to know first aid?

- a. To tell better stories.
- b. To help someone who is hurt.
- c. To find the best restaurants.
- d. To help if someone gets lost.

B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. Why is good communication important for this job??

4. Name two things the guide does to keep the group safe.

5. How does the guide feel about their job?

2 Complete the following dialog:

Faten and Raneem are talking about hobbies.

Faten : What are you doing , Raneem?

Raneem : I'm ① ----- a book.

Faten : Do you like reading?

Raneem : Yes, It's my ② -----

Faten : Your hobby!

Raneem : Yes, ③ ----- is yours?

Faten : My hobby is drawing.

Raneem : When do you practice drawing?

Faten : In my ④ ----- time.

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Your _____ on a job website should tell people about your experience.
a. problems b. profile c. guide d. test
2. Good _____ is very important when working in a team.
a. communication b. safety c. career d. equipment
3. He has the right _____, so he got the job.
a. qualifications b. employees c. support d. test
4. My father had a long _____ as a teacher for 35 years.
a. career b. role c. development d. guide
5. _____ are duties or tasks someone must do.
a. Qualifications b. Responsibilities
c. Communications d. Descriptions
6. A knife is useful, but it can also be _____ if you are not careful.
a. tiring b. dangerous c. mindful d. technical
7. Watching the football match was very _____.
a. tiring b. exciting c. excited d. mindful
8. Before you build something, read the _____ carefully.
a. description b. profile c. safety d. development
9. A / An _____ showed us around the old city.
a. guide b. mechanical engineer
c. employer d. employee
10. Learning computer _____ is important for many jobs.
a. problems b. equipment c. skills d. strengths
11. It is dangerous to swim here. The antonym of "dangerous" is _____.
a. risky b. safe c. dead d. valuable
12. _____ are people who give jobs to others.
a. Employees b. Employers c. Guides d. Engineers
13. A _____ is the work a person does through life.
a. training b. career c. duty d. thought
14. Her _____ in the company is to manage the website.
a. career b. role c. profile d. development
15. You should not lose _____ in your friends easily.
a. doubt b. fear c. danger d. trust

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. I missed the bus because I left late. (so)

2. He was hungry, so he ate a big meal. (since)

3. She forgot her wallet, therefore she couldn't pay. (because)

4. The phone battery died because he didn't charge it. (so)

5. The cake burned, as a result we couldn't eat it. (because)

6. He wore a coat because it was cold. (therefore)

7. The road was closed, so we took a different route. (since)

8. We won the game because we practiced hard. (as a result)

9. She was late since her alarm didn't ring. (so)

10. The store was out of milk, therefore we bought juice instead. (because)

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

equipment - profile - career - qualifications - employees

I want a new ① _____ as a mechanical engineer. I have the ② _____ and good technical skills. Engineers solve problems in factories. They test new ③ _____ and support the employees. Employers look for people with these strengths. I will update my online ④ _____ to show this.

lessons 3 , 5 & 6

مريض/مُشبع	احباط
مهارات	فرص
علاقة	تحفيز
اجتماعي	توتر/ضغط
قرارات	اهتمامات
سعادة	الرضا
الهندسة	مبدع
الصحة	خبرة
الثقة	اختيار
طويل الامد	الهندسة المعمارية
تمريض	شخصية
ممتاز	يناسب/يلائهم
البرمجة	يستكشف
نجاح	يؤثر علي
النمو	شهادات
اختيارات	يفكر في
ماهر	عالم بيئي
مجزي	طموح
فرص	ادارة
مسئول	مبدع
ناجح	صعب
يلهم	تنمية المجتمع
مهندس	امور
قيم	ذو معني
الطبيعة	تقديم
عمل جماعي	تحدي
اماكن عمل	خدمة
مجتمعات	يوجة - يرشد
مشروع	يحقق
حلم/يحلم	مرونة
يشكل	قدرات
ينظم	الصبر
يناسب /يلائهم	

1. Write the word:

_____	what pushes you to do something and helps you keep going until you succeed.
_____	things you like or enjoy
_____	a feeling of sadness, unhappiness and dissatisfaction.
_____	feeling worried or under pressure
_____	feeling happy and proud of what you did

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
disappointment	_____	_____
stress	_____	_____
wrong	_____	_____
motivation	_____	_____
satisfaction	_____	_____
creative	_____	_____
ambitious	_____	_____
skilled	_____	_____
rewarding	_____	_____
responsible	_____	_____
successful	_____	_____

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ly / -ness / -ion / dis- / -ive / -ment -ed / -ible / -ful / -ing	
happi / sad _____	motivat _____
creat _____	satisfaction _____
disappoint _____	great _____
responsi _____	success _____
creat _____	skill _____
reward _____	_____

Lessons



Lesson 3, 5, 6

1 Complete the following dialog:

Adam and Faris are talking about Dr Musharrafa.

Adam : Hi, Faris. What are you doing?

Faris : I'm reading an ① _____ about Dr Ali Moustafa Musharrafa.

Adam : What did he ② _____?

Faris : Dr Musharrafa was able to work out some really difficult problems in maths and science.

Adam : ③ _____! What else does the article say?

Faris : He was the first Egyptian to become a doctor of science.

Adam : That's a great ④ _____!

Faris : He was definitely smart.

Adam: : Of course he was.

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. When you feel pleased with your work, you feel _____.

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| a. stress | b. satisfaction |
| c. disappointment | d. nature |

2. A person who is very good at art and thinking of new ideas is _____.

- | | | | |
|------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|
| a. skilled | b. successful | c. creative | d. responsible |
|------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|

3. Doctors and nurses care about our _____.

- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|-----------|------------------|
| a. happiness | b. community | c. health | d. opportunities |
|--------------|--------------|-----------|------------------|

4. She helps to plan and _____ events for her company.

- | | | | |
|----------|--------|----------|-------------|
| a. guide | b. fit | c. delay | d. organize |
|----------|--------|----------|-------------|

5. A job that makes you feel happy and useful is very _____.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-----------|-----------|
| a. challenging | b. rewarding | c. boring | d. social |
|----------------|--------------|-----------|-----------|

6. His parents' advice helped to _____ his future career.

- | | | | |
|----------|---------|---------|------------|
| a. shape | b. stop | c. pack | d. explore |
|----------|---------|---------|------------|

7. The difficult problem _____ the whole team's plans.

- | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-----------|-----------|
| a. affected | b. organized | c. fitted | d. guided |
|-------------|--------------|-----------|-----------|

8. He wants to protect forests and animals, so he wants to be a/an
scientist.
a. social b. environmental c. excellent d. ambitious
9. Working well with others is called good
a. flexibility b. management c. programming d. teamwork
10. The strong feeling of wanting to achieve something is
a. motivation b. stress c. service d. nature
11. Hobbies like reading or sports are also called
a. stress b. interests c. matters d. disappointment
12. A person who always wants to achieve big things is very
a. responsible b. social c. ambitious d. skilled
13. Before you choose, you should think about your, like honesty or hard work.
a. opportunities b. values c. communities d. nature
14. The teacher will the students on the museum tour.
a. fit b. guide c. service d. project
15. He is studying computer to learn how to make software.
a. nursing b. scientist c. programming d. management
16. Her work in helping children is very and important to her.
a. challenging b. social c. excellent d. meaningful
17. The shoes did not my feet, so they hurt.
a. guide b. fit c. matter d. project
18. Forests, oceans, and animals are all part of
a. nature b. communities c. decisions d. opportunities
19. The company needs a good leader for the of the office.
a. stress b. growth c. management d. disappointment
20. I have ten years of working with computers.
a. success b. confidence c. experience d. growth
21. A person who does a job very well is
a. social b. challenging c. responsible d. successful
22. You need a license or special to drive a bus.
a. certificates b. confidences c. stresses d. disappointments
23. She wanted to the forest to see the beautiful trees.
a. guide b. explore c. manage d. decide

24. If you work hard, you have a better chance of
 a. stress b. success c. confidence d. engineering
25. A job like involves designing buildings or machines.
 a. nursing b. certificates c. engineering d. options
26. The new job was difficult, but it helped her personal
 a. disappointment b. growth c. decision d. stress
27. He felt that he could do a good job in the interview.
 a. skilled b. excellent c. responsible d. confident

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

project - skilled - choice - decision - stress

Choosing a career is a big ① Engineering is a challenging but excellent choice. It offers good opportunities and growth. An engineer works on a ② and must be responsible. The work needs a ③ and successful person. It can be hard and cause ④, but it is also very meaningful.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

To find the right job, you should explore your options. Think about your interests. Do you like to help people, like a scientist or nurse? Or do you like management? Your values shape this choice. Every job has challenges. For success, you need confidence and skills. Experience brings growth. Some jobs, like programming, need special certificates. A job must fit your life. Good teamwork and communication are important. A presentation about your work can help. Remember, opportunities come with hard work. Do not fear disappointment. A rewarding career helps your community and gives you happiness. It is part of your life's project.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which two skills are mentioned as being important for a job?
 a. Running and jumping b. Teamwork and communication
 c. Eating and sleeping d. Singing and dancing
2. What do some jobs, like programming, require you to have?
 a. A new car b. Special certificates
 c. A big house d. Lots of toys

B. Answer the following questions:

3. According to the text, what are two examples of jobs for people who like to help others?

4. What should you think about when trying to find the right job?

- ### 5. What brings growth in a career?

Test on Unit 9

A: Listening

1 A. Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:



1. What skill does a nurse need?

- a. Cooking food

- b. Caring for people**

- c. Driving cars

- #### d. Knowing the roads

- ## 2. What must a driver know well?

- ### a. How to build

- b. The roads**

- ### c. How to cook

- d. How to swim

 B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

1. What is one skill a chef needs?

- ## 2. Why does a builder need to be strong?

3. What job would you like to do? What skill do you need for it?

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. He showed pictures during his _____ to explain his idea.

- d. service

- b. scientist

- c. presentation d. flexibility

2. _____ are duties or tasks someone must do.
 a. Qualifications b. Responsibilities c. Thoughts d. Feelings
3. Computers can be used to facilitate language learning. The synonym of "facilitate" is _____.
 a. translate b. help c. complete d. complicate
4. To get the adjective of the word "danger" we add the suffix "_____".
 a. -ion b. -al c. -ous d. -ment

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Applying for a job has many steps. First, you write about your skills and qualifications in your profile. Good communication helps in interviews. Employers want to know your strengths and work responsibilities. They look for people who can solve difficult problems.

My friend is a mechanical engineer. His role involves technical work. He uses special equipment in factories. His job is to keep workers safety and test machines. Sometimes it is dangerous, so he must be mindful ensure . But he says the development of new projects is exciting. His work helps facilitate production. The company supports him with training. It's a useful and long career, though it can be tiring.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the first step when applying for a job? _____
 a. Go to an interview.
 b. Write about your skills in your profile.
 c. Call the employer. d. Solve a difficult problem.
2. What is a main part of the mechanical engineer's job? _____
 a. Cooking in a restaurant.
 b. Using special equipment and testing machines.
 c. Driving buses.
 d. Training workers.

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is good communication useful when looking for a job?

4. What are two things the mechanical engineer does to stay safe?

5. Why does the engineer think his job is exciting and tiring?

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

stress - health - certificates - job - responsible

Nursing is an important service ① It is very social work. A nurse helps communities and must have flexibility. The job can bring disappointment or ②, but also great satisfaction. A good nurse is very ③ They need special ④ and experience. Their work matters a lot for people's health.

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Shere Khan's hatred for Mowgli decreased as Mowgli grew older.	☐	☐
2. The "secret weapon" Bagheera told Mowgli to learn was the secret of fire.	☐	☐
3. Some wolves began to doubt Mowgli's place because of Shere Khan's whispers.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli realized that his future might lie away from the wolf pack.	☐	☐

B: Answer the following questions:

1. What did Bagheera say is the one power of humans that the jungle fears?

2. Why do you think Shere Khan's hatred grew stronger as Mowgli grew up?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. They wore coats because the weather was cold. (so)

2. There was a storm; as a result, the power went out. (because)

(therefore)

(as a result)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Two teachers are discussing their skills in the classroom.

Teacher A: I am so tired after class today.

Teacher B: Me too. Teaching thirty  _____ is not easy!

Teacher A: What subject did you teach this morning?

Teacher B: I taught a lesson about how to add and subtract.

Teacher A: Oh, so you are very good at 2 _____.

Teacher B: It is my favorite subject to teach. What about you?

Teacher A: I am teaching the kids how to read and ③ _____.

Teacher B: You are very patient with them.

Teacher A: Thank you. You need a lot of 4 _____ to be a teacher.

Teacher B: That is true. Every day is a new challenge!

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

“How to reach that dream job.”

This image shows a blank sheet of white paper with ten horizontal rows of dashed lines, typical of primary-ruled notebook paper. The lines are evenly spaced and extend across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

R

Review on Unit 10 (Storytelling)

Lessons ① & ②

قصص شعبية	فضول
وعد	يثق
عقود	يبهت - يزبل
كنز	اجيال
الشجاعة	العرفان بالجميل
ثمين	خشبي
مندهش	عادي - سهل
عادي	غريب
خطاب	بطيء
الحبر	غابة
الكلمات	شبكة
رسالة - يختبر	طلب
عيون	بحزن
ذاكرة	صندوق
الصبر	رغبة
خفيف/ ضوء	محبوس
اكتشاف	قوة
العطف	محاصيل
سطور	ميكانيكي
القلب	حريص
يشكل	ورق
للامام	واضح
يحترم	يطلق سراح
للابد	يتمني
يرفع	يدرك
	يتصور

1. Write the word:

	to lose color and brightness
	strong quality that helps you face danger or fear
	a period of ten years
	something valuable or expensive
	people born and living at the same time
	being thankful for someone's help or kindness
	a strong agreement to do or not to do something
	a strong desire to know or learn something
	to believe in someone and feel safe with them
	is a traditional story passed from one generation to another. It usually teaches a moral or lesson through simple characters like farmers, ... animals, or children.

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
precious		
courage		
normal		
plain		
strange		
slow		
careful		
old		
kindness		
quietly		
sadly		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ful / -ion / -ly / -ness / -ity / -en	
generat.....	care.....
wood.....	kind.....
thank.....	sad.....
happi.....	curios.....
natural.....	warm.....
quiet.....	

Lessons
Lessons 1 - 2
1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What did Salma find inside the box?

a. An old photograph

b. A small book

c. A yellowed letter

d. A gift

2. Who wrote the letter?

a. Salma

b. Her mother

c. Her grandfather

d. Her grandmother

B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. Why was the letter easy to read although it was old?

.....

4. How did Salma feel when she read the letter?

.....

5. Why was the letter important to Salma??

.....

2 Complete the following dialog:

Basant is talking to her mother about her first day of school.

Mother : Do you like reading stories?

Basant : Yes. I do

Mother : What kinds of ① do you like reading?

Basant : I like reading ② stories.

Mother : ③ ?

Basant : Because they are interesting .

Mother : ④ can you get the books you read?

Basant : I get them from the ⑤

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. _____ is strong quality that helps you face danger or fear
 a. Behavior b. Courage c. Violence d. Trust
2. The synonym of "precious" is _____.
 a. worthless b. ordinary c. valuable d. strange
3. Salma showed her _____ by thanking everyone who helped her.
 a. courage b. fear c. anger d. gratitude
4. To form the adverb of the adjective "happy", we add the suffix _____.
 a. -ness b. -ful c. -ly d. -ion
5. A / An _____ is people born and living at the same time
 a. decade b. century c. area d. generation
6. The antonym of "precious" is _____.
 a. expensive b. worthless c. rare d. important
7. It takes great _____ to speak the truth in difficult situations.
 a. weakness b. courage c. laziness d. sadness
8. We add the suffix _____ to the verb care to form an adjective.
 a. -ness b. -ful c. -ly d. -ion
9. A _____ is a strong agreement to do or not to do something.
 a. promise b. threat c. travel d. fight
10. The synonym of "courage" is _____.
 a. fear b. weakness c. bravery d. sadness
11. To form a noun from the adjective "kind", we add the suffix _____.
 a. -ly b. -ful c. -ness d. -en
12. The antonym of "courage" is _____.
 a. confidence b. strength c. fear d. pride
13. The old letter was _____ to the family because it carried memories.
 a. common b. cheap c. precious d. useless
14. The synonym of "normal" is _____.
 a. strange b. usual c. difficult d. rare
15. The letter became a family _____ passed through generations.
 a. treasure b. secret c. problem d. mistake
16. There was something _____ about the old wooden box.
 a. normal b. strange c. familiar d. clear

17. She tried to the heavy box carefully.

- a. drop b. push c. lift d. throw

18. Salma was when she found the letter inside the box.

- a. bored b. tired c. angry d. surprised

19. You should not lose in your friends easily.

- a. doubt b. fear c. danger d. trust

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. He did his homework. Then he watched TV.

(After.....)

.....

2. He slept after he had eaten his dinner .

(Before.....)

.....

3. She had finished her homework before her friend arrived.

(By the time)

.....

4. He was tired because he had worked all day.

(so...)

.....

5. After he had left, it started to rain.

(Before...)

.....

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

treasure - courage - memories - generations - gratitude

The old letter was a real ① for the family. It carried warm ② of the past. It reminded everyone of the ③ who kept it safe. Reading it gave Salma the ④ to face the future, and she felt deep gratitude for her family.

lessons 3 , 5 & 6

خادم	جنية لطيفة
حفلة	حذاء منزلي
اخوات غير شقيقات	قاسي
منتصف الليل	حكاية خيالية
سحر	الطبيعة
يناسب	ملك
فئران	الامير
محبوب	حصان
طيب القلب	الجمال
الموت	درس اخلاقي
فستان	زوجة الاب
ذهبي	مهمة
رقيق	الصبر
ملكي	عروسة
عربة	مبهر
عطف	قرع العسل
يعجب بـ	يذبل - يبهت - يتلاشي
شجاعة	يكافيء
تفاصيل	يستبدل
اسد	اختيار
صدمة	بحار
موهبة	فأر
تشجيع	رحلة
يتحكم	فعل - حركة
لغة معني	اخطار
عرض	النجاح
شريك	تعبير
يصفق	حزن
يلخص	يعبر عن

1. Write the word:

is a short story that includes magic, fantasy, and imaginary characters such as fairies, giants, or talking animals.

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
kind		
excited		
beautiful		
magical		
cruel		
happiness		
surprising		
sadness		
hopeful		
calm		
nervous		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ly / -ive / un- / -ce / -ous / dis- / -ing / -ful

patien_____	happily_____
kind_____	creat_____
comfortab_____	unhappi_____
great_____	agree_____
polite_____	sudden_____
nerv_____	hope_____
surpris_____	

Lesson



Lesson 3, 5, 6

1 Complete the following dialog:

- Ali : Do you know how to use the computer?
- Said : Yes of ①
- Ali : ② you have one ?
- Said : Yes, my father ③ one for me last year.
- Ali : Can you ④ me how to use it?
- Said : Yes. When can you come?
- Ali : Tomorrow.

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- The two refused to help with the housework.
a. neighbors b. cousins c. stepsisters d. classmates
- The antonym of 'kind' is
a. friendly b. cruel c. caring d. helpful
- To form the adverb of the word 'comfortable', we add the suffix
a. -ce b. -ly c. -ive d. un-
- The act of the guard shocked everyone.
a. kind b. polite c. cruel d. friendly
- The cleaned the rooms early in the morning.
a. guest b. owner c. servant d. leader
- The antonym of 'excited' is
a. thrilled b. nervous c. calm d. energetic
- The helped the lost child find her way home.
a. enemy b. kind fairy c. stranger d. rival
- Everyone enjoyed the birthday at the club.
a. lesson b. rule c. party d. task
- We add the suffix to the word 'patient' to form a noun
a. -ce b. -ly c. -ive d. un-
- She bought new before the long walk.
a. bags b. hats c. slippers d. gloves
- The clock struck and the streets became quiet.
a. morning b. noon c. evening d. midnight

12. The synonym of 'beautiful' is
a. ugly b. plain c. pretty d. ordinary
13. We can form the adjective from 'create' by adding the suffix
a. -ive b. -ce c. -ed d. a&b
14. This story sounds like a/an loved by children.
a. report b. article c. fairy tale d. rule
15. The nurse was very with the sick patients.
a. rude b. careless c. kind-hearted d. selfish
16. The antonym of 'beautiful' is
a. ugly b. lovely c. cute d. attractive
17. We add the prefix to form the opposite of 'kind'
a. un- b. im- c. des- d. dis-
18. The punished the children unfairly.
a. servant b. baby c. stepmother d. friend
19. The antonym of 'cruel' is
a. harsh b. mean c. kind d. evil
20. The suffix turns the adjective 'happy' into an adverb
a. -ce b. -ly c. -ive d. un-
21. The sudden of the leader shocked the nation.
a. success b. return c. death d. visit
22. The synonym of 'cruel' is
a. gentle b. harsh c. kind d. loving
23. The prefix changes the meaning of 'friendly' to its opposite
a. in- b. un- c. re- d. pre-
24. Each student must complete the on time.
a. part b. success c. task d. party
25. The antonym of 'magical' is
a. ordinary b. enchanted c. special d. mysterious
26. The suffix changes the verb 'create' into an adjective.
a. -ly b. -ive c. -ce d. -ity
27. We should protect for future generations.
a. machines b. cities c. nature d. buildings
28. Learning a new skill requires and practice.
a. anger b. speed c. patience d. noise
29. The addressed the people in a public speech.
a. soldier b. farmer c. king d. servant

30. The guests were invited to a event.

- a. local b. simple c. royal d. boring

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cruel - beloved - stepmother - death - task

After the ① of her father, Sara lived with her ② She was very ③ by her father and missed him deeply. Her stepmother treated her badly and made every ④ at home very difficult.

Test on Unit 10

A: Listening

1 A. Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. Why was the speaker nervous?

- a. Because the hall was empty.
b. Because it was the school talent show.
c. Because the teacher was angry.
d. Because the music was loud.

2. What helped the speaker continue performing?

- a. The loud music. b. Winning first place.
c. Seeing a friend smiling. d. Forgetting the lines.

B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

1. What almost happened when it was the speaker's turn?

.....

2. How did the audience react during the performance?

.....

3. Why did the speaker feel proud at the end?

.....

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- The smiled as she walked beside the groom.
a. guest b. sister c. bride d. friend
- The synonym of 'magical' is
a. ordinary b. enchanted c. normal d. real
- The manager decided to the old system.
a. damage b. keep c. replace d. ignore
- To make the adjective from the verb 'act', we add the suffix
a. -ce b. -ly c. -ive d. un-

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

treasure - faded - courage - generations - folktales

Old stories are a great ❶ for many families. Though some details have ❷ with time, the meaning remains strong. These ❸ are told through many ❹ and teach children the value of courage in difficult times.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last month, I visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history. I thought the clothes from ancient Egypt were **fantastic**. In my view, the statues showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past. My favourite thing was the Islamic area where you can see different kinds of calligraphy. I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries, too, such as Iran. They are very interesting. If you want to take photos, it is a good idea to take a good camera because the museum is quite dark. .

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "**fantastic**" means
a. ugly b. terrible c. horrible d. cool
- The Textile Museum is for
a. sculptures b. clothes c. statues d. planes

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the passage about?

4. When did the writer visit the Textile Museum in Cairo?

5. Why do you think a person needs a good camera to take photos in the museum?

Story**5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):**

	T	F
1. After the fight, Mowgli felt only happiness and pride.	☐	☐
2. Mowgli decided to stay with the pack forever.	☐	☐
3. This victory marked the beginning of Mowgli's childhood.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli used fire and clever thinking to defeat Shere Khan.	☐	☐

B: Answer the following questions:

1. What decision did Mowgli make after returning to the pack?

2. In your opinion, was Mowgli's victory worth the cost? Why or why not?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. She cleaned the house. Then she slept. (After.....)

2. He had been ill so he went to the doctor. (because...)

3. After he had travelled abroad, he got a job (before)

4. Before he met the manager, he had trained well. (By the time ...)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Omar meets Adel in the corridor.

Said : ① _____ you like playing football?

Hany : Yes, of course..

Said : 2 _____ do you play it?

Hany : In the club.

Said : Who do you play it with?

Hany : With my ③ _____

Said : 4 _____ is your favourite player?

Hany : Mohammed Salah.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

“Your favourite story”

[illegible]

Review on Unit 11 (Life in the Desert)

Lessons ① & ②

عواصف رملية	أرض الرعي
قبائل	رعي
شمسي / متعلق بالشمس	بدوي / رحال
يتكيف مع	يحافظ على / يوفر
المجتمعات الصحراوية	بيئة
أسلوب حياة	البدو
كثبان رملية	الصحراء العربية
حماية	مناطق / أقاليم
أمطار / هطول الأمطار	حديث / عصري
أنظمة	هادئ / سلمي
جاف	حارق / مشتعل
تقليدي	يخزن
أصلي	يطور / ينشئ
متشابه	يرسل إشارة
يحمي	يعكس

1. Write the word:

	moving from place to place, not staying in one home
	bringing water to land or crops to help them grow
	to change to fit new environment
	area of land, including grasslands and forests, used by animals to eat plants
	groups of people living together with shared culture
	to save or protect something, especially nature or resources

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
extreme		
adapt		
peaceful		
gather		
famous		
dry		
shelter		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ty / -ly / -al / -ful / -ion	
peace	safe
safe	irrigat
tradition	

Lessons

Lessons 1 - 2
1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- Cows and sheep eat grass on the large
 a. grazing land b. playground c. garden d. forest
- The family moves their home every season.
 a. city b. nomadic c. big d. happy
- Strong winds blew sand everywhere during the
 a. sandstorms b. rain c. winter d. morning
- They use panels to get power from the sun.
 a. water b. solar c. wind d. electric
- Different live together in the desert.
 a. panels b. animals c. houses d. jobs
- Camels life in the hot, dry desert.
 a. dislike b. adapt to c. leave d. fight

10. _____ brings water to the farm plants.
 a. Irrigation b. Food c. Sunlight d. Building
11. We must _____ water and not waste it.
 a. use b. sell c. conserve d. find
12. People in _____ help each other find water.
 a. cities b. schools c. desert communities d. offices
13. It is a _____ village with no fighting.
 a. noisy b. peaceful c. busy d. old
14. We must keep our _____ clean.
 a. house b. car c. environment d. clothes
15. The _____ sun made the sand very hot.
 a. cold b. wet c. burning d. dark
16. The _____ have lived in the desert for centuries.
 a. teachers b. Bedouin people c. sailors d. farmers
17. The camel is a _____ animal of the desert.
 a. new b. scared c. native d. lost
18. _____ is a very large, hot, and sandy place.
 a. The forest b. The ocean
 c. The mountain d. The Arabian Desert
19. Their _____ is simple and close to nature.
 a. food b. lifestyle c. house d. journey
20. The ground is very _____ because it never rains.
 a. wet b. green c. dry d. cold
21. The wind shaped the sand into tall _____.
 a. sand dunes b. trees c. rocks d. buildings
22. They wear _____ clothing from their culture.
 a. modern b. traditional c. borrowed d. simple
23. They have special _____ to collect rainwater.
 a. tools b. animals c. systems d. colors
24. The walls _____ the house from the wind.
 a. decorate b. protect c. open d. hide

Unit 11 Life in the Desert

25. Few plants grow in desert
 a. weather b. rules c. regions d. stories
26. The white clothes the heat from the sun.
 a. make hotter b. take in c. reflect d. change
27. The tent gives from the sun.
 a. food b. protection c. color d. heat
28. The rare make the desert flowers bloom.
 a. wind b. heat c. rainfalls d. animals

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

exercise - focus - relax - healthy - routine

If you want to improve your mental well-being, it's important to make time for physical activity. Doing regular ❶ can boost your mood and energy levels. To stay ❷ during work or study, try to minimize distractions and concentrate on one task at a time. It's also essential to ❸ and take short breaks to refresh your mind. Maintaining a balanced diet and enough sleep is part of a ❹ that supports both body and mind.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. While I was reading a book, my brother called me. (When)

2. After finishing our breakfast, we went to the museum. (then)

3. As she was walking in the park, she found a lost puppy. (When)

4. I was listening to music when my friend knocked on the door. (while)

5. While they were swimming in the pool, it started to thunder. (When)

6. Ahmed was talking to Laila when the bus arrived. (while)

7. I noticed Sara while she was shopping in the market. (When)

8. Mona visited her grandparents last weekend. (visiting)

9. Where were you waiting for the train? (Wait)

10. Karim didn't attend the meeting yesterday morning. (wasn't)

4 Finish the following dialog:

Anas : What are you doing?

Seif : I am reading a book about ①

Anas : A book about water! ② does it contain?

Seif : It contains facts about water.

Anas : ③ our bodies have water inside them?

Seif : Yes, our bodies have water inside them.

Anas : What does water do in our bodies?

Seif : It helps move blood and keep our ④ cool.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Travelling abroad"

Lessons 3 - 5 & 6

قاس / شديد	تكيفات / تعديلات
رائع / مذهل	توازن
فريد / مميز	جفاف
سنام الجمل	دهون
أوراق خضراء	الطبيعة
حشرات	الكائنات الحية
ساق	حشرة
سلوكيات	رحلة
سلوك	ساق النبات
النخل	الحرارة
جذر	خالي / فارغ
نادر / شحيح	الحياة البرية
مبدع	النظام البيئي
نشط	يحيا / يبقى
سميك	يطلق / ينبعث منه
شمعي	قوي
فرص العمل	يؤذي / يضر
مؤن / لوازم	يصطاد
غروب الشمس	المرور
مفكرة يومية	التلوث
تحية	تسلية
الحياة في المدينة	شروق الشمس
مزايا	الحياة في الصحراء
خيارات	مقيم
راحة	واحة
التخييم	وحيد / منعزل
مترب	رائع
عطلة	عملي
خطوات	يتنوع / يختلف
افتتاحية	شديد البرودة
صاحب	ختام
هادئ	يفكر في
يفتقد	شعور
صعب	عاصف

1. Write the word:

_____	very surprising or wonderful
_____	changes that help living things survive
_____	one of a kind; special
_____	an equal or fair situation
_____	difficult and tough

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
rare	_____	_____
harsh	_____	_____
thick	_____	_____
creative	_____	_____
balance	_____	_____
unique	_____	_____
practical	_____	_____
consider	_____	_____
incredible	_____	_____
advantages	_____	_____
peaceful	_____	_____

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

eco- / -ness / -ation / -ive / -ment / -ion / -ful / -ing	
dry _____	creat _____
adapt _____	system _____
entertain _____	challeng _____
pollut _____	peace _____



1 Finish the following dialog:

Mom and Karim are talking about making a small science project.

Mom : What are you doing, Karim?

Karim : I'm making a model of a wind turbine.

Mom : ① gave you the idea?

Karim : My physics teacher.

Mom : ② you need any help?

Karim : No, I don't need any help.

Mom : Did you face any problems?

Karim : Yes, I ③ some problems, but my friend helped me solve them.

Mom : When will you finish the model?

Karim : ④

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

focused - quitting - practicing - amazed - stay

Sometimes, learning a new sport can be difficult. Ahmed wanted to play football well, but he needed a lot of ① everyday. At first, he thought about ② because he felt tired. His coach told him to stay ③ and not give up. After some time, everyone was ④ by how much he improved.

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. The desert is very during the summer, making it hard for animals to survive.

- a. harsh b. thick c. amazing d. unique

2. This cactus has stems to store water for long periods.

- a. predator b. thick c. balance d. amazing

3. A camel is a that can survive in extreme heat.

- a. insect b. mammal c. prey d. cactus

4. Animals in the desert must develop special _____ to survive.
a. adaptations b. flowers c. journeys d. behaviors
5. The oasis provided _____ for animals to rest from the sun.
a. leaf b. flower c. shade d. stem
6. A desert fox is a _____ that hunts small rodents at night.
a. insect b. prey c. mammal d. predator
7. A small rabbit is usually _____ for larger predators.
a. stem b. cactus c. prey d. shade
8. The desert plant's long _____ help it reach deep water.
a. habits b. flowers c. leaves d. roots
9. Many desert animals are active only at night to avoid the _____ sun.
a. amazing b. harsh c. unique d. thick
10. The owl's _____ include hunting at night and silent flight.
a. behaviors b. adaptations c. journeys d. habits
11. Each desert species has a _____ feature that makes it special.
a. harsh b. thick c. unique d. amazing
12. A cactus can _____ in a desert with very little water.
a. drink b. hunt c. survive d. die
13. Desert animals must _____ to the hot and dry climate.
a. keep b. balance c. hide d. adapt
14. The desert has a fragile _____ that depends on every living creature.
a. journey b. flower c. ecosystem d. habit
15. The date palm has small waxy _____ to stop water from drying up in the hot sun.
a. roots b. stems c. leaves d. flowers
16. To survive, animals need to _____ fat in their bodies for the dry season.
a. store b. hunt c. adapt d. hide
17. The camel's hump helps it maintain _____ in its harsh environment.
a. stem b. habitat c. shade d. balance
18. The desert flower is _____ because it blooms only once a year.
a. thin b. unique c. thick d. harsh

19. The desert is full of _____ that feed on small plants and insects.
a. insects b. mammals c. predators d. leaves
20. Many animals _____ under rocks or plants to hide from predators.
a. hide b. adapt c. hunt d. drink
21. We decided to _____ early in the morning to enjoy the cool air.
a. set off b. read c. feel d. wake
22. The desert is full of high _____ shaped by the wind.
a. campfire b. oasis c. footsteps d. dunes
23. After a long walk, we felt very _____ and needed rest.
a. incredible b. tired c. soft d. amazing
24. The children _____ their favorite books before bedtime.
a. felt b. woke up c. set off d. read
25. We sat _____ to avoid the hot sun during the day.
a. on the dunes b. around a campfire
c. in the shade d. at breakfast
26. The night in the desert was _____ with stars and silence.
a. tired b. soft c. amazing d. packed
27. The travelers _____ surprisingly early despite the long journey.
a. felt b. read c. set off d. woke up
28. The guide said, "This journey sounds _____ doesn't it?"
a. soft b. incredible c. interesting d. amazing
29. At sunset, we _____ around a _____ to share stories.
a. sat / campfire b. read / oasis
c. felt / dunes d. woke up / shade
30. The oasis provided _____ water and fresh dates for the travelers.
a. incredible b. soft c. fresh d. intense
31. Walking in the desert, we followed the guide's _____ carefully.
a. oasis b. dunes c. campfire d. footsteps
32. For hiking, it is _____ to wear strong shoes.
a. practical b. windy c. dusty d. noisy

33. The math test was very

- a. challenging b. peaceful c. freezing d. practical

34. In winter, the weather is often

- a. freezing b. windy c. dusty d. noisy

35. We will go in the forest next weekend.

- a. camping b. greeting c. supplies d. sunset

4 Write a paragraph of **ONE HUNDRED (100)** words on:

"A story that taught you a lesson"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



1. Who gave Sara advice on building the boat?_____

- a. Her father

- b. Her teacher**

- c. Her older brother

- d. Her friend

2. Sara faced many _____ while building the boat.

- a. challenges

- b. difficulties**

- ### c. games

- #### d. stories

1. How did Sara's brother help her complete the boat?

.....

2. How did Sara feel when she finished the boat?

[illegible]

3. How did Sara's success influence other children in her town?

100 90 80 70 60 50 40 30 20 10 0 0 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100

1. To form an adverb from the adjective “quick”, we add the suffix _____.

- a. -ed

- b. -ly

- C. -able

- d. -ing

2. After walking in the desert, we found a/an _____ with water and trees.

- a. castle

- b. school**

- C. oasis**

- d. forest

3. Changes to help living things survive are called _____.

- a. behaviors

- b. adaptations**

- ### c. ecosystems

- d. creative

4. Desert plants have special _____ to store water.

- a. adaptations

- b. unique**

- c. balance**

- d. amazing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sunrise - camping - challenging - easy - considered

We went ① _____ in the mountains. The weather was freezing and very windy. It was ② _____ to put up the tent. We forgot some supplies, so it was not very comfortable. But in the morning, we saw a beautiful ③ _____. It was peaceful and quiet. We ④ _____ our trip a success.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Buying and selling is part of everyday activities. People used to do this long ago. But shopping habits changed a lot. In the past you could deal directly with a person. You could talk to the seller and even ask for advice about the best quality and price. When there was a problem, you could go to the shop and explain it. At that time you could solve any problem at once. Buying and selling today depend on a lot of online activities. First, you must log on the internet and choose price, the quality and time of delivery. You must provide correct and clear information to get your product. When there is a problem, you must fill in a form describing it clearly. An online assistant will contact you. But it may take a long time to get a reply. The biggest problem is that some companies can't be reached easily because they may be far away from you or you don't know the exact address. To buy online, you must be careful about your personal information. You must keep it secret and deal with trusted online companies.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The best title for the passage is _____.

- a. shopping b. buying c. selling d. internet

2. The underlined "it" refers to the _____.

- a. problem b. product c. correct price d. good quality

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Explain why there may be a problem when you buy something online? Give two reasons.

4. Are there any new shopping habits today ? Name two habits.

5. How can you protect your personal information when you buy something online?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Mowgli was welcomed by the villagers and given food, clothing, and a place to stay.	☐	☐
2. Mowgli immediately felt comfortable living with humans.	☐	☐
3. The villagers fully trusted Mowgli and never doubted him.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli enjoyed learning about fire and tools from humans.	☐	☐

B: Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Mowgli find life among humans difficult?

2. What did Mowgli care for in the village?

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I couldn't finish my homework. I was feeling sick. (because)

2. They were singing in the garden. It began to snow. (while)

3. He cut his finger. He was chopping vegetables. (when)

4. I saw an accident. I was driving to work. (while)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Sara is telling Adam about the life of Thomas Edison.

Sara : I read an amazing article about Thomas Edison.

Adam :  did the article say about him?

Sara : He invented the light bulb and many other useful devices.

Adam : Did he ② any problems while inventing them?

Sara : Yes, he failed many times but never gave up.

Adam : How did he become so successful?

Sara : He worked hard and ❸ _____ every failure as a lesson.

Adam : I want to learn from him. ④ _____ I read the article too?

Sara : Sure, it's very inspiring.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

“Your model in life”

[illegible]

Review on Unit 12 (Our Incredible Earth)

Lessons 1 & 2

جبال	مدهش / لا يُصدق
عجائب	مناظر طبيعية
غابة مطيرة	الغلاف الجوي
الجاذبية	إشعاع
تحديات	الأكسجين
نسبة مئوية	البيئة
لا يمكن تصويره	البشر
مستكشف	كوكب
الفضاء	مدهش
مغامرة	مليار
ضار	رقم قياسي
الأعلى	رواد فضاء
غامض	محيطات
فريد	متجمد
يستكشف	طبيعي
يطور	يكتشف
يُنتج	يدعم
يحمي	يتنفس
يبقى/ يظل	يضع
	يشجع

1. Write the word:

	extremely surprising, or amazing
	the view of the land around us including trees, mountains, rivers or fields
	a very high and steep land that rises above the land around it
	a place with many trees and heavy rain
	natural force that pulls objects downwards
	energy that travels in waves or tiny particles.

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
strong		
deep		
unique		
harmful		
natural		
mysterious		
brave		
huge		
incredible		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ity / -ful / -scape / -er / -ion / -ous / un- / dis-	
imaginable	climb
radiat	explor
grav	land
cover	wonder
danger	harm


1 A. Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. The word "_____" means the view of the land around us including trees, mountains, rivers or fields.
 a. mountain b. radiation c. gravity d. landscapes
2. The elephant is huge and very strong. "_____" is the opposite of "huge".
 a. Enormous b. Massive c. Tiny d. Big
3. Students _____ challenges when they learn new subjects.
 a. face b. place c. remain d. encourage
4. To get the noun for a person from the verb "explore", we add the suffix _____.
 a. -ian b. -ar c. -er d. -ist
5. The synonym of "brave" is _____.
 a. courageous b. fearful c. coward d. obvious
6. The adjective from the word "danger" can be formed by adding the suffix _____.
 a. -ful b. -ous c. -ing d. -al
7. This place has a unique style. The word "_____" is similar in meaning to "unique".
 a. common b. normal c. special d. ordinary
8. The box is full _____ colorful toys and games.
 a. off b. of c. with d. in
9. A _____ is a very high and steep land that rises above the land around it.
 a. rainforest b. mountain c. gravity d. radiation
10. To get the antonym of the word "imaginable", we add the prefix _____.
 a. in- b. dis- c. un- d. ir-
11. The word "_____" means energy that travels in waves or tiny particles.
 a. rainforest b. gravity c. radiation d. landscape
12. Our house is _____ the other side of the bridge.
 a. in b. at c. with d. on
13. The Grand Canyon is full of natural _____.
 a. radiation b. challenges c. records d. wonders

14. The Earth's protects life from harmful radiation.
 a. atmosphere b. oxygen c. space d. gravity
15. The view from the hill was absolutely It was amazing.
 a. mysterious b. harmful c. incredible d. frozen
16. Forests help the environment.
 a. discover b. produce c. protect d. develop
17. Oxygen is important for all on Earth.
 a. adventures b. astronauts c. humans d. records
18. Explorers often go on to discover new lands.
 a. adventures b. records c. oceans d. wonders
19. The Earth's gravity helps everything in place.
 a. breathe b. produce c. protect d. hold

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

support - unimaginable - harmful - mysterious - explore

Astronauts and explorers love to discover new places. They face many challenges when they ❶ space or deep rainforests. Space is ❷ and full of radiation, which can be dangerous. On Earth, scientists develop ways to ❸ life in frozen lands. It is ❹ how much we still need to learn. We should encourage everyone to protect our natural world.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1. Ahmed finished his homework a moment ago. (just)

2. Layla cleaned her room this morning. (already)

3. Sara has read this story. (never)

4. I didn't have my breakfast. (yet)

5. Hala has studied French for five years. (since)

6. Shady has seen this place before. (not)

7. We didn't finish the project. (haven't)

8. Adel played tennis yesterday. (has)

9. The climber reached the top of the mountain a minute ago. (just)

10. My father has never flown in a plane. (never)

11. We haven't eaten at that restaurant since 2020. (for)

12. They visited London in 2019. (since)

13. I haven't spoken to my friend since last Monday. (The last)

14. My father bought this house in 2022. (has)

15. Sara sent me an email a few minutes ago. (just)

16. Youssef watched the new series on TV yesterday. (already)

17. We haven't traveled abroad since 2017. (for)

18. They saw the Eiffel Tower in 2016. (since)

19. My brother bought this laptop in 2020. (has)

20. She has been studying English for five years. (since)

21. The teacher corrected the homework a minute ago. (just)

22. Ali finished reading that book this afternoon. (already)

Lessons 3 - 5 & 6

أنواع / فصائل	مهدد بالانقراض
إعادة التدوير	شديد / قاسٍ
غابة	نووي
جفاف	التكنولوجيا
تلوث الهواء	بيئي
بلاستيك	خطير / جاد
ملايين	بحكمة
ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	نفايات
درجات الحرارة	الطقس
منظمات / مؤسسات	فيضانات
يقدم	عواصف
يزداد	تغير المناخ
يقلل التلوث	يحذر
يعاني من	يدمر
يعيد استخدام	تنشئ
موضوع	خبير
أكسجين	البيئة
حقائب قماشية	قضية / مسألة
أجيال المستقبل	الكائنات الحية
مسئولية	مواد
بالإضافة إلى ذلك	نفايات / قمامة
بالضبط / تمامًا	يؤثر على
يؤذي / يضر	يعيد تدوير
يحافظ على	ينشئ / يخلق

1. Write the word:

	very strong, serious, or unusual
	a group of animals or plants that are the same
	using old materials again to make new things
	in danger or at risk of disappearing

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
problems		
endangered		
extreme		
positive		
wisely		
better		
difference		
provide		
ordinary		
reduce		
turn off		
likely		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

re- / -ed / -ion / -ly / re- / -al / un- / -ence	
endanger	environment
act	usual
wise	cycling
generat	environment
use	differ
pollut	

Lessons



Lessons 3 & 5 & 6

1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. The word "_____" means using old materials again to make new things.
 a. Increasing b. recycling c. destroying d. establishing
2. To get the antonym of "usual", we add the prefix _____.
 a. dis- b. in- c. un- d. ab-
3. The adjective from the noun "environment" can be formed by adding the suffix _____.
 a. -ive b. -ful c. -able d. -al
4. The opposite of 'better' is _____.
 a. developed b. worse c. improved d. best
5. Positive words help others. The antonym of "positive" is _____.
 a. careful b. safe c. effective d. negative
6. To form a noun from the verb "act", we add the suffix _____.
 a. -ment b. -ation c. -ion d. -ition
7. The word "_____" is similar in meaning to "problems".
 a. results b. solutions c. difficulties d. answers
8. Solar panels can _____ electricity for homes and schools.
 a. depend b. achieve c. produce d. cut
9. She worked hard to _____ her school goals this year.
 a. warn b. achieve c. destroy d. recycle
10. Farmers _____ old plants to grow new crops.
 a. rise b. cut down c. warn d. take action
11. Many countries depend _____ solar energy to produce electricity.
 a. on b. in c. at d. of
12. Many animal _____ are at risk of disappearing.
 a. waste b. humans c. technology d. species
13. Polar bears are _____ because of melting ice.
 a. endangered b. protected c. positive d. extreme

14. Recycling can help reduce _____ in our cities.
a. waste b. forests c. floods d. species
15. Cutting down too many trees _____ forests.
a. destroy b. recycle c. protect d. warn
16. Solar panels are used to produce clean _____.
a. species b. pollution c. energy d. action
17. Humans must _____ to solve environmental problems.
a. rise b. cut down c. warn d. take action
18. Scientists _____ that global temperatures will continue to rise.
a. produced b. destroyed c. cut d. warned
19. Many cities are suffering from air _____ because of factories.
a. oxygen b. pollution c. energy d. environment
20. Trees help to _____ the environment for future generations.
a. protect b. discover c. choose d. reduce
21. Plants give us _____ which is necessary for breathing.
a. oxygen b. pollution c. energy d. balance
22. We should protect the _____ from pollution and waste.
a. jungle b. environment c. bridge d. family
23. The prefix _____ means to do something again.
a. un- b. re- c. ab- d. in-
24. Please turn off the light before leaving the room. The synonym of "turn off" is _____.
a. turn on b. switch on c. switch off d. go on
25. To get the noun of the verb "generate", we add the suffix _____.
a. -ion b. -ation c. -ition d. -tion
26. The antonym of "reduce" is _____.
a. increase b. decrease c. lower d. take away
27. To become a/ an _____ on climate change, you must study how temperatures rise over time.
a. astronaut b. expert c. doctor d. engineer

28. We should not throw plastic bottles into rivers and oceans.

a. off

b. away

c. out

d. about

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wisely - make - endangered - temperatures - do

Climate change is a serious problem that changes our weather. As a result, **1** rise and cause extreme storms or floods. These changes destroy forests and make many animal species **2** To solve these environmental problems, we must take action and use technology **3** For example, recycling waste and using solar panels can help us **4** positive changes and protect our world.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Nour and Salma are talking about our planet, Earth.

Nour : I am reading an article about our planet, Earth.

Salma : Really? What is incredible about Earth?

Nour : Earth is full of **1** and amazing natural places.

Salma : **2** is planet Earth?

Nour : It is around 4.5 billion years old.

Salma : How does the **3** help us?

Nour : It protects us from harmful radiation.

Salma : **4** very interesting!

Test on Unit 12

A: Listening

1 A. Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. _____ is a famous cultural landmark.

a. The beach	b. The train
c. The Bibliotheca Alexandrina	d. The photos
2. Ali met many _____ during his trip.

a. drivers	b. visitors	c. teachers	d. players
------------	-------------	-------------	------------

2 B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

1. Name two places Ali visited.

2. When did Ali return home?

3. What did Ali learn about?

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. To form an adjective from the noun "wonder", we add the suffix _____.

a. -al	b. -able	c. -ous	d. -ful
--------	----------	---------	---------
2. We found a mysterious box in the garden. The antonym of "mysterious" is _____.

a. strange	b. obvious	c. extraordinary	d. special
------------	------------	------------------	------------
3. The word "_____ means a group of animals or plants that are the same.

a. spices	b. species	c. pieces	d. spaces
-----------	------------	-----------	-----------
4. Recycling can _____ the amount of waste in cities.

a. increase	b. reduce	c. rise	d. cut
-------------	-----------	---------	--------

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

affect - cloth - pollution - produce - reuse

Sam saw his town suffer from too much plastic. He had an idea. He asked his grandma to make ① _____ bags. Sam gave them to his neighbors. "Please

② _____ this bag!" he said. Soon, everyone used them. The park had less rubbish. Sam felt proud. He helped reduce ③ _____ exactly where he lived. He learned that one kid can ④ _____ the whole environment in a very good way.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

SE

The desert is a dry and hot place with very little water. People and animals living there must adapt to survive. Camels, for example, can go a long time without water, and many desert animals are active at night when it is cooler. People in the desert often wear light clothing to stay cool and use special methods to find and save water. Life in the desert can be difficult, but it is also unique and full of interesting plants and animals.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Many desert animals are active at _____ when it is cooler.
a. night b. morning c. noon d. evening
- The word "unique" means _____.
a. common b. special c. ordinary d. normal

B. Answer the following questions:

- What's the main idea of the passage?

- What does the underlined word "there" refer to?

- Why is life in the desert difficult, but also interesting?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Mowgli believed that he belonged to only one world.	☐	☐
2. Mowgli often returned to the jungle to visit Baloo and Bagheera.	☐	☐
3. Mowgli helped the villagers protect their cattle and crops.	☐	☐
4. The story ends with Mowgli choosing the jungle and leaving the village.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. How did the jungle animals treat Mowgli when he visited them?

6. Why did Mowgli feel peace according to the passage?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. They have studied English since 2012.

S8 (for)

2. They arrived at school a short while ago.

(just)

3. Nelly tried sushi last year.

(already)

4. I didn't visit my grandparents.

(yet)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Leyla and Haroon are talking about museums.

Leyla : Have you ever been to a museum?

Haroon : Yes, I **1** -----.

Leyla : **2** ----- did you see there?

Haroon : I saw many ancient statues and paintings.

Leyla : That **3** ----- really interesting!

Haroon : **4** ----- you enjoy the visit?

Leyla : Yes, I enjoyed it very much.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Environmental problems"

The Jungle Book Summary The Beginning

ملخص قصة كتاب الغابة (باللغة العربية) البداية

The story is about a young boy named Mowgli who gets lost in the Indian jungle. A family of wolves finds him and decides to raise him as their own. Mowgli grows up learning the Law of the Jungle from his wise teachers: Baloo the bear and Bagheera the black panther.

تدور القصة حول صبي صغير يدعى ماوكلي يضيع في غابات الهند. تجده عائلة من الذئاب وتقرر تربيته كفرد منها. يكبر ماوكلي وهو يتعلم قانون الغابة على يد معلميه الحكماء: الدب بالو والفهد الأسود باغيرا.

The Conflict: الصراع

However, Mowgli is not safe. The fierce tiger, Shere Khan, hates humans and wants to kill Mowgli. As Mowgli grows older, he realizes he is different from the animals. Bagheera tells him that for his own safety, he must leave the jungle and go to the Man-Village.

ومع ذلك، ماوكلي ليس في أمان؛ فالنمر الشرس شيرخان يكره البشر ويريد قتل ماوكلي. وعندما يكبر ماوكلي، أدرك أنه مختلف عن الحيوانات، فأخبره باغيرا أنه من أجل سلامته، يجب عليه مغادرة الغابة والذهاب إلى قرية البشر.

The Climax: الذروة

Mowgli eventually faces Shere Khan. Using his human intelligence and fire, Mowgli defeats the tiger and saves his jungle family. Even though he loves the jungle, Mowgli decides to live with humans to find his true roots.

في النهاية، يواجه ماوكلي شيرخان. وباستخدام ذكائه البشري والنار، يهزم ماوكلي النمر وينقذ عائلته في الغابة. ورغم حبه للغابة، يقرر ماوكلي العيش مع البشر ليجد جذوره الحقيقية.

The Lesson: الدرس المستفاد

The story shows the importance of courage, friendship, and following the rules of society to live in peace.

تظهر القصة أهمية الشجاعة، والصداقة، واتباع قوانين المجتمع للعيش في سلام.

Story- Chapter 1

A: Write (T) True or (F) False:

	T	F
1. Father Wolf found the baby boy in a village.	☐	☐
2. Shere Khan is a wild tiger.	☐	☐
3. Mother Wolf wanted to give the boy to Shere Khan.	☐	☐
4. Baloo is a bear.	☐	☐
5. Bagheera is a panther.	☐	☐
6. Bagheera gave the wolves a fish so they would accept the boy.	☐	☐
7. The boy was named Mowgli, which means "little frog."	☐	☐
8. Mowgli grew up with the wolf cubs.	☐	☐
9. Shere Khan wanted to protect Mowgli.	☐	☐
10. Mowgli learned the ways of the village.	☐	☐

B: Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Father and Mother Wolf find the baby?

2. What did Bagheera give to the wolf pack?

3. What did Mowgli learn as he grew up?

4. Who promised to train Mowgli?

5. Why do you think Mother Wolf wanted to keep a human baby in her family?

6. Bagheera paid a price (a killed ox). Why was this important for the wolf pack?

7. Shere Khan said humans don't belong in the wild. Do you agree or disagree? Why?

8. At the end, Shere Khan still wants to destroy Mowgli. What problem will this cause for Mowgli in the future?

Story- Chapter 2

A: Write (T) True or (F) False:

	T	F
1. Baloo taught Mowgli the Law of the Jungle.	☐	☐
2. The monkeys (Bandar-log) always follow the laws and have honor.	☐	☐
3. Kaa is a giant python who helped Baloo and Bagheera save Mowgli.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli realized that the monkeys were his true friends.	☐	☐
5. The monkeys kidnapped Mowgli to make him their leader.	☐	☐
6. Bagheera taught Mowgli how to hunt animals only.	☐	☐
7. Bagheera's lessons included hiding and climbing.	☐	☐
8. The Bandar-Iog made Mowgli their leader.	☐	☐
9. Mowgli learned that loyalty and respect are parts of true friendship	☐	☐
10. The Bandar-Iog were chaotic without order or honor..	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

1. What did Bagheera teach Mowgli?

2. How are Baloo and Bagheera different from the monkeys?

3. If Kaa the python did not help, what would happen to Mowgli?

4. How did Mowgli feel after he was saved?

5. How did Kaa help save Mowgli?

Story- Chapter 3

A: Write (T) True or (F) False:

	T	F
1. Shere Khan liked Mowgli and wanted him to stay in the pack.	☐	☐
2. Shere Khan told the wolves that Mowgli would bring fire and ruin.	☐	☐
3. Bagheera told Mowgli that he must learn the secret of fire.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli went to a village to get the burning coals.	☐	☐
5. Mowgli stole the fire openly while the humans watched him.	☐	☐
6. The wolf pack was completely united in wanting Mowgli to leave.	☐	☐
7. Shere Khan was afraid of the fire Mowgli held up.	☐	☐
8. After the fight, Shere Khan decided to never bother Mowgli again.	☐	☐
9. Mowgli felt very happy and excited after driving the tiger away.	☐	☐
10. Mowgli realized that some wolves did not see him as one of their own anymore.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Shere Khan hate Mowgli so much?

2. What "power" did Bagheera say the jungle fears most?

3. How did Mowgli get the pot of burning coals?

4. What happened during the wolf council meeting?

5. Why did Mowgli feel sad at the end of the story?

6. How did Shere Khan use "whispered lies" to turn the wolf pack against Mowgli?
Why is this a powerful weapon?

7. Mowgli grew up in the jungle, but he felt his fate might be away from the pack.
Do you think Mowgli is more of a "wolf" or a "human"? Why?

8. Fire represents power in this story. Why do you think the animals are so afraid of it, while humans are the only ones who can control it?

9. The wolves were "torn between loyalty to the boy and fear of the tiger." If you were a member of the wolf pack, which side would you choose and why?

10. Mowgli won the fight against Shere Khan but lost his place in the pack. Was using the fire a "good" choice if it made his friends fear him?

Story - Chapter 4

 **A: Write (T) True or (F) False:**

	T	F
1. Shere Khan tried to kill Mowgli by leading cattle toward him.	☐	☐
2. Mowgli was frightened and ran away from the jungle.	☐	☐

3. The herd crushed Shere Khan in a narrow pass.

☐ ☐

4. Mowgli protected himself and his wolf family.

☐ ☐

5. All the wolves welcomed Mowgli back with joy.

☐ ☐

6. Some wolves believed that humans could never belong to the jungle.

☐ ☐

7. He said goodbye to the wolves with a heavy heart.

☐ ☐

8. Mowgli promised never to forget the wolves.

☐ ☐

9. Mowgli was no longer the helpless man-cub saved by Mother Wolf.

☐ ☐

10. Mowgli became a young man, strong and wise.

☐ ☐

B. Answer the following questions:

1. How did Shere Khan try to kill Mowgli?

2. What did Mowgli use to turn Shere Khan's plan against him?

3. What happened to Shere Khan in the narrow pass?

4. Why did some wolves reject Mowgli after the fight?

5. Why do you think Mowgli felt both victory and sadness after defeating Shere Khan?

6. How does this confrontation show that Mowgli has grown up?

7. Why do you think the wolves believed that humans could not truly belong to the jungle?

8. What does Mowgli's decision to leave the pack suggest about his character?

Story - Chapter 5

 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. The villagers were not surprised when Mowgli first arrived.	☐	☐
2. The people gave Mowgli food and clothes.	☐	☐
3. Mowgli learned how to speak like the humans.	☐	☐
4. All the villagers trusted Mowgli and were kind to him.	☐	☐
5. Mowgli felt free and happy living in the village.	☐	☐
6. Mowgli helped protect the village's animals.	☐	☐
7. He learned about fire and tools from the humans.	☐	☐
8. Mowgli did not miss his jungle friends at all.	☐	☐
9. In the village, Shere Khan was Mowgli's biggest problem.	☐	☐
10. Mowgli felt like he belonged completely in the village.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

11. Why do you think the villagers whispered that Mowgli was dangerous?

12. How was learning the "law of the jungle" different from learning human customs?

13. If you were Mowgli, what would be the hardest part of living in the village?

14. Why did Mowgli feel "trapped" even though he had a home and food?

15. How did taking care of the cattle make Mowgli feel useful?

16. What does this chapter tell you about what "home" really means?

17. Why is being doubted by others a difficult challenge for Mowgli?

18. Can you think of a time you felt caught between two different worlds, like Mowgli?

19. How did learning about fire and tools change how Mowgli saw humans?

20. Why do you think feeling isolated is called his "greatest challenge" now?

Story - Chapter 6

A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Mowgli only lived in the jungle and never visited the village.	☐	☐
2. He helped the villagers by protecting their cattle and crops.	☐	☐
3. Mowgli defended the jungle against hunters who killed without reason.	☐	☐
4. The story ends with Mowgli choosing the village over the jungle.	☐	☐
5. Mowgli believed that he belonged to only one world.	☐	☐
6. Mowgli often returned to the jungle to visit his old friends.	☐	☐
7. Baloo and Bagheera rejected Mowgli when he visited the jungle.	☐	☐
8. Courage and loyalty were weaker than blood according to the story.	☐	☐
9. Mowgli helped the villagers protect their cattle and crops.	☐	☐
10. Mowgli acted as a bridge between humans and nature.	☐	☐
11. He defended the jungle from hunters who killed without reason.	☐	☐
12. Mowgli always defended wild animals against villagers.	☐	☐
13. Mowgli found peace by balancing both worlds.	☐	☐
14. The story ends with Mowgli choosing the jungle only.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

1. What did Mowgli accept over time about his life?

2. Who did Mowgli visit when he returned to the jungle?

3. How did the jungle animals treat Mowgli?

4. How did Mowgli help the villagers?

5. What did Mowgli carry within him according to the passage?

6. Why do you think Mowgli felt peace when he balanced both worlds?

7. How does Mowgli's life show the importance of cooperation between humans and nature?

8. Why was Mowgli stronger by uniting the Law of the Jungle with human knowledge?

9. What lesson can people learn from Mowgli's story?

10. In your opinion, is it better to belong to one world or to balance between two worlds? Why?

11. How did Mowgli maintain his connection with the jungle?

12. How did he help humans in the village?

امتحانات عامة على الفصل الدراسي الثاني

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We have so much technology now. There are televisions, laptops, mobile phones and so on. Mobile phones and other items of technology are sometimes **harmful** to our health. Scientists think mobile phones should be used as little as possible, and it is better to be careful about using them. Mobile phones are bad for children. In fact, research shows that mobile phones might kill more people than smoking. Wi-Fi technology may cause headaches as well.

It is better to have no electronic devices in your bedroom. But if you can't go without **them**, at least make sure you don't have a computer or mobile phone in your bedroom, or at least make sure that they are turned off.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to.....
 a. televisions b. computers c. phones d. electronic devices
- The word "harmful" means very.....
 a. bad b. good c. nice d. great

B. Answer the following questions:

- What's the main idea of this passage?

.....

- What may Wi-Fi technology cause?

.....

- Do you think that technology is useful?

.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Mowgli took burning coal from the jungle.	☐	☐
2. Mowgli felt very happy and stayed with the pack forever.	☐	☐
3. All the wolves welcomed Mowgli back as a hero after the fight.	☐	☐
4. Kaa helped save Mowgli from the monkeys.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. How did the animals welcome Mowgli when he visited the jungle?

.....

6. How can you describe Mother Wolf.

.....

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. I advise you to study for the exam. (should)

.....

2. He went to bed. He had finished his work. (after)

.....

3. They were walking in the park. It started to rain. (while)

.....

4. My father arrived while I was sleeping. (during)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

SB

Bassem and Maged are talking about the environment.

Bassem : Hi, Maged. I'm doing a project about our environment.

Hany : Great! topic! We need to take actions to protect our ①

Bassem : Yes, I know. Let's recycle old things instead of throwing them away.

Hany : Exactly! Recycling helps ② pollution.

Bassem : That's smart. How about using cloth bags ③ of plastic?

Hany : Good idea! How about ④ more trees in our gardens?

Bassem : I love that!

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

SB

"Healthy habits "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 2

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. Video games can help with
 a. cooking b. studying c. swimming d. flying
2. Video games are today.
 a. boring b. unknown c. popular d. expensive

B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. How can video games help students?

.....

4. What other activities can students do?

.....

5. What shouldn't students do?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is what pushes you to do something and helps you keep going.
 a. Distraction b. Laziness c. Fear d. Motivation
2. The opposite of "natural" is
 a. normal b. special c. strange d. artificial
3. To get the opposite of "regular" we add the prefix
 a. dis- b. im- c. il- d. ir-
4. Regular practice is the most way to improve your English.
 a. slow b. bad c. effective d. boring

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

SB

rewarding - ambitious - technology - challenging - responsibilities

I want to be a doctor in the future. It's a very ① job because you have to help sick people every day. I know it will be difficult, but I am ② and ready to work hard. Doctors have many important ③, such as caring for patients and saving lives. I believe being a doctor is a truly ④ career.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Learning a foreign language is not easy. Some people don't like learning a foreign language for this reason. Lots of people all over the world are learning English for different reasons. It is the most widely spoken language in the world. A tour guide needs to use English when they speak to tourists from different countries in the world. Businessmen need to use English because they travel to many countries.

People who work with computers need to know English because they do a lot of work on the internet which is like a bank of information. Students need to learn English to be able to read books written in English.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A tour guide needs English to speak to
 a. doctors b. farmers c. students d. tourists
2. The opposite of the underlined word "easy" is
 a. different b. difficult c. fast d. amazing

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

4. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

5. Do you think learning English is important for students? Why / Why not?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Mowgli grew up living in a human village.	☐	☐
2. The Bandar-log monkeys kidnapped Mowgli.	☐	☐
3. Some people in the village whispered that Mowgli was cursed.	☐	☐
4. At the end of the story, Mowgli felt he had to choose only one world to belong to.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Where did Mowgli get the fire from?

6. What happened to Shere Khan at the pass?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. Never wake up late. (Don't)

2. The team played well. They lost the final match. (However)

3. The streets were wet because it rained. (therefore)

4. I am going to bed early. I have a very long day tomorrow. (since)

7 Complete the following dialog:

SB

Aya is talking to Nour about pollution.

Aya : What problems is our Earth facing today?

Nour : I think pollution and ① _____ down trees are the most serious.

Aya : Yes, that's true. Why is pollution ② _____?

Nour : Because it makes the air and water dirty, besides it can ③ _____ animals

Aya : Also we should recycle things to help our environment stay clean.

Nour : Let's also walk to school instead of using cars.

Aya : Together, we can make a big ④ _____.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

SB

"Do's and Don'ts" for protecting the environment"

Test 3

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1. What should you avoid while studying? -----
 - a. Quiet places
 - b. Taking breaks
 - c. Phone distractions
 - d. Timetables
2. Studying for shorter, focused periods is ----- .
 - a. not allowed
 - b. better than studying ten hours
 - c. useless
 - d. funny

2 B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. What is the key to achieving goals? -----
4. Why is it important to take breaks? -----
5. What must you do to get high marks? -----

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ----- means to lose color and brightness.
 - a. Faded
 - b. Brightened
 - c. Polished
 - d. Painted
2. The synonym of "motivation" is -----
 - a. encouragement
 - b. safety
 - c. death
 - d. boredom
3. To get the opposite of "known", we add the prefix "-----".
 - a. re-
 - b. un-
 - c. in-
 - d. dis-
4. The cattle were ----- in the open fields, eating grass.
 - a. running
 - b. sleeping
 - c. grazing
 - d. playing

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

recycle - pollution - lose - reduce - save

Our planet needs our help! We can ① ----- old materials like paper and plastic. We should ② ----- the things we throw away and use again. Let's conserve nature and keep animals safe. Stop ③ ----- by keeping the air and water clean. We must ④ ----- energy and protect our beautiful planet every day!

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Learning can be fun and easy when we use good tools in the classroom. Students do not need to read from a book all the time. They can learn by singing songs, listening to stories, and using tablets or phones. Singing songs helps students learn new words and say them clearly. Stories help students understand ideas and people, and they make lessons more interesting. Smart learning means using apps and digital tools to study. These tools help students learn faster and enjoy their lessons. When teachers use different ways of teaching, students feel happy and active in class. Learning becomes exciting, and students want to learn more every day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Singing songs helps students say words
 a. slowly b. well c. badly d. late
2. Tablets and apps make learning
 a. boring b. difficult c. interesting d. loud

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How can students learn in class?

4. What do stories help students do?

5. Why is learning fun with good tools?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Baloo the bear promised to teach Mowgli the Law of the Jungle.	☐	☐
2. The wolf pack was united and all of them wanted Mowgli to stay.	☐	☐
3. Shere Khan tried to kill Mowgli using a trap with cattle.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli was afraid and could not defeat the tiger.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What did Bagheera tell Mowgli about the power of jungle fears?

6. What lessons did Mowgli learn from Baloo and Bagheera in the jungle?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. If I were you, I wouldn't watch too much TV. (shouldn't)

2. The company lost a lot of money. They had to close two branches. (therefore)

3. I like pizza, but I don't like pasta. (although)

4. The guest left. Then I cleaned the house. (After)

7 Complete the following dialog:

SB

Tom is talking to James about fairy tales.

Tom : I like reading fairy tales. They are fun!

James : Me too! I like the magical places and exciting stories.

Tom : Do you like the ① _____ too?

James : Yes! The characters, like heroes and princesses, are interesting.

Tom : They also have good lessons.

James : Right! They teach us important ② _____ in a fun way.

Tom : Which ③ _____ tale do you like the most?

James : I like "Cinderella" because it shows that being ④ _____ can bring happiness.

Tom : Do you think they are special?

James : Yes! I think fairy tales are always special because they make people imagine and dream.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

SB

"The rules your class follow and your own timetable"

Test 4

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. Fatma doesn't eat unhealthy food because it

- a. is against the law b. makes her feel tired
c. costs a lot of money d. is delicious

2. Fatma always carries a everywhere.

- a. bottle b. glass c. pencil case d. bag

B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. What healthy food does Fatma eat?

.....

4. What doesn't she eat?

.....

5. Why does she eat healthy food?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is the act of hurting someone who hurt you first.

- a. Kindness b. Revenge c. Forgiveness d. Reward

2. The antonym of "disappointment" is

- a. satisfaction b. sadness c. frustration d. strain

3. We add the prefix "....." to form the opposite of "appointment"

- a. un- b. im- c. ir- d. dis-

4. Animals eat grass on

- a. sand dunes b. grazing land c. rocky hills d. riversides

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

SB

interesting - temperature - boring - guide - tourists

Last summer, I visited Siwa Oasis. When I arrived, the sun was shining and the

1 reached 40 degrees. While I was walking to my hotel, I met a local

② _____ named Samy. He explained that many ③ _____ come to see the famous salt lakes. The next morning, we woke up early and started our journey. As we were driving through the desert, Samy told us ④ _____ stories about desert life

④ Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name's Rehab. I always get up at half past six. I usually have a shower before I get dressed. I have breakfast with my family. My house is not far from my school, so I go to school on foot. I always arrive there before the bell rings. At break, I have some sandwiches and talk to my friends. I play with them in the playground. I come back home at about two o'clock. I usually feel tired then. My parents always come from work at about three o'clock. I like to help my mum make lunch. After lunch, I do my homework. I usually go to bed at nine o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rehab's house is _____ her school.
a. near b. far from c. away d. opposite
2. The underlined word "them" refers to _____.
a. Rehab's parents b. Rehab's family c. sandwiches d. Rehab's friends

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Rehab usually do after she gets up?

4. What does Rehab do at break?

5. When does Rehab always get up?

Story

⑤ A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Bagheera offered a freshly killed ox to the wolf pack.	☐	☐
2. The monkeys were very organized and followed the Law.	☐	☐

3. Shere Khan told lies to the wolves to make them turn against Mowgli.

☐ ☐

4. Mowgli entered a human village near the jungle.

☐ ☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Why did Mowgli decide to leave the wolf pack and join the human village?

6. What do you think might happen if someone in the jungle breaks the "Law of the jungle"?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. I was tired so I went to bed early.

(As)

2. She studied hard so she passed the exam.

(because)

3. It's a good idea to check your timetable every day.

(should)

4. The chef used too much salt in the soup. Nobody wanted to eat it.

(so)

7 Complete the following dialog:

SB

Kareem is talking to Fareeda about the school day.

Kareem : What time does school start?

Fareeda : It starts at 7:30. We have 8 ¹ ----- a day.

Kareem : Right! And what's our first ² ----- today?

Fareeda : It's English. Don't forget your notebook!

Kareem : Sure. By the ³ -----, we mustn't use phones in class.

Fareeda : Exactly! Good students always ⁴ ----- the rules

- 8** Write an email of ONE HUNDRED (100) words to your friend, telling him you are getting ready for the exam

Your name is Sameh and your email address is sameh77@gmail.com.

Your friend's name is Mai and her email address is mai88@yahoo.com

New Message
- / + X

To :

From :

Subject :

Cc Bcc

Send

|
 |
 |
 |
 |
 |

|

Test 5

- 1** A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. When choosing a career, you should think about your.....

a. favorite food
b. hobbies and skills

c. sleeping habits
d. old clothes
2. You should about different jobs before choosing one.

a. exercise
b. grow
c. read
d. forget

- B: Listen again and answer the following questions:**

3. Why is it important to choose the right job?

.....

4. What can you do if you like helping people?

.....

5. How can you choose the right job?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ are changes that help living things survive.
a. Mistakes b. Adaptations c. Habits d. Accidents
2. "Participate" and "take part" in are _____.
a. antonyms b. synonyms c. adjectives d. nouns
3. To change the adjective wise into an adverb, we add the suffix _____.
a. -ly b. -ness c. -ity d. -ion
4. The hikers used _____ to signal for help when their jeep broke down.
a. mirrors b. flares c. smoke d. phones

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

SB

flexibility - communication - frustration - motivation - Teamwork

Communication and teamwork are very important for success in any job. To work well with others, you need strong ❶ _____ skills to share your ideas clearly. ❷ _____ helps a group find the best problem-solving methods when they face a difficult task. Having ❸ _____ is also necessary because team members must be ready to change their plans to help the group. Finally, a good team gives ❹ _____ to every person, which makes everyone work harder and feel happy.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many people think video games are only for fun, but they can also help us learn. When we play games, we solve puzzles and think carefully, so our thinking skills get better. Games make lessons more interesting and help us remember information. In multiplayer games, players talk and work together to win. This helps students learn how to cooperate with others. Educational games can help students learn subjects like history and science. However, we should not play for too long. It is important to balance playing games with schoolwork and other daily duties.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Video games can help us _____.
a. sleep b. learn c. cook d. travel

2. In multiplayer games, players work to win.
 a. alone b. slowly c. together d. quietly

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How do games help our thinking skills?

4. What do educational games help students learn?

5. Why should we not play games for too long?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. The monkeys wanted Mowgli to be their leader.	☐	☐
2. Baloo and Bagheera supported Mother Wolf.	☐	☐
3. The man cub was discovered by Shere Khan, the fierce tiger.	☐	☐
4. Baloo and Bagheera welcomed Mowgli as their enemy.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Did Shere Khan like Mowgli? Why or why not?

6. What decision did Mowgli make after returning to the pack?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. She was reading a book when the phone rang. (While)

2. If I were you, I would do sports. (should)

3. She was promoted because she reached all her targets. (so)

4. It is a bad idea for Ahmed to trust strangers.

(shouldn't)

7 Complete the following dialog:

SB

Sama is talking to Rana the new school rules .

Sama : Rana, our teacher said we need to talk about the new school rules and timetable.

Rana : Yes, I heard! The rules are a bit different this year.

What do you **1** about them?

Sama : I think they're **2** For example, students must be in class before 8 o'clock.

Rana : That's true. It helps everyone start the day on time. But I think we should have a longer break.

Sama : Maybe! But the **3** is already full with lessons and activities.

Rana : Right. Still, we could **4** changing the order of some subjects-like having P.E. before break.

Sama : Good point! It would make students more active and focused after the break.

Rana : Let's write our ideas down and share them with the class tomorrow.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Your future job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 6

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1. Swimming is important because it helps the body
a. be lazy b. stay healthy and strong
c. get sick d. stay tired
2. Which hobby helps with "thinking carefully"?..... .
a. sleeping b. reading stories
c. playing chess d. swimming in the sea

 B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. Why must we have hobbies in our free time?
4. What hobbies does the write have?
5. Why does the writer love reading?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- _____ are groups of people living together with shared culture.
a. Teams b. Companies c. Tribes d. Neighbors
- Meaningful and meaningless are _____.
a. synonyms b. prefixes c. suffixes d. antonyms
- We turn the verb "concentrate" into a noun by adding the suffix _____.
a. -ing b. -ed c. -ion d. -ly
- During the sandstorm, they covered their faces with _____ to breathe properly.
a. sunglasses b. hats c. scarves d. wet cloths

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

waste-recycle-reduce-pollution-environment

Our planet is facing many big problems today. One of the biggest challenges is ❶ _____, which hurts the air and water. To protect the ❷ _____, we must change the way we live. It is important to ❸ _____ the waste we make every day. We should ❹ _____ old things like paper and plastic so they do not end up in the trash.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Reading is a very helpful habit. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. It is better to wear your reading glasses if it is necessary. You should read different topics. To remember what you read, it is a good idea to have a pen in your hand to underline or circle the important points. Try to discuss what you have read with your friends.

People read for different goals. Some people read for enjoyment, just to feel happy and spend a nice time. Others read for work. Students read for their study or research.

All of us read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails, and letters that we receive.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What do you think the underlined word "Others" refers to?
 a. goals b. people c. points d. glasses
- The underlined word "enjoyment" means.....
 a. discussion b. mysteries c. sadness d. pleasure

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?

- Why do you think you need to read in a quiet place?

- How can you remember what you read?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Father Wolf and Mother Wolf discovered the baby in the jungle.	☐	☐
2. Bagheera taught Mowgli how to hunt for an ox.	☐	☐
3. Bagheera told Mowgli that humans have a power the jungle fears.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli decided to live only in the jungle and never visit the village again.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What did Shere Khan want to do with the child?

6. Why do you think some animals might not trust Mowgli even though he grew up in the jungle?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. She studied hard for the exam. She didn't get a high grade. (but)

2. My brother is very shy. I am very outgoing and social. (While)

3. I advise you not to talk to strangers. (shouldn't)

4. The team worked hard all season. They won the championship trophy. (so)

7 Complete the following dialog:

SB

Wafaa and Randa are talking about fairy tales.

Wafaa : Hi, Randa!

Randa : Hi, Wafaa! Do you like reading ① _____ tales?

Wafaa : Yes, I do! They're ② _____ of magic and fun. What about you?

Randa : I love them too. My favorite one is Cinderella. It teaches
③ _____ and hope.

Wafaa : I first heard it when I was a child. My grandmother used to tell it
before bedtime.

Randa : How sweet! Do you think they are special ④ _____?

Wafaa : Yes, stories from our childhood always stay in our hearts.

Randa : I agree! Let's read some new fairy tales together!



Test 7

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



- Where did Ahmed find the small kitten?.....
 - In his garden
 - In the street
 - At the pet shop
 - Under his bed
- How did the kitten change after Ahmed took care of it?
 - It stayed sad
 - It ran away
 - It became strong and happy
 - It became very big

 **B:** Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. Why do you think Ahmed decided to take the kitten home?
4. What did Ahmed give the kitten to help it feel better?
5. What does the story tell us?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Kindness and _____ are antonyms.
a. helpfulness b. friendship c. happiness d. cruelty
- The suffix _____ turns danger into an adjective.
a. -ous b. -ness c. -ly d. -able
- Playing chess can improve your _____ skills and help you think clearly.
a. musical b. cooking c. physical d. mental
- If something is the only one of its kind, it's _____.
a. unique b. creative c. extreme d. dry

dunes - campfire - tent - flat - temperature



A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- B. Answer the following questions:**

- 114

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Bagheera offered a dead fish to the wolf pack	☐	☐
2. Shere Khan wanted to destroy Mowgli.	☐	☐
3. The naughty Bandar-log, the monkey, kidnapped Mowgli.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli never returned to the jungle after living with humans.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What is the lesson we learn from Mowgli's story?

6. How can people live peacefully even when they are different from others?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. Since the water was too cold, we didn't go swimming. (so)

2. I reached the cinema. The movie had started. (by the time)

3. The movie started. Then we arrived at the cinema. (After)

4. I finished my homework. Then I went out to play. (Before)

7 Complete the following dialog:

SB

Salma and Walaa are talking about choosing a story.

Salma : I believe we should decide which story to tell in class.

Walaa : That's true. We must bring something interesting for our ① -----.

Salma : Shall we practice our ② ----- together?

Walaa : That would be helpful. What do you plan to ③ -----?

Salma : I will tell a folktale if you prepare a fable.

Walaa : Great! And we must make ④ ----- the stories teach a lesson.



Write an email of ONE HUNDRED (100) words to your friend about spending a day in the desert.

Your name is Marwa and your email address is marwa88@yahoo.com . Your friend's name is Rana and her email address is rana90@gmail.com

 **New Message** — / ✕

To

:

.....

Cc Bcc

From

:

.....

Subject

:

.....

Send

 |  |  |  |  | 

 | 

Test 8

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. Ahmed must _____ in the park?
 - a. pick all the flowers
 - b. not leave litter on the grass
 - c. sleep under the trees
 - d. read books
2. Ahmed goes to the park to _____.
 - a. stay home
 - b. cook food
 - c. study lessons
 - d. get fresh air and exercise

2 B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. When does Ahmed go the park? _____
4. What does he play in the park? _____
5. Is he a polite boy? How do you know? _____

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ means in a way that works well and produces good results.
 - a. Randomly
 - b. Slowly
 - c. Carelessly
 - d. Effectively
2. The words active and lazy are _____.
 - a. synonyms
 - b. nouns
 - c. antonyms
 - d. verbs
3. We change the word responsible into a noun by adding the suffix _____.
 - a. -ness
 - b. -ity
 - c. -ment
 - d. -tion
4. Sarah used her jacket to create _____ under a rock during the day.
 - a. a fire
 - b. shelter
 - c. a signal
 - d. a bed

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

creatures - adaptation - easy - fennec - harsh

Many amazing animals survive in very hot and dry deserts despite the ① _____ conditions. The camel is a famous example because it can go for days without water. Its body has a special ② _____ to store fat in its hump for energy. Other animals, like the ③ _____ fox, have large ears to help them stay cool. Small lizards often hide under rocks to escape the sun. These ④ _____ show us how life can continue even in the most difficult places on Earth.



4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My grandfather is my hero. He was born in a village to a poor family in January 1952. But he worked hard at school and he went to the university. He was always interested in helping people and he became a doctor.

I admire him because he has stopped working as a doctor, but he hasn't stopped helping people. He teaches in the village school. He has taught many children who are now at the university. When he was a doctor, he helped poor patients for free. Furthermore he gave them medicine without taking any money. He is really a great man.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "admire" means the same as
 a. hate b. love c. dislike d. live
2. The underlined word "he" refers to the
 a. uncle b. brother c. father d. grandfather

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title for the passage.

4. What is the writer's grandfather interested in?

5. Why do you think the writer's grandfather is a great man?

Story



5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Mowgli means "little frog".	☐	☐
2. Bagheera advised Mowgli to learn about fire.	☐	☐
3. Baloo and Bagheera, asked for help from the tiger.	☐	☐
4. Baloo and Bagheera still treated Mowgli like a member of their family.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Who hated Mowgli? Why?

6. Why do you think Mowgli felt isolated?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. I was eating dinner. The phone rang. (when)

2. We were driving to the beach. We saw a car accident. (while)

3. She bought the tickets before now. (already)

4. They have studied English since 2012. (for)

7 Complete the following dialog:

SB

Fadi and Rami are talking about living in the desert.

Fadi : Have you ever thought about living in the desert?

Rami : Not really because it is very ① _____ and dry there.

Fadi : You are right. Desert life is quite difficult. Which do you think is better,
② _____ life or desert life?

Rami : City life is easier than desert life.

Fadi : What is the most challenging problem in desert ③ _____ ?

Rami : I think finding enough water and ④ _____ is the biggest problem.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Study Tips"

Test 9

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. To remember a new word you should
 - a. forget it immediately
 - b. use it in a sentence
 - c. watch TV
 - d. play tennis
2. It is advisable to read to improve your language.
 - a. short stories
 - b. math books
 - c. about sports
 - d. every year

B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. What should you do when you see a new word?
4. How can we improve our language skills?
5. How many words should we learn every day?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a fixed time in a school timetable during which a specific subject or activity is taught.
 - a. period
 - b. break
 - c. term
 - d. holiday
2. The synonym of the word "effectively" is
 - a. randomly
 - b. poorly
 - c. slowly
 - d. successfully
3. The suffix turns the word "health" into an adjective.
 - a. -ly
 - b. -ful
 - c. -able
 - d. -y
4. My father to buy me a new mobile when I succeeded.
 - a. promised
 - b. asked
 - c. wondered
 - d. played

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

advisable - opportunities - useless - entertainment - pollution

City life is very exciting but also quite busy. There are many people living in big cities, which can make the streets very noisy and crowded. One big problem is ① from cars and factories. However, cities offer various benefits. There are many ② options, such as cinemas, parks, and malls. Most importantly, cities provide many job ③ in different fields. It is ④ to live in a city if you want a fast life with many services nearby.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I prefer life in the country where one can enjoy a simple and quiet life. The villages in Egypt have improved lately. In the past, villages were just groups of poor houses.

There was no electricity or clean water. There were very few schools. Sick people had to be carried to hospitals far from their villages. Now, it is very different. The houses are well built like the houses in towns and cities. They are supplied with electricity and clean water. There are primary, prep and secondary schools in every village.

Villagers now use modern technology such as fridges, washing machines, computers and mobile phones that made their life better and more comfortable. Villagers are proud that the best places are called villages such as Smart Village and Tourist Village.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
 a. schools b. houses c. villagers d. roads
- Life in the Egyptian villages has changed. It has become
 a. boring b. uncomfortable c. hard d. comfortable

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why does the writer prefer living in the country?

- What are the houses of the Egyptian villages like now?

- Why are villagers proud now?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Bagheera offered a freshly killed ox to the wolf pack	☐	☐
2. Bagheera's lessons included hiding and climbing.	☐	☐
3. Mowgli promised never to forget his wolf family.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli allowed hunters to kill animals in the jungle for no reason.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What two groups did Mowgli protect?

6. Why did Mowgli think that his fate might be away from the pack?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. She was doing her homework. The lights went out. (when)

2. I finished my homework a few seconds ago. (just)

3. The train didn't arrive at the station. (yet)

4. She began working at the hospital three years ago. (for)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Karma and Fatma are talking about studying.

Karma : Hi Fatma! What is your favorite subject?

Fatma : I love ① -----

Karma : You are very good at English. How do you remember new
② -----?

Fatma : It is not very hard. I use flashcards with pictures. The pictures help
me ③ ----- the meaning quickly.

Karma : That is a good idea! I will try that tonight for my homework.

Fatma : You should also try to say the words out loud. It helps a lot!

Karma : Thanks for the ④ -----, Fatma!

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Achieving something you worked hard for"

Test 10

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. What is the father's job?

- a. Doctor b. Teacher c. Engineer d. Pilot

2. The students must wear a

- a. jeans b. traditional costume
c. formal suit d. uniform

B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. Why does the father wake up early every morning?

4. What subject does he teach?

5. Why does he like his job?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. are comfortable shoes you wear for sports or walking.

- a. Sandals b. Sneakers c. Boots d. Pants

2. To turn the verb "respect" into an adjective, we add the suffix

- a. -ion b. -ful c. -ity d. -less

3. The antonym of "safe" is

- a. secure b. protected c. healthy d. dangerous

4. The view of the Pyramids at sunset was truly

- a. ordinary b. boring c. magical d. simple

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

activities - meaningful - digital - meaningless - songs

Learning doesn't have to be boring! To make it fun and effective, students should use a variety of activities. ① tools, like educational games and apps, make lessons interactive and exciting. ② are also magnificent because they help us remember new words. Good stories make lessons more ③

because they help students imagine new worlds and empathize with others. By using these 4 -----, the classroom truly comes alive!

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Maher. I was born in Giza in 2008. I am a pupil at El Salam Prep School. My favorite subject is English. I like watching foreign films and reading short stories.

I'd like to be a TV reporter. A TV reporter talks to different people in front of a camera. I have got one sister and two brothers. My father is a hotel manager. He makes sure that all rooms are clean and comfortable. He also looks after visitors. My mother's a scientist at Cairo University.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Maher's father works as a -----.

- a. hotel manager b. scientist c. TV reporter d. farmer

2. Maher's favorite subject is -----.

- a. history b. Arabic c. German d. English

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where was Maher born?

4. What would Maher like to be?

5. How old is Maher?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Bagheera offered a freshly killed ox in exchange of the boy.	☐	☐
2. The Bandar-log made Mowgli their leader.	☐	☐
3. Mowgli went to the village to steal a pot of burning coals.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli worked by taking care of the village's cattle.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. How did Mowgli turn the tiger's plan against him?

6. Why do you think Mowgli felt sad after he won against Shere Khan?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. The car wouldn't start. The battery was completely dead. (because)

2. The rain stopped. Then we started our football match. (After)

3. It is important for students to listen to the teacher. (should)

4. The sun set. We reached the top of the mountain. (By the time)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Hamza and Hala are talking about their dream jobs.

Hamza : Hi Hala! What's your dream job?

Hala : I want to be a ① ----- .

Hamza : That is very kind. Why do you want to do that ② ----- ?

Hala : I want to make people feel better and see them smile again. What about you?

Hamza : My dream is to be a ③ ----- programmer.

Hala : That sounds cool! What ④ ----- or talents does it need?

Hamza : It needs good problem-solving skills and patience. You must be good at math too.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Saving Energy"

Test 11

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

- To stay healthy you must
 a. eat a lot of chocolate b. do sports
 c. sleep during the game d. play only in the rain
- We must wear to play sports.
 a. jeans b. galabeya c. trainers d. rings

B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

- Why should people drink water while they are exercising?
- Why is it important to do sports?
- How can we stay fit?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A is a long narrow passage in a building.
 a. staircase b. balcony c. hallway d. roof
- The words quiet and have the same meaning.
 a. calm b. noisy c. loud d. crowded
- To turn the verb "enjoy" into an adjective, we add the suffix
 a. -ment b. -ness c. -able d. -ly
- The colors of the old photo have over time.
 a. grown b. faded c. brightened d. appeared

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

breaks - fair - focused - periods - manage

Having a school timetable is the best way to stay organized. The school divides the day into different ①, so you know exactly which subject to study and when. At our school, the school day starts at 8:00 a.m. and finishes at 3:00 p.m. We have eight periods every day with short ② between lessons. This helps you ③ your time effectively because you don't waste time. By following a timetable, you must stay ④, and you don't have to feel stressed about your homework.

4

Schools have important rules that everyone must follow to keep things organized. First, students must arrive on time for their lessons so they do not miss any information. In the classroom, you should raise your hands if you want to speak or ask a question. This shows respect for the teacher and your classmates. When you are in the library, you must be very quiet so that others can study. Good behavior is necessary at all times, especially in the hallways. You should also keep your school clean and look after the equipment. Following these simple rules helps every student learn better and makes the school a safe and friendly place for everyone.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What should you do if you want to speak in the classroom?.....
- a. Shout loudly. b. Raise your hands.
- c. Run to the front. d. Leave the room.
2. Students must in the library.
- a. be quiet. b. play games. c. eat snacks. d. speak loudly.

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is it important for students to arrive at their lessons on time?
-
4. Why must students follow the rules?
-
5. When should they raise their hands?
-

Story

1. Shere Khan discovered the baby in the jungle.
2. Mowgli learned that loyalty and respect are parts of true friendship.
3. Mowgli was saved, grateful for the loyalty of his friends.
4. The wolves all welcomed Mowgli back after the fight.

T	F

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Who supported Mother Wolf?

6. How can people today create harmony between life and the environment?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. I was hungry, so I ate a sandwich. (because)

2. The roads were icy, therefore the bus was late. (as a result)

3. The train left the station. We finally got there. (By the time)

4. First he arrived home, then he had a shower. (before)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Amira and Nada are talking about dream career.

Amira: What job do you want to do in the future, Nada?

Nada: I want to be a famous ① I want to help sick people.

Amira: That is a great dream! But it is a very difficult job to get.

Nada: I know. Do you have any ② for me?

Amira: You should study ③ every day.

Nada: That is true. What else can I do?

Amira: If I were you, I would volunteer at a local ④ to learn more.

Nada: That is a smart plan. Thanks a lot.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Living in the city"

Test 12

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. The chef should keep the kitchen
 a. clean b. painted blue c. crowded d. dirty
2. The bus driver must follow the rules.
 a. sports b. cooking c. traffic d. teaching

B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. What does a mechanic use to fix cars?
4. What is the chef responsible for?
5. Who must keep the passengers safe?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "precious" means
 a. valuable b. cheap c. useless d. common
2. The prefix turns "sure" into a verb.
 a. dis- b. un- c. en- d. re-
3. To apply for this job, you need to have the right skills and
 a. qualifications b. hobbies c. friends d. clothes

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

participate - combine - shy - concentration - brave

Many experts believe that playing video games can make you smarter. Games can improve levels of ❶, which trains your brain to focus on difficult tasks. These mental exercises help ❷ fun with learning, making them an effective tool for education. Games also help students who are ❸ feel more confident. When they ❹ in online games, they learn how to communicate and solve problems together.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Fatma wants to be a doctor when she grows up because she loves helping people feel better. To reach this goal, Fatma knows she must study very hard in her science and biology classes. She is interested in how the human body works and wants to work in a big hospital in Cairo. Fatma believes that being a doctor requires good communication skills to talk to patients and their families. Her main goal is to find cures for sick children and make her parents proud. She plans to volunteer at a local clinic during the summer to gain experience. For Fatma, being a doctor is not just a job, but a way to serve her country.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Fatma wants to be a doctor to
 a. live in a different country. b. help people feel better.
 c. work in a school. d. is bad at science.
- Fatma is going to during the summer to get experience
 a. travel to a new city. b. study biology alone at home.
 c. volunteer at a local clinic. d. buy new clothes for her job.

B. Answer the following questions:

- Which subjects must Fatma study hard to become a doctor?

- Where does Fatma want to work in the future?

- Why does Fatma think a doctor needs good communication skills?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. The story took place in a forest.	☐	☐
2. Mowgli learned that he can trust everyone in the jungle.	☐	☐
3. At the end, Mowgli became a strong and wise young man.	☐	☐
4. Shere Khan planned to kill Mowgli by using a herd of cattle.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Where do you think the story "The Jungle Book" takes place?

.....

6. How do you think Mowgli will feel when he lives as humans after growing up in the village?

.....

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. The sun was shining. It was very cold outside. (but)

.....

2. I missed the bus, so I was late for school. (because)

.....

3. Traveling by plane is fast. It can be very expensive. (However)

.....

4. He didn't come to school because he was ill. (so)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Sally and Marwa are talking about online technology.

Sally : What are you reading about, Marwa?

Marwa : I am reading a book about ①

Sally : Are you interested in technology?

Marwa : Yes, I ②

Sally : What is the most important ③?

Marwa : I think the mobile phone is the most important invention.

Sally : ④ do you think so?

Marwa : Because it helps us do research and get lots of information.

Sally : I agree with you.

- 8 Write an email of ONE HUNDRED (100) words to your friend to tell him that you will move to live in the desert.

Your name is Baraa and your email address is baraa2016@hotmail.com. Your friend is Khadija and her email address is khadija2015@gmail.com


New Message

To

From

Subject

.....

.....

.....

Cc

Bcc

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Send










Test 13

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1. We can use technology to
 a. make learning more difficult b. help us learn
 c. travel to the past d. play games only
2. Educational videos can make subjects.....
 a. easier to understand b. unclear
 c. boring d. not useful for learning

B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. How did students find information in the past?

.....

4. What do we use the internet for?

.....

5. How can online classes help students?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a serious meeting, arguing or fight between people.
 a. Conversation b. Confrontation c. Cooperation d. Agreement
2. "Clever" and "smart" are
 a. synonyms b. verbs c. nouns d. antonyms
3. To form an adjective from "peace", we add the suffix "".
 a. -er b. -ing c. -ly d. -ful
4. The new English app is very; it lets students talk and play games together.
 a. interactive b. boring c. traditional d. broken

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

timetable - skills - interactive - technology - games

Teachers work hard to make school exciting for everyone. Today, they use ①like tablets and smartboards to make lessons come alive. Instead of just reading books, students play ②quizzes that feel like a competition. Many teachers also use ③to explain difficult topics, which helps students enjoy the challenge. These fun methods are important to help children gain new ④for the future. Learning doesn't have to be boring when teachers use creative ideas to keep us interested.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Teachers play a magnificent role in making education exciting. Instead of just reading from old books, they use creative ways to make lessons come alive. Many teachers use digital tools like tablets and smartboards to play interactive games. This is very effective because students don't have to sit still all day. Teachers also tell stories that help students imagine different worlds and empathize with others. Sometimes, they use songs to help children remember difficult words or math rules. It is advisable for teachers to include group work so students can talk and share ideas. When learning is fun, students feel more motivated and their career goals become clearer. A happy classroom is the key to a great future!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Teachers use digital tools like tablets in the classroom to
 a. read from old books only. b. play interactive games.
 c. sleep during the lesson. d. make the classroom quiet.
2. Group work important
 a. so students can talk and share ideas. b. so students can sit still all day.
 c. to help teachers rest. d. to make the lessons more difficult.

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How do stories and songs help students with their learning?

.....

4. What does the underlined "they" word refer to?

.....

5. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Shere Khan is a friendly lion.	☐	☐
2. Baloo taught Mowgli the Law of the Jungle.	☐	☐
3. Bagheera reminded Mowgli that he belonged only to the jungle.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli helped the villagers protect their cattle and crops.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What did Baloo, the bear, promise to do?

6. What makes Mowgli a true hero: his strength, his courage, or his wisdom?
Explain.

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. The children fell asleep. The parents came home. (By the time)

2. They didn't clean the room until this moment. (yet)

3. I started living here in 2010. (since)

4. The train had left before I arrived at the station. (After)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Nour and Mona are talking about daily routine.

Nour : Good morning, Mona! What time do you wake up?

Mona : I ① up at 6:30 AM every morning. What about you?

Nour : I wake up at 7:00 AM. What's your first ② today?

Mona : It's English. It's my favorite! I love reading stories.

Nour : That is great. Do you take ③ _____ in any after-school activities?

Mona : Yes, I play volleyball on Tuesdays. What time do you usually get home?

Nour : I usually get home at 3:30 PM. Then I do my ④ _____.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

“What activities make learning more fun and effective”

[illegible]

Test 14

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. I wear a uniform because it is the school.....

- a. color b. dress code c. playground d. holiday.

2. Students mustn't

- a. talk to friends b. do homework
c. run in the corridors d. study history

B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. What time does the school day begin?

.....

4. Why is it important to listen to the teacher during class?

.....

5. What should students do to get high marks?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. means being clever in a way that is often tricky using smart methods.

- a. Cunning b. Honest c. Lazy d. Kind

2. "Survive" means

- a. balance b. die c. hide d. live

3. To get the adjective from the noun "beauty", we add the suffix ".....".

- a. es b. ness c. ly d. ful

4. Before the exam, many students feel and can't sleep well.

- a. relaxed b. confident c. energetic d. anxious

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

interests - communications - career - qualifications - dream

Choosing the right career is an important step in life. A typical job profile includes several key parts. First, you must check the **1** _____, such as your degree or skills. The responsibilities describe the daily tasks you must do at work. Good **2** _____ skills are essential because you need to share ideas clearly with your team. Your **3** _____, like a love for technology, help you enjoy your job. Finally, having clear **4** _____ goals is the key to becoming a manager or a leader in the future.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Using technology is great. Most people nowadays use their mobiles and laptops too much. They use them to read the news, to study, to do their projects, and to have fun. Technology makes life easier and saves time; just stay at home and hold your mobile. But...!! Many people use their mobiles late at night, so they don't get enough sleep.

Also, spending a lot of time on screens causes headache and eye problems. Moreover, playing video games and talking to friends on social media for hours stops you from doing sports or going out with friends. In my opinion, technology is not good all the time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "they" refers to _____.
 a. mobiles b. screens c. people d. games
2. The text is mainly about _____.
 a. social media b. projects c. eye problems d. technology

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do people use mobiles for?

4. Do you like using technology? Why / Why not?

5. Why shouldn't we spend much time on screens?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Shere Khan whispered lies to the wolves.	☐	☐
2. Everyone in the village trusted and respected Mowgli.	☐	☐
3. Mowgli helped the people in the village protect their animals and crops.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli fought only for humans and never for the jungle.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What happened at the wolf council?

6. Why do you think Baloo taught Mowgli the cries of different animals?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. We stayed at home because it was raining. (as a result)

2. Sarah won the race. She practiced every single day. (since)

3. He forgot his phone at home. He couldn't call his mother. (so)

4. She had studied hard. She passed the test. (because)

Test 15

1 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. Sami's father is a
 a. scientist b. teacher c. doctor d. football player
2. Sami's favorite subjects are
 a. English and Arabic b. English and science
 c. Science and math d. Science and art

2 B: Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. How many people are there in Sami's family?
4. Where does Sami play football?
5. Why does Sami like Science?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. means feeling worried or under pressure.
 a. Relaxed b. Excited c. Stressed d. Bored
2. The opposite of "strong" is
 a. powerful b. weak c. courageous d. safe
3. To get the opposite of "correct", we add the prefix
 a. un- b. in- c. dis- d. mis-
4. I need to all the new vocabulary for the test.
 a. ignore b. memorize c. forget d. lose

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

break - jobs - classmates - uniform - forbidden

Every school has a dress code and rules that students must follow. You must wear the school **1** every day. You must arrive at school on time. It is **2** to shout in the hallways or run in the classrooms. You should always be polite to your teachers and **3** During lessons, you mustn't use your mobile phone. However, you don't have to stay in the classroom during **4** time.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

English is an international language. Millions of people are learning it all over the world. Students use it to communicate with other speakers. This means they have to be able to understand each other.

Students have studied English for more than 90 years in Egyptian schools. They read English books. Teachers help their students to **develop** their language skills of listening, speaking, reading and writing. Tour guides use English to communicate with tourists who visit Egypt. To surf the internet or use the computer, we should learn English.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "develop" can be replaced by
 a. clear b. remove c. improve d. prove
2. Students use English to with others.
 a. help b. communicate c. stay d. play

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

5. Why do you think millions of people learn English all over the world?

Story

5 A. Write True (T) or False (F):

	T	F
1. Mowgli used fire to drive away the wolves.	☐	☐
2. The villagers welcomed Mowgli at first.	☐	☐
3. Mowgli was completely happy living among the humans.	☐	☐
4. Mowgli found peace by accepting both sides of himself.	☐	☐

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What warning did Shere Khan give the wolves about Mowgli?

6. If you were Mowgli, would you stay in the jungle or go to the village? Why?

6 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. Don't forget your notes on the bus. (Never)

2. It's a bad idea to eat unhealthy food. (shouldn't)

3. I wanted to buy the laptop. I didn't have enough money. (However)

4. Some people enjoy winter. Others prefer the summer heat. (While)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ali and Sara are talking about the desert.

Ali : How do animals survive in the desert? It is so hot!

Sara : They sleep during the ① _____ and come out at night.

Ali : That is smart! But what about ② _____?

Sara : A good example is the camel. It can go for many days without drinking because it stores it.

Ali : What about ③ _____? How do they live in dry places?

Sara : Desert plants like cacti store ④ _____ in their thick stems.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Folktales from Around the World"

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Where is Adel from?

.....

2. What does Adel do after dinner?

.....

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Soha is asking Rana about her favourite hobby.

Soha : What your favorite hobby , Rana ?

Rana : 1

Soha : Have you read "Alice's adventures in Wonderland"?

Rana : 2 it's a nice children's story.

Soha : 3 ?

Rana : I think she is sensible girl.

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. When my parents go out, I my little brother.

a. babysit b. graze c. decide d. store

2. Desert communities have learned to to the difficult life in the desert.

a. conserve b. adapt c. migrate d. irrigate

3. I such a great documentary since last month.

a. have watched b. watched
c. have not watched d. not watched

4. your homework before you play video games.

a. Should b. Do c. Shouldn't do d. Don't

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. I met Sara while she run in the park. (.....)

2. She was nervous because she never spoken in public before. (.....)

3. I was late for school so I missed the bus. (.....)
4. You shouldn't eat breakfast before school. (.....)

C. Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Reading is a very important habit in our life. It helps us gain knowledge and learn new ideas. When people read, they improve their language and thinking skills. Reading also helps students succeed at school. In their free time, many people like to read stories, newspapers, or useful books. We should make reading a daily habit because it opens our minds and builds our future.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why is reading important?
.....
2. How does reading help students at school?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. Reading helps us gain
a. money b. knowledge c. food d. sleep
4. People like to read in their free time.
a. noise b. stories c. games d. phones

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Dream Jobs"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Does Adel have a room for herself?

2. How many people are there in Adel's family?

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Noura is telling Hana about her holiday in France.

Hana : Hi, Noura , How was your holiday ?

Noura : Hi, Hana, ① -----

Hana : ② ----- ?

Noura : I went to France .

Hana : Did you visit the Eiffel Tower ?

Noura : ③ -----

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Scientists have ----- countless species in the Great Barrier Reef.

a. discover b. discovered c. discovers d. discovering

2. I need to ----- all the new vocabulary for the test.

a. memorize b. combine c. taste d. insist

3. She studied a lot, ----- she didn't get a high score.

a. however b. because c. so d. since

4. Always ----- your seatbelt when driving to stay safe.

a. fasten b. fastening c. fastens d. fastened

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. You shouldn't ask the teacher if you don't understand something. (.....)

2. Games improve memory, but , not all games are educational. (.....)

3. She worked hard, as a result she got a promotion. (.....)
4. I called my friend after I had finished my project. (.....)

C. Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

The man said. "Take it off. I want to have a look," said the guard. The man closed the bag. Put it on his back and continued into Turkey. The next week, the same thing happened. Again, the guard wanted to see inside the one week the man did not come. Some years later, the guard saw the man bringing something into our country, but I didn't know what. The man said smiling "It was bicycles."

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where was the man on the bicycle travelling to?

.....

2. What was the man bringing into the guard's country?

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148 149 150 151 152 153 154 155 156 157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 178 179 180 181 182 183 184 185 186 187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 216 217 218 219 220 221 222 223 224 225 226 227 228 229 230 231 232 233 234 235 236 237 238 239 240 241 242 243 244 245 246 247 248 249 250 251 252 253 254 255 256 257 258 259 260 261 262 263 264 265 266 267 268 269 270 271 272 273 274 275 276 277 278 279 280 281 282 283 284 285 286 287 288 289 290 291 292 293 294 295 296 297 298 299 300 301 302 303 304 305 306 307 308 309 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 317 318 319 320 321 322 323 324 325 326 327 328 329 330 331 332 333 334 335 336 337 338 339 340 341 342 343 344 345 346 347 348 349 350 351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 379 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 391 392 393 394 395 396 397 398 399 400 401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409 410 411 412 413 414 415 416 417 418 419 420 421 422 423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431 432 433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441 442 443 444 445 446 447 448 449 450 451 452 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 469 470 471 472 473 474 475 476 477 478 479 480 481 482 483 484 485 486 487 488 489 490 491 492 493 494 495 496 497 498 499 500 501 502 503 504 505 506 507 508 509 510 511 512 513 514 515 516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 539 540 541 542 543 544 545 546 547 548 549 550 551 552 553 554 555 556 557 558 559 560 561 562 563 564 565 566 567 568 569 570 571 572 573 574 575 576 577 578 579 580 581 582 583 584 585 586 587 588 589 590 591 592 593 594 595 596 597 598 599 600 601 602 603 604 605 606 607 608 609 610 611 612 613 614 615 616 617 618 619 620 621 622 623 624 625 626 627 628 629 630 631 632 633 634 635 636 637 638 639 640 641 642 643 644 645 646 647 648 649 650 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 659 660 661 662 663 664 665 666 667 668 669 670 671 672 673 674 675 676 677 678 679 680 681 682 683 684 685 686 687 688 689 690 691 692 693 694 695 696 697 698 699 700 701 702 703 704 705 706 707 708 709 710 711 712 713 714 715 716 717 718 719 720 721 722 723 724 725 726 727 728 729 730 731 732 733 734 735 736 737 738 739 740 741 742 743 744 745 746 747 748 749 750 751 752 753 754 755 756 757 758 759 760 761 762 763 764 765 766 767 768 769 770 771 772 773 774 775 776 777 778 779 780 781 782 783 784 785 786 787 788 789 790 791 792 793 794 795 796 797 798 799 800 801 802 803 804 805 806 807 808 809 810 811 812 813 814 815 816 817 818 819 820 821 822 823 824 825 826 827 828 829 830 831 832 833 834 835 836 837 838 839 840 841 842 843 844 845 846 847 848 849 850 851 852 853 854 855 856 857 858 859 860 861 862 863 864 865 866 867 868 869 870 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 886 887 888 889 890 891 892 893 894 895 896 897 898 899 900 901 902 903 904 905 906 907 908 909 910 911 912 913 914 915 916 917 918 919 920 921 922 923 924 925 926 927 928 929 930 931 932 933 934 935 936 937 938 939 940 941 942 943 944 945 946 947 948 949 950 951 952 953 954 955 956 957 958 959 960 961 962 963 964 965 966 967 968 969 970 971 972 973 974 975 976 977 978 979 980 981 982 983 984 985 986 987 988 989 990 991 992 993 994 995 996 997 998 999 1000 1001 1002 1003 1004 1005 1006 1007 1008 1009 1010 1011 1012 1013 1014 1015 1016 1017 1018 1019 1020 1021 1022 1023 1024 1025 1026 1027 1028 1029 1030 1031 1032 1033 1034 1035 1036 1037 1038 1039 1040 1

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. How many journeys did the man make?_____.

- a. Between one and ten b. Between 11 and 20
c. Between 21 and 30 d. Between 31 and 40

4. Where did the guard find out the truth?_____.

- a. In the village b. In the countryside
c. In the sea d. In the town

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

“Saving Energy”

[illegible]

100 200 300 400 500 600 700 800 900 1000 1100 1200 1300 1400 1500 1600 1700 1800 1900 2000 2100 2200 2300 2400 2500 2600 2700 2800 2900 3000 3100 3200 3300 3400 3500 3600 3700 3800 3900 4000 4100 4200 4300 4400 4500 4600 4700 4800 4900 5000 5100 5200 5300 5400 5500 5600 5700 5800 5900 6000 6100 6200 6300 6400 6500 6600 6700 6800 6900 7000 7100 7200 7300 7400 7500 7600 7700 7800 7900 8000 8100 8200 8300 8400 8500 8600 8700 8800 8900 9000 9100 9200 9300 9400 9500 9600 9700 9800 9900 10000

100 200 300 400 500 600 700 800 900 1000 1100 1200 1300 1400 1500 1600 1700 1800 1900 2000 2100 2200 2300 2400 2500 2600 2700 2800 2900 3000 3100 3200 3300 3400 3500 3600 3700 3800 3900 4000 4100 4200 4300 4400 4500 4600 4700 4800 4900 5000 5100 5200 5300 5400 5500 5600 5700 5800 5900 6000 6100 6200 6300 6400 6500 6600 6700 6800 6900 7000 7100 7200 7300 7400 7500 7600 7700 7800 7900 8000 8100 8200 8300 8400 8500 8600 8700 8800 8900 9000 9100 9200 9300 9400 9500 9600 9700 9800 9900 10000

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What is Aya's father's job?

2. Why must Aya stay at home every day?

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Laila is telling Hoda about a day on the beach.

Hoda : Hi, Laila. How do you do?

Laila : Hi, Hoda. ①

Hoda : What was the weather like yesterday?

Laila : ②

Hoda : ③ ?

Laila : I went to the beach.

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. She knows how to her time during exams.

a. organize

b. prepare

c. collect

d. divide

2. A job profile is a short description of a person's

a. work, skills, and responsibilities

b. hobbies

c. friends

d. daily routine

3. We to Paris before we went to Rome.

a. had traveled

b. traveled

c. travel

d. travels

4. Divers have many kinds of fish in the Great Barrier Reef.

a. see

b. saw

c. seen

d. seeing

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Students should talk loudly during class time.

(.....)

2. because I like pizza, I don't like pasta.

(.....)

3. They left the party before it had ended.

4. She has already wrote three stories.

C. Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Humans and animals produce tears when their eyes are irritated or dry. There are different theories about why this is. Human babies are helpless, and crying is probably away to let adults know they need something. When we grow up, we continue to cry when we feel overwhelming emotions to send signals that we need help. Some scientists think that we cry to make people feel certain way. Finally, scientists disagree on whether crying is good for your well-being or not. Some think holding back your tears can make you more likely to fell negative.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do babies cry?

2. What is the result of holding back tears?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. Human produce rears when they are

a. irritated b. qualified c. forgiven d. hopeful

4. Holding back tears have feelings.

a. positive b. constructive c. negative d. hopeful

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"How to save the earth!"

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What does this photo describe?

.....

2. What can we see on the left?

.....

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Taha is asking Omar about technology at school.

Taha : Do you use technology at your school?

Omar : ① We use tablets.

Taha : ② ?

Omar : Yes, I can.

Taha : Which subjects do you use tablets in?

Omar : ③

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Their traditional tents protect them from and the hot sun.

a. rain b. sandstorms c. snow d. floods

2. Each school lasts for forty-five minutes.

a. lesson b. period c. break d. class

3. I my homework already.

a. finish b. finished c. have finished d. finishes

4. They home before it began to rain.

a. had gone b. went c. go d. gone

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. We has just clean the classroom. (.....)

2. He was ill, because he didn't come to school. (.....)

3. You shouldn't finish your homework before playing basketball. (.....)
4. He has went to the library twice this week. (.....)

C. Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Social media sites such as WhatsApp and Instagram help people stay connected with each other. These platforms have made communication quicker and more convenient. They allow users to share their opinions, ideas, and daily activities easily with friends and family. One of the most widely used applications is WhatsApp. Millions of people rely on it every day to send messages, photos, and voice notes. It also helps people create groups to discuss work or study matters. However, the main drawback is that many users, especially teenagers, waste a lot of time chatting and scrolling instead of focusing on useful activities.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think that social media can be useful if used widely? Why?
.....
2. How can people benefit from social media without wasting too much time?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. The underlined word "widely" means
a. rarely b. narrowly c. commonly d. secretly
4. is mentioned in the passage as a popular application.
a. Twitter b. Facebook c. WhatsApp d. YouTube

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A story you have just read"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. What does the man sell in his shop?

.....

2. What can we see on the right?

.....

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Wael is playing chess online.

Basel : What are you doing, Wael?

Wael : I ①

Basel : ② ?

Wael : I'm playing chess with John.

Basel : John! ③ ?

Wael : He is my English friend.

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Recycling means

- a. throwing old materials away
- b. using old materials again to make new things
- c. burning old materials
- d. collecting water

2. The new system works very in saving time.

- a. clearly
- b. carefully
- c. effectively
- d. slowly

3. By the time we arrived at the cinema, the film

- a. started
- b. had started
- c. start
- d. starts

4. He studied hard, he didn't pass the exam.

- a. although
- b. and
- c. because

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. We has painted the classroom walls. (.....)
2. I was tired, because I went to bed early. (.....)
3. First he finished his meal, and then he had watched Tv. (.....)
4. My brother have done his homework. (.....)

C. Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Clean streets are a sign of a civilized society. When streets are clean, people feel comfortable and safe. Keeping streets clean helps protect the environment and prevents the spread of diseases. Everyone has a role in keeping the streets clean. People should throw rubbish in bins and avoid throwing waste in the streets. The government also helps by providing bins and cleaning workers. We should all work together to keep our streets clean and beautiful.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why are clean streets important?

.....

2. How do clean streets help the environment?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. Keeping streets clean prevents the spread of

a. food b. diseases c. water d. noise

4. People should throw rubbish in

a. streets b. rivers c. bins d. roads

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Giving advice to your friend about getting ready for the exam."

.....

.....

.....

.....

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Where does Aya have to go in the evenings?

2. How does Aya feel when she gets home?

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Hoda and Hana are talking about their plans for today.

Hoda : Hello, Hana, Where are you going?

Hana : Hi, Hoda. 1

Hoda : 2 ?

Hana : To read a story. What about you?

Hoda : I'm going to the 3

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. The Bedouins across the desert when the storm began.

a. traveled b. were traveling c. travel d. travels

2. Pandas are animals.

a. common b. endangered c. extinct d. domestic

3. You talk on your phone during class.

a. should b. don't c. shouldn't d. must

4. By the time she called me, I dinner.

a. had finished b. finished c. finish d. finishes

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. She has sang in the school concert last week. (.....)

2. While they played football, it started to rain. (.....)

3. You shouldn't study for the exam. (.....)
4. She was tired because she never eaten breakfast that morning. (.....)

C. Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

The Red Sea is one of the most important seas in Egypt. It lies between Africa and Asia. It is famous for its clear blue water and beautiful coral reefs. Many tourists visit the Red Sea every year to enjoy swimming and diving. The Red Sea is rich in fish and sea animals. It also has many important ports that help trade and travel. The Egyptian people should protect the Red Sea from pollution. We must keep its water clean to benefit from it now and in the future.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where does the Red Sea lie?

.....

2. Why do tourists visit the Red Sea?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. The Red Sea is famous for its water.

a. dirty b. fresh c. clear d. hot

4. We should protect the Red Sea from

a. fishing b. pollution c. travel d. trade

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your own timetable."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة في الملحق

Unit 7

Lessons 1 - 2

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I reviewed my lessons after school today. Good self-control means doing your work first, then playing. I put all my books and my art brush in my bag. This simple movement helps me stay organized. Being organized makes everything go smoothly the next day.

Test on Unit 7

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Tomorrow is our school Sports Day. It is a fair competition for everyone. I will run in two events. I hope I have enough energy to run fast! A fast running movement is very important. I feel excited. My friends will come to watch and cheer for me. I hope our team wins a prize.

Unit 8

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Test on Unit 8

Lucy wanted to improve her English. Her strategy was to set small goals every day. She used interactive apps. She listened to song lyrics to learn pronunciation. To concentrate, she studied in a quiet space without distractions. She also took regular breaks to keep her mind active. This plan helped Lucy build confidence. Now, she is confident and can speak clearly.

Unit 9

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My job is an exciting but tiring adventure. I am a tour guide. My main role is to give a clear description of places. Good communication is a must. I am always mindful of group safety. I must ensure no one gets lost. It is very useful to know first aid.

Test on Unit 9

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Every job needs different skills. A chef must cook well. A nurse must care for people. A builder must be strong and good at building. A driver must know the roads. To do a job well, you need the right skills.

Unit 10

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

When Salma opened an old wooden box, she found a yellowed letter. Though the ink had faded, the words were clear. Her grandfather had written it years ago to her mother, wishing her courage, kindness, and hope. As Salma read, she felt connected to her family's past and realized the letter was a precious memory passed through generations.

Test on Unit 10**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Yesterday was the school talent show, and I felt extremely nervous. When it was finally my turn, I almost forgot my lines. Then I saw my best friend smiling at me in the front row, which gave me courage. As I sang loudly, the audience clapped with me. I didn't win first place, but I felt proud for facing my fear.

Unit 11**Test on Unit 11****1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Sara wanted to build a small boat to sail on the lake near her town. She faced many difficulties, but she did not feel frustrated. Her older brother advised her to start with small pieces first. Sara worked on the boat every day and showed patience and determination. She learned to complete each part carefully and finally finished the boat. Sara felt proud of her achievement and enjoyed sailing it on the calm water. Her success encouraged other children in the town to try new projects and not give up.

Unit 12**Test on Unit 12****1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Ali went on a school trip to Alexandria. He went with his classmates. They went by train. They visited many interesting places. They visited the Bibliotheca Alexandrina.

It is a famous cultural landmark. They also visited Qaitbay Citadel and the beach. Ali met many visitors there and took some photos. He learned a lot of information about Egypt's history. He returned home in the evening. Ali enjoyed his trip very much.

General tests**Test 1****1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

My grandfather is a hardworking farmer who lives in a small village. Every morning, he wakes up early because he has to feed the animals and water the crops. He grows many vegetables like tomatoes and potatoes. He is patient and likes his job so he is a good farmer. He loves his land and believes we must protect nature for the future.

Test 2**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Video games are popular today. Many people play them to relax and have fun with friends online. They can help with studying because they help students improve their problem-solving skills. You should balance your time between playing video games and other activities like exercise and studying. You shouldn't spend too many hours in front of a screen.

Test 3
1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

To get high marks, you must follow a good study plan. First, it is advisable to make a daily timetable. You should study in a quiet place and avoid distractions like your phone. It is essential to take short breaks so your brain can rest. You don't have to study for ten hours; it is better to study for shorter, focused periods. Remember, staying organized is the key to achieving your goals and making your dreams come alive.

Test 4
1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Fatma believes that keeping her body strong is very important. She always chooses healthy food like fresh fruits, vegetables, and fish. She knows she must eat vitamins to stay active. Fatma avoids unhealthy food like sweets and soda because they make her feel tired. It is advisable to drink plenty of water, so she carries a bottle everywhere. Fatma doesn't have to eat expensive meals to be healthy; she just chooses natural ingredients that make her feel strong.

Test 5
1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Choosing the right job is one of the most important decisions in life. To choose the right job think about what you love doing and what you are good at. You should think about your hobbies and skills. For

example, if you like helping people, you might become a doctor. If you enjoy fixing things, engineering could be good for you. It is very important to read about different jobs before deciding. Choosing the right job can make you happy and successful.

Test 6
1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I have three favorite hobbies: reading, swimming, and playing chess. I love reading because it helps me learn new things and makes my imagination come alive. Swimming is also great; it is advisable to swim regularly to stay healthy and strong. Finally, I enjoy playing chess with my friends. Chess is a magnificent game because it teaches you how to think carefully. Having hobbies is the key to a happy and balanced life.

Test 7
1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last week, I read a beautiful story about a boy named Ahmed. While walking home from school, he found a small, hungry kitten in the street. The kitten looked very weak and sad. Ahmed decided to take it home. He gave the kitten some warm milk and a soft bed to sleep in. After a few days, the kitten became strong and happy again. Ahmed and the kitten became best friends. This story taught me that being kind is the key to happiness.

Test 8**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Ahmed goes to the park every day after he finishes his homework. He believes it is important to exercise and breathe fresh air. In the park, he usually plays football with his friends. However, there are some rules he follows: he mustn't pick the flowers or leave any litter on the grass. Ahmed loves the beautiful green trees and the colorful flowers. For him, the park is the best place to relax and play games with friends.

Test 9**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Learning new words is a great way to improve your language skills. To start, it is advisable to read short stories every day. When you see a new word, you should write it down in a special notebook. It is also a good idea to use the word in a sentence so it stays in your memory. You don't have to learn fifty words at once; five words a day is enough. This habit is the key to becoming a great speaker.

Test 10**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

My father is a teacher at a secondary school. He teaches English to young students. Every morning, he wakes up early to prepare his lessons. He is very patient and enjoys helping his students understand difficult words. He believes that education is the key to a bright future. At school, students must wear a uniform.

My father loves his job because he likes to see his students succeed.

Test 11**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Doing sports is very important for a healthy life. It makes our bodies strong and helps our minds stay focused. Many people enjoy football, swimming, or running. To be safe, you must wear the right clothes, like trainers and a tracksuit. You should also drink plenty of water to stay safe and perform well. To stay fit you can walk every day and eat healthy food.

Test 12**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Different jobs have different rules. A bus driver has a very important job; he must follow the traffic laws to keep passengers safe. In a kitchen, a chef is responsible for making delicious meals. He should always keep his kitchen clean, but he doesn't have to grow the vegetables himself. Finally, a mechanic fixes broken cars. He has to use special tools to find out what is wrong with the engine.

Test 13**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Technology has changed the way we learn, making it much easier and more fun. In the past, students only used books, but now we have tablets and computers. We can use the internet to find information about anything in seconds. Educational videos help us understand difficult lessons because they make the subjects come

alive. Also, online classes allow students to study from home. Technology is a magnificent tool that helps us research, share ideas, and improve our skills for the future.

Test 14

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My school day starts early at 7:00 AM. I must wear my school uniform because it is the dress code. I usually go to school by bus. In class, we study many subjects like English and history. It is necessary to listen to the teacher to understand the lessons. At break time, I talk with my friends, but we mustn't run in the corridors. After school, I go home to do my homework. It is a good idea to study every day to get high marks.

Test 15

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Sami, and I am twelve years old. I live in Cairo with my small family. My father is a doctor, and my mother is a kind teacher. I have one younger sister who loves playing with dolls. I go to a big school near my house. My favorite subjects are English and Science because I want to be a scientist one day. I love playing football with my friends during the break.

Al Azhar tests

Al Azhar Test 1

Adel is from Cairo, Egypt. Every evening, after dinner, he likes to read books or listen to music. He enjoys spending his free time quietly at home.

Al Azhar Test 2

Adel lives in a big house with her family. She has her own room, which is very comfortable. There are five people in her family: her father, her mother, two brothers, and herself.

Al Azhar Test 3

Aya's father is a doctor. He works in a hospital every day. Aya must stay at home because she is very young, and her mother is busy with housework.

Al Azhar Test 4

This photo describes a family having a picnic in the park. On the left, we can see a big tree and a basket full of food. The children are playing near the tree, and the parents are sitting on a blanket.

Al Azhar Test 5

The man sells fruits and vegetables in his shop. On the right, we can see a shelf full of apples, oranges, and bananas. There is also a small counter with a cash registe.

Al Azhar Test 6

Aya goes to her piano lessons in the evenings. After finishing her lessons, she feels tired but happy when she gets home. She enjoys practicing music and spending time with her family.

Bit by Bit

كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

English

Key to

2

nd.
Prep.



2nd. Term

2026

إجابات كتاب الصف الثاني الإعدادي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

التوزيع : ١٠ شارع كامل صدقي - الفجالة - القاهرة. ت : 25919165
للاستعلام وإبداء الآراء والاقتراحات - الإدارة : تليفون : 25880102



Units Answers

Unit 7

Lessons 1 & 2



Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. c. safety | 2. c. Raise |
| 3. b. quite | 4. a. at |
| 5. b. rising | |



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. b. hallway | 2. d. Rules |
| 3. a. Sneakers | 4. c. Behavior |
| 5. b. forbidden | 6. b. carelessly |
| 7. b. banned | 8. d. dangerous |
| 9. d. well | 10. b. disrespectful |
| 11. c. -ful | 12. a. -y |
| 13. b. -ive | 14. b. re- |
| 15. c. take | 16. a. care |
| 17. b. pride | 18. c. respectful |
| 19. b. follow | 20. c. corridors |
| 21. a. raise | 22. c. avoid |
| 23. c. dress code | 24. b. return |
| 25. b. greet | 26. b. quiet |

2. Read and complete:

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 1- time | 2- notes |
| 3- interrupt | 4- distractions |



Language

Exercises on Language

1. Rewrite the following using the words:

- Wake up early so you aren't late for school.
- Don't forget your notes on the bus.
- Don't talk when the teacher is explaining.
- Listen carefully to your teacher.
- You should do your homework every day.
- You should eat breakfast before school.
- You should check your timetable every morning.
- Students shouldn't talk loudly during class time.
- You should brush your teeth.
- You should see a doctor.
- You shouldn't eat so much junk food.
- You shouldn't walk alone at night.

- You should be kind to your classmates.
- Go to bed early.
- Don't cross the road here.
- You shouldn't shout in the library.
- You should study for the exam.
- Never be rude to others.
- You should wash your hands before eating.
- You shouldn't forget to do your homework.
- Keep your room tidy.
- You shouldn't waste your time playing games.
- Wear a helmet when you ride your bike.
- Drink plenty of water when it's hot outside.
- Don't feed that wild animal.
- You should look both ways before crossing the street.
- Don't run near the swimming pool.
- You shouldn't watch TV right before bed.
- You should review the answers of the test.
- You shouldn't use your phone during the exam.



General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. b. forbidden | 2. c. well |
| 3. d. -able | 4. b. -ly |
| 5. c. on | 6. b. respectful |
| 7. c. rules | 8. b. step |
| 9. d. dress code | 10. d. environment |
| 11. b. participate | 12. c. interrupt |
| 13. c. productive | |

2. Read and complete:

- | | |
|----------|------------|
| 1- time | 2- code |
| 3- pride | 4- allowed |

3. Rewrite the following using the words:

- You should be quiet in the library.
- Read the instructions before starting the test.
- Don't forget to bring a pen to the exam.
- Keep your password secret.
- Listen to the weather forecast before the trip.
- Don't touch the hot stove.
- You shouldn't interrupt someone when they are speaking.
- Don't be careless.
- You shouldn't skip breakfast.
- You shouldn't swim right after eating a big meal.

4. Complete the following dialogue:

- | | |
|----------|--------------|
| 1- They | 2- timetable |
| 3- break | 4- student |

Lesson 3



Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1 c. effective | 2 c. careful |
| 3 d. c&d | 4 b. on |
| 5 c. has | |



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1 c. period | 2 b. Effectively |
| 3 c. organize | 4 b. prepare |
| 5 c. Smoothly | 6 b. inefficiently |
| 7 b. messy | 8 a. foolishly |
| 9 d. successfully | 10 c. ordinary |
| 11 b. -ity | 12 c. -ment |
| 13 c. -ly | 14 c. -ity |
| 15 b. smoothly | 16 b. organized |
| 17 b. self-control | 18 c. timetable |
| 19 b. subjects | 20 b. lab book |
| 21 b. responsibility | 22 b. events |
| 23 a. Sports Day | 24 c. Science Fair |
| 25 c. organize | 26 b. manage |
| 27 b. effectively | 28 . period |

2. Read and complete:

- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 1- timetable | 2- self - control |
| 3- smoothly | 4- review |

Lessons 5 & 6



Check on Lang. Notes

A- Complete the following dialogue:

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1 b. bored | 2 b. everyday |
| 3 d. interested | 4 c. confused |



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|---------------|--------------------|
| 1 c. lazy | 2 b. puzzled |
| 3 c. flexible | 4 a. right |
| 5 c. -ly | 6 c. -ful |
| 7 a. -ed | 8 c. principal |
| 9 b. confused | 10 c. morning line |
| 11 b. uniform | 12 c. daily |
| 13 a. P.E. | 14 a. helpful |
| 15 b. fun | 16 c. service |
| 17 d. floor | 18 c. gym |

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 19. c. patient | 20. b. friendly |
| 21. c. drama club | 22. c. attend |
| 23. c. about | 24. a. By |

2. Read and complete:

- | | |
|--------------|----------|
| 1- principal | 2- line |
| 3- attend | 4- learn |

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1. Choose the correct answer:

- c. A teacher
- b. In a house on a farm
- Mazen has got two brothers and two sisters.
- They teach their children to love our country, Egypt.
- She works in a primary school in our village.

2. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1 c. gym | 2 b. manage |
| 3 d. present | 4 b. learn |
| 5 b. notice | 6 b. principal |
| 7 b. makes sense | 8 a. opinion |
| 9 b. confused | 10 b. morning line |
| 11 b. bit | 12 b. write down |
| 13 c. with | |

3. Read and complete:

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1- discuss | 2- Maybe |
| 3- present | 4- notice |

4. Finish the following dialog:

- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| 1- revise | 2- maybe |
| 3- notice | 4- lessons |



Al Azhar Test

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

- He keeps some animals and birds.
- It starts at eight o'clock in the morning.

2. Complete the sentences:

- Where are you going?
- Why are you going to the hospital?
- He is ill.

3. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1 b. forbidden | 2 b. secure |
| 3 b. Don't | 4 c. write |

4. Find the mistakes in the following:

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1-few- little | 2- Doesn't- Don't |
|---------------|-------------------|

3- been- be

4- Listening - Listen

5. Read the following text then answer the questions:

A. Answer the following questions:

1- It widens our mind.

2- We can read a book in the shade of a tree in a garden or a field.

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

3. c. Many

4. c. reading



Test on Unit (7)

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. b. An organized timetable

2. b. Review your subjects

3. A good student uses a brush for their art class and wears a coat in the lab.

4. You must keep your lab book for science class clean.

5- I should prepare my work smoothly.

2. Choose the correct answer:

1. d. Rules

2. d. false

3. a. good point

4. b. -ity

3. Read and complete:

1- duties

2- review

3- confused

4- manage

4. Read the following text then answer the questions:

answer the questions:

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. b. prep school

2. d. 6

B. Answer the following questions:

3. As he has good teachers.

4. He can practice drawing, reading , playing music and playing football.

5. It refers to "school".



Story

5. A. Write True (T) or False (F):

1- (T)

2- (F)

3- (T)

4- (T)

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Baloo the bear and Bagheera the black panther supported Mother Wolf.

6. Because it was unusual to find a human child in a wolves' cave.

6. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. Save some money for the journey.

2. Good students shouldn't waste their time.

3. You should help your parents at home.

4. You shouldn't take photos here.

7. Complete the following dialogue:

1- come

2- stay

3- visit

4- stay

Unit

8

Lessons 1 & 2



Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

1. b. experts

2. a. research

3. b. making



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. c. Shy

2. d. combine

3. b. Concentration

4. d. Experts

5. a. Focus

6. d. Unknown

7. d. successful

8. b. confident

9. c. stupid

10. c. enjoyable

11. b. -ion

12. b. -ment

13. c. -ive

14. a. -able

15. a. mental

16. c. shy

17. c. participate

18. b. combine

19. b. experts

20. c. with

21. b. research

22. b. interactive

23. c. develop

24. b. support

25. b. in

2. Read and complete:

1- handle

2- motivate

3- balance

4- goals



Language

Exercises on Language

1. Rewrite the following using the words:

1. Educational games are effective but they cost a lot of money.

2. Students enjoy interactive lessons. However, some prefer traditional methods.

3. While technology helps learning, it can't replace good teachers.

4. Fun games take more time to prepare but teachers see better results.

5. Games improve memory. However, not all games are educational.

6. While stories make learning fun, some students prefer facts and numbers.

7. Technology engages students but schools need proper equipment.
8. Fun methods work well but they require teacher training.
9. Many schools want to buy new technology. However, sometimes it is difficult.
10. She worked very hard. However, she didn't pass the exam.
11. While games are motivating, students still need to practice basic skills through traditional methods.
12. I wanted to go out. However, I had a lot of homework.
13. While interactive apps encourage participation, some students like quiet work.
14. Fun lessons keep students active but they need careful planning.
15. Celin is shy. However, she answered the question.
16. Hany tried to concentrate but the noise was too loud.
17. Many children enjoy online games. However, some games are not educational.
18. While some methods are old, they are still very effective.
19. The lesson was difficult but the teacher explained it clearly.
20. While the internet is useful, it can also be a distraction.
21. He is a quiet student. However, he participates actively online.
22. I called him several times but he didn't answer his phone.
23. The hotel was cheap but it was clean and comfortable.
24. The book was short. However, it has a lot of useful information.
25. While my brother loves action games, I prefer quiet puzzles.
26. The food was delicious but the service was very slow.

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. b. effective | 2. d. concentration |
| 3. a. Mental | 4. a. participate |
| 5. c. -al | 6. c. noisy |
| 7. d. learn | 8. a. on |
| 9. c. traditional | 10. a. clever |

2. Read and complete:

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1- enjoyable | 2- encourage |
| 3- motivate | 4- needs |

3. Rewrite the following sentences

1. While she studied a lot, she didn't get a high score.
2. My sister loves classical music but I prefer modern music.
3. Selim woke up early but he missed the bus.
4. The weather was cold. However, We went swimming.
5. While traditional classrooms are common, online learning is growing fast.
6. The game was difficult, but she finished it quickly.
7. The phone is old. However, it still works well.
8. While some students learn best by reading, others need to practice.

4. Complete the following dialog:

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1- learning | 2- methods |
| 3- students | 4- help |

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. d. empathize | 2. c. interactive |
| 3. b. Anxious | 4. a. imagine |
| 5. d. Effective | 6. a. boring |
| 7. c. Distrust | 8. c. meaningless |
| 9. a. worried | 10. c. -ent |
| 11. b. -ful | 12. c. adverb |
| 13. d. memorize | 14. a. interactive |
| 15. c. anxious | 16. d. meaningful |
| 17. b. imagine | 18. a. knowledge |
| 19. c. values | 20. c. into |
| 21. d. communication | |

2. Read and complete:

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1- anxious | 2- methods |
| 3- confidence | 4- smart learning |

General Exercises on Lesson 3

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. b. memorize
2. a. confidence
3. Singing and stories make learning fun and meaningful.
4. Students feel relaxed and enjoy participating in activities.
5. Shy students.

2. Choose the correct answer:

1. c. meaningful 2. b. traditional
3. b. -ive 4. c. empathize
5. a. towards

3. Read and complete:

- 1- traditional 2- explore
- 3- build 4- atmosphere

4. Read the following text then answer the questions:

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a. building confidence
2. b. important

B. Answer the following questions:

3. She told him about interactive apps for language learning.
- 4- Ramy's teacher.
- 5- Yes, I do. Because they help students build confidence.

Lessons 5 & 6



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. c. known 2. b. distract
3. b. try hard 4. a. forget
5. d. noisy 6. a. -ment
7. c. un- 8. a. -ize
9. c. re- 10. a. -able
11. d. flashcards 12. b. definitions
13. c. diagram 14. c. set
15. b. for

2. Read and complete:

- 1- achievable- 2- concentrate
- 3- struggles 4- visual

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. c. concentrate 2. a. noun
3. c. advice 4. c. Regular breaks
5. c. with

2. Read and complete:

- 1- make 2- boring
- 3- feedback 4- prepare

3. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1- flashcards 2- method
- 3- What 4- advice



Al Azhar Test

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Visual learning helps him understand faster.
2. He draws diagrams for long processes.

2. Complete the sentences:

- 1- useful.
- 2- Do they encourage students to participate?
- 3- sometimes distract students.

3. Choose the correct answer:

1. b. animations 2. c. replace
3. b. While 4. d. However

4. Find the mistakes in the following:

- 1- while- but 2- While- However
- 3- so- but 4- However- While

5. Read the following text then answer the questions:

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- As she moved to a new country and she struggled with the new language.
- 2- They played games to practice pronunciation and learned simple phrases through songs.

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. c. safe 4. a. fear



Test on Unit (8)

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. b. shy
2. b. interactive apps and learning games
- 3- His teacher.
- 4- Digital learning makes learning easy and enjoyable.
- 5- He feels confident.

2. Choose the correct answer:

1. b. empathize 2. b. mental
3. b. worried 4. c. -able

3. Read and complete:

- 1- diagram 2- struggle
- 3- memorize 4- concentrate

4. Read the following text then answer the questions:

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

1. b. modern education styles
2. c. students

B. Answer the following questions:

- 3- Involving active participation and communication
- 4- To make the information meaningful.
- 5- Yes, I agree. Because these tools turn a boring lesson into an exciting one.



Story

5. A. Write True (T) or False (F):

- 1- (T) 2- (F)
- 3- (T) 4- (F)

B. Answer the following questions:

- 5- Kaa, the giant python helped Baloo and Bagheera save Mowgli.
- 6- Because they taught him lessons and cared for.

6. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. She was ill but she went to school.
2. While action games are fast, puzzle games need concentration.
3. Hossam is very confident. However, he needs to practice more.
4. Research is difficult but it is effective for our development.

7. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1- advice 2- idea
- 3- way 4- don't

Unit

9

Lessons 1 & 2



Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

1. c. includes 2. b. during
3. d. doing



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. b. Responsibilities 2. c. Qualifications
3. b. career 4. a. Communication
5. b. relaxing 6. d. aware
7. b. boring 8. a. risky
9. c. -ful 10. c. adjective
11. d. a&b 12. a. en
13. b. profile 14. b. involves
15. d. communication
16. b. tiring 17. b. qualifications

18. b. mindful 19. c. exciting
20. b. on 21. a. up
22. c. broke 23. a. include
24. d. on 25. b. get

2. Read and complete:

- 1- communication 2- tiring
- 3- mindful 4- qualifications



Language

Exercises on Language

1. Rewrite the following using the words:

1. He was ill so he didn't come to school .
2. I went to bed early since I was tired. .
3. It rained; therefore, the streets were wet.
4. She passed the exam because she studied hard.
5. It was raining; as a result, we stayed at home.
6. The customer was happy because the mechanic fixed the car quickly.
7. The doctor was busy,so the nurse helped the patients.
8. He woke up late so he missed the bus.
9. She smiled all day because she was happy.
10. It was raining; therefore, they didn't play the match.
11. I asked the teacher since I didn't understand the lesson.
12. It was a holiday as a result the shop was closed.
13. He went to sleep early because he was very tired.
14. She was ill so she didn't study well.
15. We arrived late since the road was blocked.
16. The plane couldn't take off because the weather was very stormy.
17. She won the competition since she practiced every day.
18. I couldn't pay for the meal as I forgot my wallet.
19. The bridge was old. Therefore, it was closed for repairs. .



General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. c. tiring 2. b. helpful
3. b. age and name 4. b. en-
5. b. share 6. c. safe
7. a. employer 8. b. make easier

9. c. solve 10. c. full of people
11. c. mindful 12. c. confusing
13. b. during

2. Read and complete:

- 1- communication 2- qualifications
3- facilitate 4- useful

3. Rewrite the following sentences

1. He was ill so he didn't come to school.
2. He answered the questions correctly he got high marks.
3. I wore a coat since I felt cold.
4. I worked a lot therefore I was tired.
5. He didn't have the right qualifications. As a result, he didn't get the job.
6. It was a very tiring day so I went to bed early.
7. The internet was down. Therefore, I couldn't finish my task.

4. Complete the following dialog:

- 1- journalist 2- countries
3- boring 4- safe

Lesson 3



Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

1. a. effect 2. b. discovered
3. a. others



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a. Interests | 2. c. Motivation |
| 3. c. Stress | 4. c. Satisfaction |
| 5. a. satisfaction | 6. c. false |
| 7. b. ordinary | 8. a. encouragement |
| 9. b. -ly | 10. c. -ness |
| 11. b. -ive | 12. d. dis- |
| 13. b. affects | 14. b. on |
| 15. b. to | 16. b. help |
| 17. b. making | 18. c. reading |
| 19. b. motivation | 20. b. interests |
| 21. b. opportunities | 22. b. stress |
| 23. b. disappointment | |

2. Read and complete:

- 1- motivation 2- stress
3- disappointment 4- opportunities

3. Complete the following dialog:

- 1- idea 2- problems
3- Why 4- If

Lessons 5 & 6



General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. a. responsible | 2. c. -ful |
| 3. a. creative | 4. b. -ible |
| 5. b. determined | 6. b. useless |
| 7. a. good | 8. a. rewarding |
| 9. a. in | 10. c. -ing |
| 11. a. failing | 12. d. environmental |
| 13. b. determined | 14. a. values |

2. Read and complete:

- 1- responsible 2- challenging
3- rewarding 4- skilled

3. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1- Look 2- scientist
3- secretary 4- skills



Al Azhar Test

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1- He would like to work as a teacher.
2- Because he enjoys helping others learn.

2. Complete the sentences:

- 1- Yes, I do.
2- How many lessons do you have every day?
3- At 2 o'clock.

3. Choose the correct answer:

1. b. rewarding 2. a. career
3. b. since 4. a. so

4. Find the mistakes in the following:

- 1- because-so 2- But-Although
3- so-because 4- so-but

5. Read the following text then answer the questions:

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- Doctors are important because they look after people.
2- They work in hospitals.

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. c. dislike 4. a. doctors



Test on Unit (9)

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. c. important
2. b. responsibilities and qualifications
- 3- First, you should think about your interests and what you enjoy doing.
- 4- To choose the right career.
- 5- Reading job profiles can help you understand the responsibilities and qualifications needed for each job.

2. Choose the correct answer:

1. b. responsibilities 2. b. career
3. c. determined 4. d. -ing

3. Read and complete:

- 1- ambitious 2- responsible
- 3- creative 4- rewarding

4. Read the following text then

answer the questions:

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

1. b. The importance of job profiles
2. b. job

B. Answer the following questions:

- 3- A mechanical engineer's profile focuses on solving technical problems, testing machines, and ensuring safety in factories.
- 4- A job profile.
- 5- Understanding job profiles helps young people choose careers that match their interests and future goals..



Story

5. A. Write True (T) or False (F):

- 1- (T) 2- (F)
- 3- (T) 4- (F)

B. Answer the following questions:

- 5- Shere Khan hated Mowgli. Because he didn't want a human in the jungle.
- 6- He realized that many wolves no longer saw him as one of their own.

6. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. He arrived late because the traffic was heavy.
2. The streets were crowded, as a result we stayed at home.
3. She was tired so she didn't feel well .
4. He improved his skills he trained hard..

7. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1- dream 2- programmer
- 3- Why 4- solving

Review

3



Lesson 1

1. Listen to the audio, then choose the correct answer.

- 1- dream 2- programmer

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1- School is hard.
- 2- No, I don't have a plan.
- 3- I like classes that are fun.
- 4- What do you do after school?

3. Read and complete:

- 1- uniform 2- wild
- 3- anxious 4- manage
- 5- combine

4. Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Healthy habits keep our body and mind strong. First, eat good food like fruits, vegetables, and whole grains. Drink lots of water every day. Move your body. Walk, run, or play a sport. Sleep well at night. Get eight hours of sleep. Do not smoke. Do not eat too much sugar or junk food. Wash your hands often to stop germs. Spend time outside in the sunlight. Sit and stand straight. Listen to your body. Rest when you are tired. Be with friends and family. Think good thoughts. Take deep breaths to feel calm. Small habits make a big difference. You will feel happy and full of energy.



Lesson 2

1. Read the following text then

answer the questions:

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

1. d. building 2. c. teamwork
3. b. enjoy

B. Answer the following questions:

- 4- Because many jobs use computers and machines.
- 5- Learning new skills can help you get better jobs and enjoy your work more.

2. Choose the correct answer:

1. b. experiment 2. d. mental
3. c. meaningful 4. b. memorize
5. a. qualifications 6. b. but
7. a. although 8. b. shouldn't
9. a. Washing 10. b. so

3. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. I don't like pasta although I like pizza.
2. You should study for the exam.
3. I was late for school because I missed the bus.

Story

4. A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- Mother Wolf insisted Mowgli stay with the pack because she loved him. She said he was her own cub and would not harm the pack.
- 2- They tracked the Bandar-log. They asked the Kaa for help. Together, they attacked the monkeys and rescued Mowgli.
- 3- Mowgli learned that true friends are loyal. They protect you like family. The jungle has rules, and friends help each other follow them. Your pack is your strength.

B. Answer the following questions:

1. a. run away 2. b. train
3. d. drive back

5. Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Here are good tips to study better. First, find a quiet place. Turn off your phone. Make a plan. Write a list or use a calendar. Do a little work every day. Do not wait until the last day. Break big tasks into small parts. Read your notes again after class. Say the information out loud. Teach the lesson to a friend. This helps you remember. Test yourself with questions. Get enough sleep before a test. Eat a good meal. Take short breaks when you study. Stand up and walk around. Believe in yourself. Stay calm. Good study habits make learning easier. Keep trying.

Unit 10

Lessons 1 & 2



Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

1. b. experience 2. b. lost
3. b. a



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. b. Courage 2. c. decade
3. a. precious 4. b. Gratitude
5. c. Promise 6. c. folktale
7. c. valuable 8. a. bravery
9. c. simple 10. d. familiar
11. a. cautious 12. d. loudly
13. c. -ly 14. b. -ness
15. c. -ity 16. d. -ion
17. d. -en 18. b. treasures
19. c. precious 20. b. courage
21. c. generations 22. b. gratitude
23. b. wooden 24. a. kindness
25. c. memories

2. Read and complete:

- 1- generations 2- treasure
- 3- gratitude 4- courage



Language

Exercises on Language

1. Rewrite the following using the words:

1. He went to bed after He had finished his work.
2. She passed the test because she had studied hard.
3. The movie had started by the time I reached the cinema.
4. He had arrived home before he had a shower.
5. She left the house after she had locked the door.
6. He was tired because he had worked all day.
7. The train had left by the time we arrived at the station.
8. They had finished the exam before they left the room.
9. I had eaten lunch before I slept.

10. She passed the exam after she had studied hard.
11. The lesson had started before we arrived at school.
12. He went out because he had finished his homework.
13. They had missed the bus so they were late.
14. She went to bed after she had brushed her teeth.
15. I got to the cinema after the film had begun.
16. He had saved the file before he turned off the computer.

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. c. memories | 2. c. fear |
| 3. b. decade | 4. b. fade |
| 5. c. folktales | 6. b. gratitude |
| 7. c. simple | 8. d. loudly |
| 9. c. -ly | 10. c. -ness |
| 11. b. -ion | 12. b. wooden |
| 13. c. generation | 14. c. cautious |
| 15. b. valuable | |

2. Read and complete:

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1- folktales | 2- generations |
| 3- faded | 4- treasure |

3. Rewrite the following sentences

1. After he had studied well, he did the homework.
2. He had written the letter before he sent it.
3. He had finished his work by the time he met Ali.
4. She passed the exam because she had studied hard.

4. Complete the following dialog:

- | | |
|------------|----------------|
| 1- stories | 2- useful |
| 3- values. | 4- interesting |

Lesson 3



Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. b. reward | 2. a. tell |
| 3. c. magical | 4. a. magic |



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. cruel | 2. a. happy |
| 3. c. ugly | 4. b. wonderful |
| 5. a. kind | 6. b. delight |
| 7. b. -ly | 8. a. -ce |
| 9. a. -ive | 10. a. un |
| 11. a. do | 12. c. dream |
| 13. a. do | 14. a. away |
| 15. a. search | 16. a. cruel |
| 17. c. servant | 18. d. fairy |
| 19. a. party | 20. a. midnight |
| 21. a. cruel | 22. c. servant |
| 23. d. fairy | 24. a. party |
| 25. a. midnight | |

2. Read and complete:

- | | |
|----------|---------------|
| 1- death | 2- stepmother |
| 3- task | 4- beloved |

3. Complete the following dialog:

- | | |
|----------|------------|
| 1- worry | 2- benefit |
| 3- good | 4- improve |

Lessons 5 & 6

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. amazing | 2. c. happiness |
| 3. a. optimistic | 4. c. nervous |
| 5. a. anxious | 6. c. hopeless |
| 7. c. dis- | 8. d. -ous |
| 9. a. -ly | 10. a. -ful |
| 11. b. -ing | 12. a. success |
| 13. a. talent | 14. a. show |
| 15. a. clap | 16. a. partner |
| 17. a. lion | 18. b. mouse |
| 19. c. choice | 20. a. sailor |
| 21. a. dangers | 22. a. express |
| 23. a. summarize | |

2. Read and complete:

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1- dangers - | 2- face |
| 3- success | 4- details |

5. Read the following text then answer the questions:

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- b. very bright and attractive
- 2- c. Her kind fairy

B. Answer the following:

- 3- kindness is rewarded in the end.
- 4- She works as a servant, completing every task in the house.
- 5- Because he admires her kindness and beauty. He wanted to marry her.



Al Azhar Test

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1- Minya is near the Nile.
- 2- It is famous for its black honey and the ancient monuments.

2. Complete the sentences:

- 1- Yes, I did.
- 2- When did you go there?
- 3- Yes, It was fantastic.

3. Choose the correct answer:

1. c. precious 2. b. wooden
3. c. Before 4. d. had got

4. Find the mistakes in the following:

- 1- before- after 2- After- Before
- 3- so- because 4- sleep - slept

5. Read the following text then answer the questions:

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- Recycling rubbish
- 2- Yes, I think they can..

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

3. b. rubbish 4. d. students



Test on Unit (10)

1. A. Choose the correct answer:

- 1- c. Her stepmother treats her badly
- 2- c. Her fairy

B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

- 3- After her father's death, she works as a servant in her own home.
- 4- The king holds a royal party for the prince to choose a bride.
- 5- The prince loves her kindness and marries her.

2. Choose the correct answer:

1. b. courage 2. b. bored
3. c. -ly 4. b. quite.

3. Read and complete:

- 1- patience 2- death
- 3- dazzling 4- bride

4. Read the following text then

answer the questions:

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

1. c. old
2. d. connected to her family
- B. Answer the following questions:
- 3- An old letter connects generations and makes one feel part of a larger story.
- 4- She found an old letter.
- 5- the letter.



Story

5. A. Write True (T) or False (F):

- 1- (T) 2- (F)
- 3- (F) 4- (T)

B. Answer the following questions:

- 5- This victory over Shere Khan marked the end of his childhood.
- 6- The lesson is that balance between humanity and nature creates strength, peace, and true belonging.

6. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. He had read the story before he summarized it.
2. Because he had been ill, he didn't go to school.
3. He ate his lunch after he had washed his hands.
4. By the time he came home ,he had phoned his wife.

7. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1- Yes, 2- adventure
- 3- Me 4- agree

Unit

11

Lessons 1 & 2



Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

1. b. much 2. d. much
3. b. Despite 4. d. Although
5. d. while



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. a. adapt | 2. c. Tribes |
| 3. b. irrigation | 4. d. conserve |
| 5. c. Grazing | 6. a. Nomadic |
| 7. b. synonyms | 8. d. violent |
| 9. d. synonyms | 10. c. unknown |
| 11. b. antonyms | 12. d. protection |
| 13. c. -ion | 14. b. al |
| 15. a. ty | 16. a. challenge |
| 17. c. power | 18. b. landscapes |
| 19. d. extreme | 20. c. Sahara |
| 21. a. shade | 22. d. shelter |
| 23. b. branches | 24. a. gather |
| 25. d. equally | 26. c. get lost |
| 27. a. signal | |



Language

Exercises on Language

1. Rewrite the following using the words:

- While I was watching TV , my mother came home.
- When it started to rain, they were playing football.
- While Seleem was chatting with Yahia , the light went out.
- When I saw Rodyna , she was going to school.
- My father started work in the bank 10 years ago.
- When my father arrived home, we were having lunch. .
- My uncle started his job as a teacher 25 years ago.
- While I was sleeping, the cat jumped on the bed.
- The students were talking when the teacher walked into the classroom.
- I visited London in 2024.
- I was watching the movie at 8:00 last night.
- It started to snow as Ali was fixing his bike.
- It began to rain heavily while we were watching the match.
- I finished the book two days ago.
- When he fell off the ladder, he was painting the wall.
- He was playing football when he broke the window.
- I saw an accident while I was walking home.

- At 10 p.m. last night, we were watching a movie.
- He had an accident while he was driving to the farm.
- I was getting out of the bus when I slipped.
- Her mother came in while she was listening to music.
- The lights went out during the meeting.
- It started to snow while we were waiting for the bus.
- At 8 pm last night, she was studying English.
- When did you last meet your friend Ali ?
- He was walking in the city he saw a famous actor.



General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. communities | 2. b. tents |
| 3. a. irrigation | 4. b. sandstorm |
| 5. d. dunes | 6. c. crops |
| 7. b. temperature | 8. c. regions |
| 9. a. tribes | 10. a. towns |

2. Read and complete:

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1- alone | 2- problem |
| 3- remembered | 4- returned |

3. Rewrite the following sentences

- The bride fainted while they were having a party.
- She was making salad when she cut her finger.
- I met my old friend while I was walking to school.
- We were watching TV when the lights went out.
- She saw a car accident while she was crossing the street.
- During work, the manager called him.
- When it started to rain, I was waiting for the bus.
- Just as I was riding my bike, a bird flew in front of me.
- Our teacher entered the classroom during our talk.
- While he was cooking pasta , he dropped the plate.
- During the shower, I heard a loud noise.
- When she found an old letter, she was cleaning her room.
- During work in the garden, a bird landed on my head.

14. While the baby was sleeping, the doorbell rang.
15. My mom called me for dinner while I was doing my homework..

4. Finish the following dialog:

- 1- adventure 2- enjoy
3- Who 4- family

Lesson 3



Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

1. b. another 2. c. other
3. c. others 4. b. thick



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer:

1. b. adaptations 2. a. unique
3. a. balance 4. b. amazing
5. d. harsh 6. b. special
7. b. tough 8. b. thin
9. a. common 10. d. unimaginative
11. a. -ation 12. c. -ive
13. b. -ness 14. b. amazing
15. c. adaptations 16. a. unique
17. d. harsh 18. a. balance
19. a. roots 20. c. empty
21. a. survive 22. d. waxy
23. b. behavior 24. a. release
25. c. insects 26. b. ecosystem

Lessons 5 & 6



Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

1. b. near 2. b. lonely
3. b. may be 4. c. missed
5. b. coming



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer:

1. c. amazing 2. a. useful
3. d. ignore 4. b. noisy
5. a. benefits 6. c. ion
7. a. ful 8. d. ment
9. b. ing 10. b. desert
11. d. City life 12. a. advantages
13. c. traffic 14. d. pollution
15. b. lonely 16. a. entertainment

17. d. options 18. c. incredible
19. a. practical 20. b. opportunity
21. c. supplies 22. a. comfort
23. b. challenging 24. d. camping
25. a. consider 26. c. resident
27. b. missed

2. Read and complete:

- 1- activity 2- advantage
3- entertainment 4- traffic



General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1. Complete the following dialog:

- 1- shade 2- What
3- beautiful 4- quiet

2. Read and complete:

- 1- hot 2- survive
3- stores 4- desert

3. Choose the correct answer:

1. c. freezing 2. a. windy
3. d. dusty 4. b. oasis
5. a. peaceful 6. c. sunrise
7. b. sunset 8. d. vary
9. c. noisy 10. a. diary



Al Azhar Test

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1- He is from Giza.
2- He likes watching T.V.

2. Complete the sentences:

- 1- What are desert animals?
2- They adapt to these extreme conditions.
3- Yes, they do.

3. Choose the correct answer:

- 1- adjective -d. -ful
2- b. attractive / lovely
3- b. was talking
4- b. came

4. Find the mistakes in the following:

- 1- so- because 2- While- During
3- had- have 4- call- called

5. Read the following text then answer the questions:

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

1. a. The Reading Challenge
2. b. famous inventors and explorers
- B. Answer the following questions:**
- 3- Because they preferred playing games after school, while Omar spent most of his time reading.
- 4- The goal was for students to read five books in one month and write short summaries about them.



Test on Unit (11)

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. a. 1994 2. b. had
3. He lost his leg.
4. He travelled to America .
5. Now, he is an important businessman.

2. Choose the correct answer:

1. a. synonyms 2. a. soil
3. c. oasis 4. a. towns

3. Read and complete:

- 1- trading 2- Treasury
- 3- special 4- world

4. Read the following text then answer the questions:

answer the questions:

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

1. b. AI is changing life and helping people
2. b. AI

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Some people worry that depending too much on AI might make humans less creative, and others fear machines could replace jobs in the future.
4. AI helps students by powering apps that check their homework or help them learn new skills.
5. Young people should understand AI because it will play a big role in the jobs of tomorrow.



Story

5. A. Write True (T) or False (F):

- 1- (F) 2- (T)
- 3- (T) 4- (F)

B. Answer the following questions:

- 5- The people gave him food, clothing, and a place to stay.
- 6-.

6. Rewrite the following sentences:

1. Hamdy was playing rugby yesterday afternoon.
- 2- They weren't playing tennis in the morning.
- 3- She didn't study hard.
- 4- He fell down while the party was going on.

7. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1- water 2- What
- 3- Do 4- bodies

Unit 12

Lessons 1 & 2



Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

1. b. desert 2. b. a little
3. c. discover 4. c. Astronauts
5. b. breathe



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. a. incredible 2. b. landscape
3. a. rainforest 4. a. gravity
5. a. Radiation 6. b. weak
7. c. profound 8. b. common
9. a. dangerous 10. d. artificial
11. c. strange 12. b. fearful
13. a. -ity 14. b. un-
15. c. -ous 16. c. -er
17. b. adjective 18. d. Explorers
19. a. mountains 20. c. planet
21. a. Mount 22. b. rainforest
23. a. gravity 24. a. radiation
25. a. of 26. d. around
27. a. other 28. a. face
29. a. such as



Language

Exercises on Language

1. Rewrite the following using the words:

1. Millions of tourists have already visited the Grand Canyon.
2. I have never seen the pyramids at night.
3. Hani has not watched a nice movie.
4. My friends have seen this movie.
5. I haven't studied for the exam yet.
6. Shahenda has already written three stories

this month.

7. We have just cleaned the classroom.
8. They have lived in Alexandria since 2016.
9. Anas has not ridden a horse.
10. Nada has already come to the party.
11. I haven't had my lunch yet.
12. The teacher has just explained the lesson.
13. I have learned English since 2017.
14. Samira has worked as a teacher since 2014.
15. The train has just reached the station.
16. They have lived in Cairo since 2019.
17. Fatma has just phoned us.
18. Marwa has already watched that film on TV this evening.
19. We haven't visited the museum for 26 years.
20. We haven't visited the Pyramids since 2018.

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. b. planet | 2. a. amazed |
| 3. a. Incredible | 4. b. incredible |
| 5. b. breathtaking | 6. c. -ful |
| 7. a. obvious | 8. b. breathe |
| 9. b. protect | 10. c. -tion |

2. Read and complete:

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 1- natural | 2- produces |
| 3- holds | 4- radiation |

3. Rewrite the following sentences

- 1- I have not/haven't written my report.
- 2- He has already finished his homework.
- 3- Yara hasn't visited the museum yet.
- 4- They haven't traveled to Alex for two years.
- 5- We have just finished lunch.

4. Complete the following dialog:

- | | |
|-------------|---------|
| 1- watched | 2- What |
| 3- produces | 4- Did |

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. a. Extreme | 2. b. Species |
| 3. a. Recycling | 4. d. endangered |
| 5. a. synonyms | 6. b. antonyms |
| 7. d. antonyms | 8. b. solutions |
| 9. c. severe | 10. a. Negative |

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 11. b. -ion | 12. d. again |
| 13. b. un- | 14. c. adjective |
| 15. b. -ly | 16. b. forest |
| 17. c. protect | 18. b. solar |
| 19. b. endangered | 20. a. drought |
| 21. b. extreme | 22. b. species |
| 23. a. Temperatures | 24. c. achieve |
| 25. a. protect | 26. b. wisely |
| 27. a. made | 28. b. on |
| 29. c. serious | |

2. Read and complete:

- | | |
|-------------------|----------|
| 1- climate change | 2- take |
| 3- solar | 4- solve |

3. Read the following text then answer the questions:

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. scared | 2. c. carefully |
|--------------|-----------------|

A. Answer the following questions:

- 3- Protecting the environment.
- 4- It refers to the farmers
- 5- They promised to act wisely to prevent future floods.

Lessons 5 & 6



Check on Lang. Notes

- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|------------------|-----------|
| 1. a. instead of | 2. c. ill |
|------------------|-----------|



Vocabulary

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. c. normal | 2. a. Increase |
| 3. b. turn on | 4. a. similarity |
| 5. b. give | 6. c. -ence |
| 7. d. re- | 8. d. -tion |
| 9. a. facing | 10. b. tell |
| 11. c. suffering from | 12. a. take action |
| 13. d. of | 14. b. pollution |
| 15. b. needed | 16. a. oxygen |
| 17. d. environment | 18. c. affect |
| 19. b. climate change | 20. c. protect |
| 21. d. energy | 22. a. save |
| 23. c. reduce | 24. a. generations |
| 25. d. provide | 26. d. balance |

2. Read and complete:

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1- recycle | 2- reduce |
| 3- conserve | 4- save |

 General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. harm | 2. c. Recycling |
| 3. b. take away | 4. c. -al |
| 5. b. save | |

2. Read and complete:

- | | |
|-----------|----------------|
| 1- affect | 2- from |
| 3- reuse | 4- generations |

3. Complete the following dialog:

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 1- plants | 2- What |
| 3- Are | 4- clean |



Al Azhar Test

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1- Eating healthy food and exercising regularly is good for our health.
- 2- Exercise makes our heart strong and healthy.

2. Complete the sentences:

- | | |
|------------|--------|
| 1- cutting | 2- Why |
| 3- recycle | |

3. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1. a. generations | 2. b. discovered |
| 3. c. have finished | 4. b. visited |

4. Find the mistakes in the following:

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1-wrote- written | 2-clean- cleaned |
| 3-not have- haven't | 4-saw- seen |

5. Read the following text then answer the questions:

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- Yes, I think it is a good idea. Because you can exchange information with them.
- 2- She said it is a large city, with beautiful nature reserves nearby..

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. d. El Fayoum | 2. b. friends |
|-----------------|---------------|



Test on Unit (12)

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. b. colorful festivals
2. d. swim and relax
- 3- Its colorful festivals and delicious food.
- 4- Because they love to swim, relax, and take pictures there.
- 5- They are located on the same continent, making it easy to travel between them. .

2. Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. a. rainforest | 2. a. again |
| 3. a. landscapes | 4. d. courageous |

3. Read and complete:

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1- home | 2- lungs |
| 3- gravity | 4- unique |

4. Read the following text then

answer the questions:

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

1. c. wanted the old man's finger
 2. b. the piece of gold
- B. Answer the following questions:**
- 3- Some people are never satisfied.
 - 4- It means " happy".
 - 5- It shows that he is greedy.



Story

5. A. Write True (T) or False (F):

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 1- (F) | 2- (T) |
| 3- (T) | 4- (T) |

B. Answer the following questions:

- 5- Mowgli kept his connection with the jungle by returning often to visit Baloo, Bagheera, and his wolf brothers, and by defending the jungle against hunters who killed needlessly.
- 6- He defended the jungle against hunters who killed needlessly, and he defended the villagers against wild animals when necessary.

6. Rewrite the following sentences:

- 1- She has lived in Cairo since 2020.
- 2- We haven't learned about solar energy yet.
- 3- I have not visited Luxor.
- 4- Have you read this book?.

7. Complete the following dialogue:

- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| 1- save | 2- throwing |
| 3- great. | |
| 4- What | |

Review

4



Lesson 1

1. Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a. planting
- 2- b. pollution

- 3- We can protect the Earth by recycling and by walking or cycling instead of driving.
- 4- It is important because when we all work together, our small actions combine to make a big difference, helping to make the planet cleaner and healthier for future generations.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1- And the characters are great too!
- 2- They also teach us good lessons.
- 3- What's your favorite fairy tale?
- 4- Do you think fairy tales will always be popular?

3. Read and complete:

- 1- harsh 2- radiation
- 3- precious 4- slippers
- 5- irrigation

4. Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Healthy habits help us feel good and live better. Start by eating healthy food like fruit and vegetables. Drink lots of water and try to sleep well every night. Exercise is important too, like walking or playing outside. It is also good to wash your hands and brush your teeth every day. Try to spend less time on screens and more time with family or friends. These small actions can give you more energy and keep you strong. If you make these habits part of your daily life, you will be healthier and happier for a long time.

Lesson 2

1. Read the following text then answer the questions:

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

1. a. adapt 2. a. night
3. c. light

B. Answer the following questions:

- 4- Camels and other desert animals survive without much water by adapting.
- 5- Life in the desert is difficult because there is very little water and it is very hot. .

2. Choose the correct answer:

1. c. gravity 2. d. adaptation
3. a. landscape 4. c. ten
5. d. tribes 6. c. has

7. d. was watching 8. c. had
9. b. did 10. b. was watching

3. Rewrite the following sentences:

- 1- While she was reading a book, the phone rang.
- 2- They have studied English for eleven years.
- 3- After the train had left, I arrived at the station.

Story

4. A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- After defeating Shere Khan, Mowgli felt a mixture of victory and deep sadness.
- 2- Because he understood it was his true destiny and the only way to ensure peace.
- 3- By not fully leaving either world. He lived in the village and learned human ways, but he maintained his connection to the jungle by visiting his animal friends.

B. Answer the following questions:

1. c. cattle 2. b. rejected
3. b. strength

5. Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

Saving energy is very important. It helps our planet and saves money. We can all save energy every day.

Turn off lights when you leave a room. Unplug chargers and TVs when you are not using them. Use the sun for light during the day. Wash clothes in cold water. Take shorter showers to use less hot water.

At home, use energy-saving light bulbs. They last a long time. In summer, use a fan instead of air conditioning if you can. Walk or ride a bike for short trips instead of using a car.

Small actions can make a big difference for our future.

Story Questions

Chapter 1

A. A. Write True (T) or False (F):

- 1- T 2- F
- 3- T 4- T
- 5- T 6- F
- 7- F 8- T
- 9- T 10- F

B. Answer the following questions:

- 1- Indian jungle.
- 2- He wandered away.
- 3- In the wolves' cave.
- 4- Baloo and Bagheera.
- 5- Gave them a dead ox.
- 6- The Seeonee wolf pack.
- 7- Because the threat was always there.
- 8- Little frog.
- 9- Father Wolf and Mother Wolf.
- 10- The Law of the Jungle.
- 11- To destroy Mowgli one day.



Chapter 2

A. A. Write True (T) or False (F):

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1- T | 2- F |
| 3- F | 4- F |
| 5- T | 6- F |
| 7- T | 8- T |

B. Answer the following questions:

- 1- Respect, loyalty, and warning cries.
- 2- Kaa, the python.
- 3- They were false.
- 4- Grateful.
- 5- Kaa.
- 6- They had no order or honor.
- 7- Baloo and Bagheera. They saved him.
- 8- To warn him of danger.



Chapter 3

A. A. Write True (T) or False (F):

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1- F | 2- T |
| 3- F | 4- T |
| 5- F | 6- T |
| 7- T | 8- F |
| 9- F | 10- T |

B. Answer the following questions:

- 1- Shere Khan.
- 2- Lies about Mowgli bringing fire and ruin.
- 3- Bagheera.
- 4- The nearby village.
- 5- Fire.
- 6- Because of Shere Khan's lies.
- 7- He used fire, which humans have.
- 8- Because many wolves no longer accepted him.
- 9- He thought carefully and used a clever plan.



Chapter 4

A. A. Write True (T) or False (F):

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1- T | 2- F |
| 3- T | 4- T |
| 5- F | 6- F |
| 7- T | 8- F |
| 9- T | 10- T |

B. Answer the following questions:

- 1- He drove cattle toward him.
- 2- Fire and cunning.
- 3- In a narrow pass.
- 4- Because many wolves rejected him.
- 5- They believed humans do not belong in the jungle.
- 6- Leave the pack.
- 7- Heavy-hearted / sad.
- 8- It ended.
- 9- He was strong and wise.
- 10- Where he truly belonged



Chapter 5

A. A. Write True (T) or False (F):

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1- T | 2- F |
| 3- T | 4- F |
| 5- T | 6- F |
| 7- T | 8- F |
| 9- T | 10- F |
| 11- T | 12- T |
| 13- F | 14- T |

B. Answer the following questions:

- 1- The nearby human village.
- 2- They were surprised.
- 3- Food, clothing, and a place to stay.
- 4- They thought he was dangerous or cursed.
- 5- He took care of the cattle.
- 6- He felt trapped and missed his freedom.
- 7- It was a useful job in the village.
- 8- He was used to the jungle's freedom.
- 9- He belongs more to the jungle.
- 10- His challenge was finding where he belongs.



Chapter 6

A. A. Write True (T) or False (F):

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1- F | 2- T |
| 3- F | 4- T |
| 5- T | 6- F |
| 7- T | 8- F |
| 9- T | 10- F |
| 11- T | 12- F |



13- T

14- T

15- F

16- T

17- T

B. Answer the following questions:

1- He defended each side when needed.

2- Because they valued courage and loyalty.

3- It guided his sense of order and fairness.

4- He defended it from hunters.

5- That they can live in balance.

6- It prevents conflict and creates peace.

7- By showing we can protect nature while helping people.

8- There would be more harm and fighting.

9- Safety for villagers, protection for the jungle.

10- They help you do what is right, not just easy.